

THE
HISTORY OF INDIA.

VOL. IV.—PART I.

MUSSULMAN RULE.

THE

HISTORY OF INDIA

FROM THE EARLIEST AGES.

BY

J. TALBOYS WHEELER,

SECRETARY TO THE CHIEF COMMISSIONER OF BRITISH BURMA;
LATE ASSISTANT SECRETARY TO THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA IN THE
FOREIGN DEPARTMENT.
AUTHOR OF "THE GEOGRAPHY OF HERODOTUS," &c., &c.

VOL. IV.—PART I.

MUSSULMAN RULE.

LONDON:

TRUBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXVI.

[*The right of Translation is reserved.*]

IN PREPARATION.

By the same Author.

**HISTORY OF INDIA FROM THE EARLIEST AGES, VOL. I.
VEDIC PERIOD AND MAHÁ BHÁRATA.**

New Edition revised.

THE

HISTORY OF INDIA

UNDER MUSSULMAN RULE.

BY

J. TALBOYS WHEELER,

SECRETARY TO THE CHIEF COMMISSIONER OF BRITISH BURMA ;
LATE ASSISTANT SECRETARY TO THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA IN THE
FOREIGN DEPARTMENT.

AUTHOR OF "THE GEOGRAPHY OF HERODOTUS," &c., &c.

LONDON :

TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCLXXVI.

[The right of Translation is reserved.]

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

TO

GENERAL ALBERT FYTCHE, C. S. I.

LATE CHIEF COMMISSIONER OF BRITISH BURMA,

THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED.

P R E F A C E.

THE present volume, like its predecessor, is complete in itself. It tells the history of India under Mussulman rule. At the same time it forms the fourth volume, or part of the fourth volume, of the "History of India from the Earliest Ages."

The history of Mussulman India is altogether distinct from that of Hindú India. The previous volumes treated of the Hindú people ;—the natives of India properly so called. The present volume treats of the Mussulman people ;—the fair-complexioned foreigners who conquered the Hindú people in the eleventh century of the Christian era. The Hindú people worshipped idols, as they were taught by the Bráhmans. The Mussulman people worshipped the God of the Patriarchs, as they were taught by Muhammad the prophet. The history of Mussulman India begins when the Rajpoots were masters ; it tells how the Mussulmans became masters ; it gives the annals of Mussulman Sultans down to the time when the English began to play a part in India.

The history of Mussulman India has been divided into four periods ; they correspond to four stages in the development of the religion of the Koran ;—the Sunní, the Shíah, the Súfi, and the Sunní revival. This division is sufficiently explained in the progress of the history. There is another

division which demands an explanation at the outset ; it is the separation of the Mussulman-period from the Moghul period.

The Mussulman period is the one properly so called. It extended from the eleventh century to the sixteenth. Throughout this interval of five centuries the religion of Islam was dominant throughout the Mussulman empire. The Sultans were mostly staunch Mussulmans.

The Moghul period has been wrongly called Mussulman. It extended from the sixteenth century to the middle of the seventeenth. Throughout this interval the Koran was neglected or ignored ; many of the so-called Mussulmans were Súfí heretics ; many affected open infidelity. Akber, the greatest sovereign of the Moghul dynasty, threw off all pretence of being a Mussulman. He persecuted Mussulmans ; he destroyed mosques ; he broke up the power of the Ulamá, or Mussulman church ; he drove the chiefs of the Ulamá into exile ; he set up a religion of his own, known as the "Divine Faith." Neither Akber, nor his son Jehangír, nor his grandson Shah Jehan, has the slightest claim to be called Mussulmans.

The historians of the Mussulman period, properly so called, generally told the truth. Occasionally they may have praised bad princes because they were good Mussulmans ; otherwise they were honest and trustworthy. They were kept up to the mark by the influence of the Ulamá. The Ulamá comprised the collective body of doctors, lawyers, magistrates, and judges resident at the capital. It combined the authority of law with that of religion. It was the one independent voice in the circle of Asiatic despotism. Had the historians of the Mussulman period sacrificed truth to flattery, they would have exposed themselves to the scorn of the Ulamá.¹

¹ Ferishta is a type of the truth-telling historians of the Mussulman period.

Under the Moghul rule all these conditions were changed. When Akber broke up the Ulamá, public opinion ceased to have a voice in India. History degenerated into flattery and falsehood. European historians of India have believed in the fulsome flattery of Persian parasites and party writers.² They have ignored the authority of European contemporaries, who had no temptation to depart from the truth. Jehangír and Shah Jehan have been lauded as great and beneficent sovereigns. In reality they were the most shameless tyrants that ever disgraced a throne. Moghul administration has been held up as a model for British imitation. In reality it was a monstrous system of oppression and extortion, which none but Asiatics could have practised or endured. Justice was a mockery. Magistrates could always be bribed; false witnesses could always be bought. Religion had ceased to be a check upon Asiatic corruption and depravity. The Hindús were slaves in the hands of grinding task-masters;—foreigners who knew not how to pity or how to spare. In the present day there is greater secrecy in native rule; a greater fear of the interference of the paramount power; a show of imitation of British administration. In reality the spirit of tyranny and despotism in native states is the same as ever.

The evidence by which Moghul history has been placed upon a truthful footing is beyond all question. It is given by Europeans of different nations, who resided in India

So are most of the historians which have been translated and preserved in Sir Henry Elliot's History of India as told by its own historians. Abul Fazl and Kháfi Khan are types of the flatterers who flourished during the Moghul period.

This statement by no means diminishes the value of Mr Blockmann's translation of the Áin-i-Akbari of Abul Fazl. Mr Blockmann's work is invaluable.

² No slight is thrown upon the study of oriental languages. No one can have a greater respect for such study than the author of this history. It has led to discoveries in philology and religion, which will be appreciated for all time. But belief in an oriental flatterer is a very different matter.

at different periods during the reigns of Jehangír and Shah Jehan. A general agreement runs through them all. William Hawkins was an English sea captain who spent two or three years at Agra between 1608 and 1611. Sir Thomas Roe was an Englishman of good family who followed the court of Jehangír from 1616 to 1618 in the character of an ambassador from James the First. Sir Thomas Herbert was an English gentleman who travelled in India about 1627 and 1628. John Albert de Mandelslo was a young gentleman who had been brought up in the court of the Duke of Holstein; he travelled in India between 1638 and 1640. Francis Bernier was a French physician who lived in India from 1656 to 1668. He resided at the Moghul court at Delhi; he traversed India from Kashmír to Golkonda. John Baptista Tavernier was an intelligent jeweller who travelled through India two or three times in the reigns of Shah Jehan and Aurungzeb. Monsieur de Thevenot was a French gentleman who travelled through India in the early years of the reign of Aurungzeb. Such are the authorities on which the historian has relied; they present a true picture of native rule.

There are other authorities, besides those cited, which demand special mention. A Venetian physician, named Manouchi, resided forty-eight years in India. He was in the service of Shah Jehan; afterwards in that of Aurungzeb. He compiled memoirs of the Moghul sovereigns of India; they were drawn out of the Moghul chronicles or registers which were preserved at Delhi in the Persian language. The memoirs were written in Portuguese; they comprised extracts from the chronicles translated into Portuguese. Manouchi sent his manuscripts to Europe. They were adorned with portraits of different Moghul emperors, and of all

the eminent men in the Moghul empire. The portraits were painted at a great charge by artists employed in the palace.

The memoirs of Manouchi fell into the hands of a Jesuit priest named Father Catrou. They do not appear to have been printed or published. In 1708 Father Catrou published at the Hague a history of the Moghul empire written in French; it was based on the memoirs of Manouchi. In 1826 an English translation of Father Catrou's history was published in London.

The history of Father Catrou has often been cited in the present work. It forms the very best authority for the history of the reign of Shah Jchan. Catrou's history of this period is in accord with that of Bernier. Catrou is far more successful than Bernier in bringing out the true character of the leaders in the great war which brought the reign of Shah Jehan to a close. Manouchi must have sent to Europe copies of the correspondence between the more prominent actors. Catrou quotes letters which reveal the inner nature and disposition of the writers. The substance is given in the sixth chapter of the present volume. They impart a dramatic character to the history.

Father Catrou's history is incomplete. Manouchi wrote memoirs of Aurungzeb, the son and successor of Shah Jehan. Father Catrou closes his history with Shah Jehan, the father of Aurungzeb. He states in his preface that he had written a history of the reign of Aurungzeb based on Manouchi's memoirs; he promised to publish it if his history of the previous Moghul emperors found favour with the public. Neither the memoirs nor the history of Aurungzeb appear to have been published. Possibly the manuscripts

may have been preserved in some library down to our own time. If so they would be a great boon to the historian. The reign of Aurungzeb is difficult and obscure. Manouchi would have been able to correct by his personal knowledge any bombast or exaggeration that might be recorded in the chronicles.

Under these circumstances the present volume has been brought to a close with the reign of Shah Jehan. Meanwhile the author would be glad of any information respecting the memoirs of the Moghul empire in India by Signor Manouchi, or the history of Aurungzeb by Father Catrou.³

There is one other point to which attention may be drawn. It will be seen in the course of the present volume that the Moghuls bore a striking resemblance to the Vedic Aryans ; that the Moghul empire in India between the sixteenth and eighteenth centuries was probably only a repetition of what has been apparently going on in India through unrecorded ages ; that the Moghul empire in India was only the last link in a chain of empires which began in the remotest antiquity. In other words, it will be seen that there is reason to believe that the Vedic Aryans were Moghuls ; that Asoka and Akber sprang from the same stock as the worshippers of the Vedic gods.

The authorities for these conclusions are referred to in the course of the history; some extracts from those

³ 'The appendices, index, and maps will be published with the second part of this volume. At page 27 it is stated that Hindú history will be treated in "the fourth" chapter of the present volume ; it should have been "a future" chapter. The Hindú history of the Peninsula will be dealt with in the forthcoming part of the present volume.'

The name of Chitór has been wrongly accentuated in some of the earlier pages. It should be Chítór, not Chitor.

authorities are given in the notes. There is one important passage in the Travels of Father Rubruquis⁴ which has been omitted; it is worthy of being extracted, and is accordingly given in the present place:—

“ When they (Tartars or Moghuls) meet to make merry, they sprinkle part of their drink upon the image which is over the master’s head, and afterwards upon the other images in their ordor; then a servant goes out of the house with a cup full of drink, sprinkling it thrice towards the south, and bowing his knee every time; this is done in honour of Fire. He performs the same ceremony towards the east in honour of Air; then to the west in honour of Water; lastly to the north in honour of the Dead [i. e. of ghosts]. When the master holds a cup in his hand to drink, before he tastes he pours a part of it upon the ground; if he drinks sitting on horseback, he pours out part upon the neck or mane of the horse before he drinks.”

Those who are familiar with Vedic conceptions will probably recognize them in the foregoing extract.

Rubruquis travelled through Tartary and visited the courts of the Moghul Khans in the thirteenth century of the Christian era. At that time the Moghuls carried on frequent wars against the Turks. The antagonism between Moghul and Turk prevailed at every period in history. It will be seen in the course of the present volume that it corresponded to the antagonism between the solar and lunar races, the children of the sun and the children of the moon, which has prevailed from the remotest antiquity. A golden sun, or a peacock, has ever been the emblem of the Persian, the

See pages 123 and 124 of the present volume.

Rajpoot, and the Moghul. The moon or crescent has ever been the emblem of the Turk. The antagonism between the two has outlived their common conversion to Islam ; to this day it finds expression in the antagonism between Shíah and Sunní.⁵

In conclusion the author begs to express his best thanks to the Rev. William Baines for kind help in the translation of authorities in Portuguese, Spanish, and other European languages.

Witham, Essex,

18th December, 1875.

* See page 277 of the present volume.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

ISLAM BEFORE THE CONQUEST OF INDIA. A.D. 570 TO 997.

	PAGE
Collision between Mussulmans and Hindús : its effects on Indian Mussulmans	1
Effect on Hindús	2
Significance of the collision	ib.
Political results	3
Failure of Christianity in India	4
Mussulman history prior to the conquest of India	5
Muhammad, the prophet of Arabia, 570—632 A.D.	ib.
His surroundings at Mecca	6
Flight to Medina : Muhammad a prince as well as prophet	7
Specialities of Islam	8
Three dynasties of Khalifs : Medina, Damascus, and Bagdad	9
Khalifs of Medina, 630—660 : conquest of Syria and Persia	10
Jews and Christians pay Jezya, or tribute	ib.
Numerous converts	11
Causes of the Arab ascendancy : the brotherhood of Islam	ib.
Influence of women	12
Khalifs of Damascus, 660—750 : conquest of Central Asia	13
Four oases : Khorassan, Kábul, Bokhara, and Scinde	ib.
Conquest of Khorassan : outposts at Merv and Herat	14
Conquest of Bokhara ; the cradle of the Persians	ib.
Conquest of Kábul : Jewish origin of the Afghans	15
Conquest of Scinde : persecution and toleration	16
Story of the two Rajpoot princesses	17
Khalifs of Bagdad, 750—1258 : Harún al Rashíd and Al Mamún, 786—833.	18
Tyranny of Arabic over Persian : the Persian revolt	19
Collapse of the Arab Khalifat	ib.
Persian revival under the Sámáni, 900—1000	20
Turkish uprising : slaves became masters	ib.

	PAGE
Foundation of the Turkish kingdom of Ghazní: first collision between Turk and Hindú	• 21
War between Sabaktigín and Jaipál	22
Treachery of Jaipál: triumph of Sabaktigín	23
Death of Sabaktigín, 997: a landmark in Asiatic history	24
Characteristics of the history of Mussulman India	ib.
Four epochs	ib.
Sunní or orthodox period	25
Shíah or schismatic period	ib.
Súfi, or heretical period	ib.
Sunní reaction, or puritanical period	26

CHAPTER II.

SUNNÍ CONQUEST OF THE PUNJAB AND HINDUSTAN. A.D. 1001 TO 1526.

Invaded and invaders	28
Characteristics of the Hindús	ib.
Rajpoots eastward of the Indus	29
Mussulmans westward of the Indus	30
Mahmúd of Ghazní, 997—1030	ib.
Advance of the Mussulmans to Peshawar: defeat and death of Jaipál	31
Anandpál tributary to Mahmúd: the Rajpoot league	32
Spirit of the Rajpoot league	ib.
Mussulman victory at Peshawar	33
Destruction of Thánesar: Mahmúd annexes the Punjab	34
Mahmúd's invasions of Hindustan	ib.
Expedition against Somnáth in Guzerat	35
Sacking of Ajmír	ib.
Halt at Somnáth	36
The battle	ib.
Flight of the Rajpoots	37
The temple and its treasures	ib.
Return of Mahmúd: Somnáth avenged	38
Character of Mahmúd	39
Political ideas of Mahmúd	ib.
Hindús conciliate their conquerors	40
Blank in Mussulman history after Mahmúd, 1030—1180	ib.
Muhammad Ghori, 1180—1206: wars against the Rajpoots	41
Defeat and death of Prithi Raja of Delhi, 1193	ib.
Defeat and death of Jai Chand of Kanouj	ib.

CONTENTS.

xix

	PAGE
Rise of Kutb-ud-dín	42
Muhammad Ghori assassinated by Gakkars, 1206	ib.
Kutb-ud-dín founds the Delhi dynasty of Slave-kings, 1206—1210	43
Delhi empire includes the Punjab and Hindustan	44
Conquest of Bihár and Bengal by Muhammad Bakhtiyár	ib.
Two kingdoms in Mussulman India : Delhi and Gour	45
Mussulman expedition from Gour to Thibet	46
Meagre annals of the Slave-kings, 1210—1290	47
Insignificance of the details	ib.
Moghul uprising under Chenghiz Khan, 1154—1226	49
Dynasty of Khilji Sultans, 1290—1320	50
Jelál-ud-dín, 1290—1295	51
Alá-ud-dín, nephew of Jelál-ud-dín : plunders the temples at Bhilsa	ib.
Plans an invasion of the Dekhan	52
Raid into the Mahratta country	ib.
Plunders Deogur	53
Returns to Karra : murders his uncle	54
Seizes the throne of Delhi : reigns 1295—1316	55
Indifference of the masses	ib.
Conquers Guzerat	56
Marries a Rajpoot queen	ib.
Plans the conquest of Rajpootana	57
The 'New Mussulmans'	58
Plot of Akat Khan	ib.
Revolt in Delhi	59
Repressive measures of Alá-ud-dín	ib.
Ignores the Ulamá	60
Moghul invasions	61
Massacre of "New Mussulmans"	ib.
Alá-ud-dín's aspirations : conquers the Telinga, Tamil, and Karnata countries	62
Contemporary state of Peninsular India	ib.
Rebellions in the Dekhan and Peninsula : death of Alá-ud-dín, 1316	64
Political ideas of Alá-ud-dín	ib.
Religious faith upset by his Hindú marriage	65
Palace revolutions : murder of Malik Káfúr	ib.
Regency of Mubárak	66
Reign of Mubárak, 1316—1320	ib.
Murder of Mubárak by Khuzru Khan	67
Hindú revolt at Delhi	ib.
Strange characteristics of the revolt	68
Rise of the Tughlak dynasty : capital at Tughlakabad	69

	PAGE
Ghiás-ud-dín Tughlak reigns, 1320—1325	70
Muhammad Tughlak reigns, 1325—1350	ib.
Financial pressure	ib.
Necessity for conciliation	71
Impolicy of Muhammad Tughlak	ib.
Capital transferred from Delhi to Deoghur	ib.
Substitution of copper for gold money	72
Attempted conquest of China, Persia, and Tartary	73
Dismemberment of the Delhi empire: death of Muhammad Tughlak, 1350	ib.
Peaceful reign of Firuz Shah, 1350—1388	74
Bráhmans forced to pay the Jezya	ib.
Martyrdom of a Bráhman	75
Invasion of Timúr, 1398-99: invasion of Hindustan by Báber, 1526	76
Character of Mussulman rule	ib.
Temptations to rebellion	77
Hindú proclivities of Mussulman rulers	78

CHAPTER III.

SHÍAH REVOLT IN THE DEKHAN. A.D. 1347 TO 1565.

Hindú influences at work in the Dekhan: effect on the Mussulmans	80
The story of two revolts	81
Review of the revolt of 1320	ib.
Treachery in the Mussulman camp	82
The revenge	ib.
Revolt of Hindús and Mussulmans, 1347	ib.
Character of Hasan Gangu	84
Antagonism between Shíahs and Sunnis	85
Materialism of Sunnis	86
Spiritual ideas of the Shíahs	ib.
Antagonism between Foreigners and Dekhanís	87
Hasan Gangu, the Shíah, 1347—1358: turns against the Hindús	ib.
Political status of the Bahmani kingdom: Mussulman dominion surrounded by Hindús	88
Hindú powers of Telinga and Karnata	89
Muhammad Shah the Sunní, 1358—1375: quarrel respecting frontier fortresses	ib.
Insolence of the Telegu prince	90
Intrigues of Telinga and Vijayanagar	ib.
Rise of Krishna Rai of Vijayanagar: a type of Hindú sovereignty	91

CONTENTS.

xxi

	PAGE
Krishna Rai affronted by Muhammad Shah : massacre at Mudkul	92
Massacre of Hindús by Muhammad Shah	93
Slaughter of highwaymen	94
Sultans of the Dekhan types of Oriental life	ib.
Mujáhid: headstrong with bull-dog courage. 1375—1378	95
Greatness of Krishna Rai of Vijayanagar	ib.
Intrigues and assassinations	96
Mahmúd: pious and beneficent, 1378—1397	ib.
Ghiás-ud-dín: blinded and dethroned, 1397	97
Firúz Shah: lover of pleasure, literature, and science, 1397—1422	ib.
Evening assemblies	ib.
War against Vijayanagar	98
Assassination of the eldest son of Deva Rai	ib.
Mussulman intrigues with the Gond Raja	ib.
Timúr invades India, 1398—99: propitiated by Firúz Shah	99
Sultans of Guzerat and Malwa intrigue with Deva Rai	ib.
Marriage of Firúz Shah with the daughter of Deva Rai	100
Devastation of the Dekhan by the Hindús	101
Ahmad Shah the butcher, 1422—1435	ib.
Wars against brother Mussulmans	102
Removal of the capital from Kulbarga to Bídur	ib.
Alá-ud-dín the trimmer, 1435—1457	103
Perplexity of Deva Rai at his defeats	ib.
The great council	ib.
Opinion of the Bráhmans	ib.
Opinion of the Kshatriyas	104
Deva Rai enlists Mussulmans	ib.
Deva Rai submits to destiny	ib.
Shíahs tempted to serve Hindú Rajas	ib.
Bloody antagonism between Sunnis and Shíahs	105
Humáyún the cruel: horrible punishment of rebels, 1457—1461	ib.
Mahmúd, the last of the Bahmani Sultans, 1463—1516	106
Peace between the Dékhan and Peninsula	107
History of Bijápu, typical of the history of all the Dekhan kingdoms	108
Yusuf Adil Shah, the Shíah: his toleration, 1489—1510	109
Ismail Adil Shah, the Shíah: 1510—1534	ib.
Intrigues of a Sunní minister	ib.
Resistance of the Mahratta queen-dowager: assassination of the minister	110

	PAGE
Son of the minister aims at the throne	110
Desperate battle between the Shíahs in the palace and the Sunnis outside	ib.
Triumph of the Shíahs	111
Mallu, the monster, 1534	ib.
Ibrahim, the Sunní : persecution of the Shíahs, 1534—1557	ib.
Revolution in Vijayanagar	112
Intrigues of Timma, the minister	ib.
Ram Rai, son of Timma, gains the throne	ib.
Opposition of the nobles	113
Intrigues of Ram Rai	ib.
Overthrow of Ram Rai	ib.
Termal seizes the throne	114
Invites the Sultan of Bíjápur	ib.
Ibrahim Shah at Vijayanagar	ib.
Termal betrayed : kills himself	115
Ram Rai, Raja of Vijayanagar	ib.
Ali Adil Shah, a Shíah, 1557—1565	ib.
League between the Shíah Sultan and Hindú Raja	116
Mussulman league against Ram Rai	ib.
Preparations of Ram Rai	117
Four Sultans of the Dekhan cross the Krishna	ib.
Battle of Talikota, 1565 : defeat and death of Ram Rai	118
Fall of the empire of Vijayanagar	119

CHAPTER IV.

THE MOGHUL EMPIRE: BÁBER, HUMÁYUN, AKBER.
A.D. 1526 TO 1605.

Moghul empire in India, a type of old Hindú empires	120
Moghuls dubious Mussulmans	ib.
Three epochs in Moghul history—Tartar, Turk, and Moghul	121
Character of the Tartars	ib.
Moghuls, a royal tribe of Tartars ; Chenghiz Khan	122
Character of the Moghuls	ib.
Religion and civilization	123
Gravitations towards Islam, Christianity, and Buddhism	124
Toleration amongst the Moghuls and Vedic Áryans	125
Turkish Moghuls : Timúr and Báber	ib.
Timúr's invasion of India : Timúr no Mussulman	126
Birth of Báber, 1482	127
Afghan rule in India	128

	PAGE
Antagonism between Moghul and Afghan	128
Afghans staunch Sunnis	129
Báber defeats the Afghan Sultan, 1525-26	ib.
Moghul occupation of Delhi: advance to Agra	130
Rajpoots oppose Báber	ib.
Moghul defeat of the Rana of Chitór	ib.
Policy of Báber	131
Death of Báber, 1530	ib.
Humáyun's reign: his Moghul proclivities	ib.
Humáyun outwitted by Sher Khan the Afghan	ib.
Defeat and exile of Humáyun	132
Escape to Persia	133
Character of Sher Khan	ib.
Humáyun recovers his kingdom	134
Báber and Humáyun types of a transition period	135
Akber a Persian type	ib.
Akber Padishah: regency of Bairam Khan, 1556	ib.
Importance of the reign	ib.
Resemblance between Asoka and Akber	136
Similarity in religious development	ib.
War against Hemu	ib.
Contrast between Akber and Bairam Khan	137
Foundations of the Moghul empire	ib.
Removal and death of Bairam Khan	138
Hostility of Afghans: disaffection of Moghuls	ib.
Affairs in Malwa	ib.
Affairs in Bihár and Oudo	140
Decay of Islam	ib.
Statesmanship necessary to save the empire	141
New force wanted to overawe Afghans	ib.
Latent force of Rajpoots	142
Akber's Rajpoot marriages	143
Submission of Jaipúr and Jodhpúr: independence of the Rana	ib.
Bitterness of Mussulmans at the Rajpoot marriages	144
Political antagonisms	145
Success of Akber's military policy	ib.
Elements of antagonism	146
Moghul aristocracy: not hereditary	ib.
Exclusiveness of the white-complexioned	147
No landed property	ib.
Rajpoot aristocracy: hereditary and feudal	148
Amalgamation of Moghul and Rajpoot impossible	ib.
Political aspect of the empire, 1575	149
Personal characteristics of Akber	ib.
Religion of Akber; a lax Mussulman	150

	PAGIN
Persecution of Shíáhs by the Sunní Ulamá	150
Millennium of Islam	151
Fanaticism of the Mahdis, or believers in the millennium	152
Shaikh Mubárak	153
Súfiísm, Christianity, and Bráhmanism	ib.
Career of Shaikh Mubárak	154
Abul Faiz the Súfi : Abul Fazl the Universalist	155
Genius and aspirations of Abul Fazl	ib.
Relations between Akber and Abul Fazl	156
Akber troubled by the Ulamá	ib.
Abul Fazl's hatred against the Ulamá	ib.
Religious controversies	157
Thursday evenings' discussions	ib.
Discomfiture of the Ulamá	158
Akber a Shíah : aspires to be Khalif	159
Thin end of the wedge	ib.
The document : breaking up of the Ulamá	ib.
Results	160
Akber, the Lord of the period	161
Rejection of Islam	ib.
Gravitations towards Christianity	ib.
Controversies between the Mullahs and the Fathers: effect on Akber	162
Effect of Christianity	163
Creed of Abul Fazl	164
Aspirations of Abul Faiz	ib.
Akber leaves Fathpúr Sikri: persecutes the Mussulmans	165
Akber removes to Lahore	166
Rajpoot government in Kábúl and Bengal	ib.
Akber finds a new religion	167
Old English accounts of Akber	168
Administration of justice	ib.
Daily appearance in public	ib.
History and engineering	ib.
Amusements	169
Abstemiousness	ib.
Hindús preferred to Mussulmans	ib.
Akber's religion : works miracles	170
One God and one sovereign	171
Stages in Akber's religious development	ib.
The " Divine Faith "	172
Absence of fanaticism	ib.
Morals of Akber	173
Practical mind	ib.

	PAGE
Experiment for discovering the primitive language	174
Dark side of Akber : his poisoner	ib.
Prostration	175
Absolute despotism	ib.
Ministers	176
Cabinet	ib.
Working of the administration	ib.
Moghul institutions	177
Jharokha	ib.
Durbar	ib.
Ghusál-khana	ib.
Employment of Hindús	ib.
Khálisa lands and Jaghír lands	178.
Revenue administration	179
Army administration	180
Lahore	ib.
The Dekhan	181
Political state of the Dekhan	ib.
Anarchy in Ahmadnagar	ib.
Dekbanís and Foreigners : Sunnís and Shíahs	182
Su'tan of Ahmadnagar	ib.
Akber's policy towards the Dekhan	183
Moghul conquest	ib.
Portent at Lahore	184
Religious doubts of Akber	ib.
Return to Agra : Dekhan affairs	185
Abul Fazl in the Dekhan	ib.
Abul Fazl at Ahmadnagar	ib.
Akber invades the Dekhan	186
Military operations	ib.
Revolt of Selim	187
Murder of Abul Fazl	ib.
Evil days	ib.
Death of Akber, 1605 : investiture of Selim	188
Burial of Akber	ib.
State of the empire	189

CHAPTER V.

THE MOGHUL EMPIRE : JEHANGÍR. A.D. 1505 to 1627.

Jehangír, a caricature of Akber	191
Ideal character of Akber	ib.
Character of Jehangír	192
Outward life of Jehangír	193
Revolt of Khuzru : horrible cruelties	194
Jehangír countenances Christianity	195

	PAGE
Hypocrisy and depravity	195
The lesson	ib.
Marriage difficulties in conversion	196
Hindús barred against Christianity	ib.
Easy converts to Islam	197
English element in India	ib.
Mission of Captain Hawkins	198
Failure	199
Hawkins's account of Jehangír	ib.
Jehangír removes to Ajmír	200
Story of Núr Mahal	202
Marries Jehangír	ib.
Jehangír's four sons:	203
Khuzru	ib.
Parwíz	ib.
Khurram, afterwards Shah Jehan	ib.
Shahryár	204
War in the Dekhan: treachery of the Khan Khanán	ib.
Aggressions of the English	ib.
Mission of Sir Thomas Roe, 1615—1618	205
Landing of Roe: rudeness of Moghul officials	ib.
Journey from Surat to Burhanpur	206
Roe's interview with Parwíz	ib.
Journey to Ajmír	207
Roe attends the Durbar	208
Audience with Jehangír	209
Childishness of Jehangír	210
Difficulties in negotiating a treaty	ib.
All records open to the public	211
Feast of the Nau-roz	ib.
Incongruous display	212
Roe snubbed	ib.
Opposition to the treaty	ib.
Roe's draft treaty	213
Factions at court	214
Jehangír's love of gossip	ib.
Harem atrocity	215
Execution of thieves	ib.
Provincial administration	ib.
Birthday of Jehangír: weighing ceremony	217
Elephant show	ib.
Carouse in the Ghusal-khana	ib.
A viceroy in disgrace	218
Poisoning at court	219
Intrigues against Khuzru	ib.
Weakness of Jehangír	220

	PAGE
Outcry in the harem	220
Roe's warning to the English Company	ib.
Arrival of a Persian ambassador	221
Cruel scene at Durbar	ib.
Preparations for camp : Khurram's adieu	222
Jehangír at the Jharokha window	ib.
Gathering in the Durbar	223
Jehangír's state departure	ib.
Royal dress and arms	224
Procession to camp	ib.
Guard of six hundred elephants	225
Appearance of Khuzru	ib.
Imperial pavilions	226
Jehangír bows to Roe	ib.
The imperial camp	ib.
Pavilions of the grandees	227
Roe's interview with Khurram	228
Camp life	ib.
Robberies, murders, and privations	229
March to Ujain : alarm of the court	ib.
Departure of the Persian ambassador : his sorrows	230
Roe meets Khuzru	ib.
Wrath about the presents	ib.
Núr Mahal intrigues against Khurram	231
Triumph of Khurram	ib.
Mystery and romance	232
Roe hated as an informer	ib.
Moghuls frightened by the English	233
English restored to favour	234
Roe bribes Asof Khan : leaves India, 1618	ib.
Moghul administration	ib.
Confessions of Jehangír	235
Moghul wars against Hindú peasantry	236
Summer and winter migrations : reign ends in tragedy	237
Actors in the tragedy	ib.
Núr Mahal's daughter	ib.
Breach between Núr Mahal and Asof Khan	ib.
The Khaní Khanán	• 238
Mahábat Khan, the Rajpoot	ib.
War in the Dekhan	ib.
Murder of Khuzru	239
Jehangír suspects Shah Jehan : appoints Buláki to be crown prince	ib.
Núr Mahal checkmated	ib.
Plot of Asof Khan and Shah Jehan	240
Failure	ib.

	PAGE
Indignation of Jehangír	241
Vacillation of Shah Jehan	242
Rebellion	ib.
Shah Jehan ravages Bengal	ib.
Defeat of Shah Jehan	243
Antagonism between Mussulman and Rajpoot	ib.
Division in the imperial army	244
Mahábat Khan appeals to Jehangír	ib.
Núr Mahal insults Mahábat Khan	245
Revenge of Mahábat Khan	ib.
Jehangír a prisoner	246
Mahábat Khan deluded	ib.
Escape of Núr Mahal and Jehangír	ib.
Mahábat Khan joins Shah Jehan	247
Death of Jehangír, 1627	ib.
Fall of Núr Mahal : coronation of Buláki	ib.
Short reign of Buláki, 1627-8	248
Pretended funeral of Shah Jehan, 1628	ib.
Shah Jehan gains the throne : massacre	249

CHAPTER VI.

THE MOGHUL EMPIRE : SHAH JEHAN. A.D. 1628 TO 1658.

The character of Shah Jehan : his political situation	251
Leans to Islam : hates Christianity	252
Influence of Mumtaz Mahal	ib.
Punishment of the Portuguese	ib.
Intrigues of Khan Jehan, the Afghán Sunní	253
Submission of Khan Jehan	254
Antagonism between Shah Jehan and Khan Jehan	ib.
Rebellion and disaffection	255
Annexation of Ahmadnagar and Berár	ib.
Khan Jehan slain	ib.
Growing disaffection of Rajpoots	ib.
Wars of the tributary Rajas	256
Rajpoot contempt for Shah Jehan : death of Umra Singh	ib.
Shah Jehan's treachery and cowardice	257
Childish behaviour to the Persian ambassador	258
Absurd flattery	ib.
Equity of Shah Jehan	259
Supervision of justice	ib.
Highway robberies	ib.
Shah Jehan, the slave of the harem	260
Mahal or harem : guard of Tartar women	ib.
Queens, princesses, and concubines	ib.

	PAGE
Dress	261
Dancing girls and slave girls	ib.
Female administration	ib.
Antiquity of female rule	262
Fancy fairs	ib.
The Taj Mahal	ib.
Significance of the Taj Mahal	ib.
Feminine character	263
Begum Sahib	264
General administration	ib.
Obscurity of the reign	265
Nomade court	ib.
Poisonings	266
Greediness and prodigality	ib.
European travellers	ib.
Mandelslo, 1638—1640	267
Landing at Surat	ib.
English factory	ib.
Journey to Ahmadabad	268
Court of Areb Khan	ib.
Visits to Areb Khan	269
Horrible atrocity	ib.
Journey to Agra	ib.
Palace at Agra	270
Bazar street : Mahal : Jharokha window	ib.
Tyranny and corruption	271
Extortion	ib.
The Kótwal	ib.
Despotism of viceroys and governors	ib.
Bells of justice	272
Moghul army	ib.
Mandelslo leaves India	273
New Delhi founded by Shah Jehan	ib.
Bernier, 1655—1667	ib.
Description of New Delhi	274
City	ib.
Great square : astrologers	ib.
Palace : the public quarter	275
Durbar, Ghusal-khana, Mahal	ib.
Stone elephants	276
Peacock throne : an emblem of the sun	277
Solar and lunar races : Persians and Turks	ib.
Hindú nature of Shah Jehan	ib.
War between his four sons	278
Family of Shah Jehan	ib.
Dara the infidel	279

	PAGE
Shuja the Shiah	279
Aurungzeb the strict Sunní	ib.
Murád the lax Sunní	280
Two daughters	ib.
Dara, the crown prince, at the capital	ib.
Proud and insolent	ib.
Shuja, Aurungzeb, and Murád in the provinces	281
Rise of Amír Jumla	ib.
Proceedings in the Karnatic	282
Tavernier's meeting with Amír Jumla	ib.
Prompt justice	283
Amír Jumla intrigues with Aurungzeb	ib.
Feigned embassy to Golkonda	ib.
Flight of the Sultan	284
Recall of Aurungzeb	ib.
Treaty with Golkonda	ib.
Aurungzeb and Amír Jumla	285
Ambition of Aurungzeb	ib.
Shah Jehan's sickness	ib.
The ferment : Shuja revolts	286
Shah Jehan's letter	ib.
Shuja approaches Agra	ib.
Imperial army : Afghans and Rajpoots	287
Jai Singh's letter to Shuja	ib.
Artifice of Shuja	ib.
Bamboozled by Jai Singh	ib.
Defeat of Shuja : by-play of Jai Singh	288
Aurungzeb hoodwinks Murád	ib.
Murád's blindness	289
Aurungzeb's craft with Amír Jumla	ib.
Aurungzeb leaves the Dekhan	ib.
Joins Murád at Mandu	290
Alarm of Dara	ib.
Scruples of Murád quieted by Aurungzeb	ib.
Plan of Shah Jehan	291
Army of the imperialists	ib.
Defeat of the imperialists at Ujain	ib.
Wrath of Dara	292
Rebels advance to Agra : Shah Jehan abdicates to Dara	ib.
Disaffection and treachery	293
Dara leaves Agra	ib.
Encampment on the Chambal river	ib.
Strategy of Aurungzeb	294
Treachery of Khalil Khan	295
Battle on the Chambal : Dara befooled	ib.
Cavalry charge against artillery	ib.

	PAGE
Death of Ram Singh : flight of the Rajpoots	296
Dara dismounts from his elephant : loses the battle	ib.
Flight of Dara to Agra, Delhi, and Lahore	ib.
Moderation of Aurungzeb : deference to Murád	297
Activity of Aurungzeb : flight of Sulaiman to Kashmír	ib.
Aurungzeb and Murád at Agra: message to Shah Jehan	298
Shah Jehan's reply	ib.
Treachery and artifice	ib.
Siege of the palace at Agra	299
Mahmúd visits Shah Jehan	ib.
Shah Jehan retires	ib.
Shah Jehan offers the crown to Mahmúd	300
Mahmúd refuses : Aurungzeb master	ib.
Letter of Shah Jehan to Dara	ib.
Shaishtha Khan governor of Agra : pursuit of Dara	301
Delusion of Murád	ib.
Encampment at Mathura	ib.
Contrast between the two armies	302
Preparations for crowning Murád	ib.
Eve of the coronation	ib.
Murád feasted by Aurungzeb	303
Murád's drunkenness : sudden arrest	ib.
Aurungzeb proclaimed Padishah	304
No opposition	ib.
Aurungzeb pursues Dara : recalled to Agra	ib.
Meeting between Aurungzeb and Jai Singh	306
Jai Singh won over	ib.
Amír Jumla joins Aurungzeb	ib.
Advance to Kajwa	307
Artifice of Amír Jumla	ib.
Battle of Kajwa : its significance	308
Movement of Jaswant Singh	ib.
Terror at Agra	309
Anxieties of Aurungzeb : return to Agra	ib.
Mahmúd joins Shuja	310
Mahmúd's return : imprisoned for life	ib.
Aurungzeb at Delhi	ib.
Dara defeated and captured	311
Last days of Dara	312
Dara a Christian	ib.
Betrayal of Sulaiman	313
Defeat of Shuja : tragedy in Arakan	314
Murád accused of murder : opposition to Aurungzeb	ib.
Accession of Aurungzeb an epoch	315
Bernier's description of Moghul administration	316
Jaghír and Khalisa lands	ib.

	PAGE
Tyranny and cruelty	316
Slavery of the people	317
Helplessness of the sovereign	ib.
Misery of cultivators	318
Misery of artisans	ib.
Slavish aristocracy	ib.
Dead weight of the court and army	ib.
Sale of governments	319
Tyranny in the provinces	ib.
Asiatic justice	ib.
Asiatic rule	320

HISTORY OF INDIA

CHAPTER I.

ISLAM BEFORE THE CONQUEST OF INDIA.

A.D. 570 TO 997.

THE history of Mussulman India is the record of a collision between two races, the Turks and the Hindús. These races were the representatives of two hostile creeds, Islam and Brahmanism. In the tenth and eleventh centuries of the Christian era, the Turks invaded India from the north-west by the same route as that taken by Alexander. They overcame the Hindús; they conquered the Panjab and greater part of Hindustan. Later on they conquered the remainder of Hindustan, and pushed southwards into the Dekhan and Peninsula.¹ Seven or eight centuries passed away. The British appeared in the eastern seas; they took root in India; they grew into political power. But still the Mussulmans continued to exercise dominion in India. They introduced a polity of their own; they converted millions of Hindús to their own faith. But they never stamped out the Hindú element;

CHAPTER I.
Collision be-
tween Mussul-
mans and
Hindus: its
effect on Indian
Mussulmans.

¹ The division of India proper into the three zones of Hindustan, the Dekhan, and the Peninsula, has already been laid down in a previous chapter. See *ante*, vol. iii.

CHAPTER I. they never drove out Brahmanism, nor broke up the caste system. At times they even yielded to the charm of Hinduism; to this day many Mussulmans in India are governed by caste ideas. At times the current of Mussulman invasion was overpowered by a counter-current of Hindú reaction; and the study of those reactions throws a new light upon political and religious developments in India. Some Mussulman rulers have drifted so near to Hinduism that they have all but lost their religion; others have grown so intolerant of Hinduism that they have all but lost their empire.

**Effect on
Hindus.**

But the effects of the collision were not confined to Mussulmans. Millions of Hindus became converts. Millions more were worked upon by Islam, who never left the pale of Brahmanism. From an early period in the history of the collision Hindú reformers were teaching that the God of the Mussulman and the God of the Hindú are one and the same. The Mussulman element is still noiselessly at work beneath the surface of Hindú life. The growing lassitude about religion, the growing scepticism amongst educated natives, the loosening of the bonds of caste, all prove that a reaction is inevitable. What form it will take is a problem which has yet to be solved.

**Significance of
the collision.**

The progress of the Mussulmans in India thus reveals phenomena of the deepest interest. The Indian continent is still overladen with pagodas, and swarming with idols; but mosques meet the eyes in every city, as standing protests against idolatry. The antagonism between the two has lasted for centuries. The pagodas are close and sepulchral, like palaces of the dead. The idols are

enthroned on high like temporal Rajas. They are feasted with sacrifices and offerings, gratified with music and dances, and propitiated by songs and praises. The mosque is a public hall open to all believers. There are no images, no altars, no musicians, no dancing-women, and few ornaments. The daily worship is hostile to Brahmanism. It expresses a simple formula but profound faith : —“There is but one God and Muhammad is his prophet.”²

The collision between Islam and Brahmanism is thus apparent to all beholders. The historian does not deal with the religious controversy ; that is left to theologians. His simple task is to tell the story of the collision in India, to trace out its political results, and to unfold the lessons which they convey. The subject is not a mere speculative inquiry. It is of pressing importance at this moment ; it is of vast importance for all time. The antagonism between Mussulman and Hindú, added to the con-

² The Mussulman mosque, whether large or small, is generally a plain square building. At each of the four quarters is a tower or minaret, from which the muézzins chant the daily call to prayers. In front is a square court, with a fountain in which the faithful perform the preliminary ablutions which are ordered by the Koran. The mosque, properly so called, is a large hall paved with marble or polished stone. There are no benches of any kind whatever; nothing but mats or carpets on which the worshippers kneel and make their prostrations. The walls are generally white, covered with texts of the Koran in black letters. The pulpit of the Imám or priest is set up with its face towards Mecca. As the believer takes off his shoes and enters the sacred precincts, he leaves the world behind him, and breathes an atmosphere of devotion and contemplation. The Mullah or Imám conducts the public prayers. He reads a portion of the Koran in Arabic, and usually subjoins a short explanation in the vulgar tongue. The whole congregation are in an attitude of worship. The names of Allah and Muhammad are on every lip ; to all appearance the prayers of all present are fixed upon God and his prophet.

The shrines or tombs built in honour of holy men, or of distinguished individuals, are of a different construction. The mosque is plain, because it is a house of prayer to God ; but the shrines are often ornamented out of respect for the memory of the departed.

CHAPTER I. **viction that the British government was even-handed towards all princes and all religions, strengthened and upheld the British rule for nearly a century. The dallyings between the two religions, added to the dread that the British government was growing innovating and arbitrary, led to the mutiny of Fifty-seven. These political phenomena are not peculiar to British India; it will be seen hereafter that they were manifest in Mussulman India. Those who read Indian history as a record of wars, conquests, and personal adventure, will see none of these things. Those who read it as a record of the developments that grew out of the collision between Mussulmans and Hindús, will perceive that similar forces have been at work in India ever since the beginning of Mussulman conquest. They were active in the days of Mahmúd of Ghazní. They are active to this day; easily distinguished by all who are familiar with the people.**

Failure of Christianity in India.

The history of Mussulman India reveals other phenomena of even deeper interest. It explains the reason why Hindús have become Mussulmans and will not become Christians. In the sixteenth century there was a Protestant movement in Mussulman India as there was in Christian Europe. Mussulman thinkers were growing weary of the dogmatic arrogance of the priesthood. They inquired after other religions until they grew sceptical of their own. Christian Fathers were invited to Agra by the Moghul emperor; they preached before Akber and his court; they set up a chapel and altar within the precincts of the imperial palace. Many became believers, although few were baptized. Akber and his famous minister, Abul Fazl, were

among the believers. Two princes of the imperial blood were baptized with the utmost pomp at Agra. The movement developed a conviction that there was but one God; that all men were striving after a knowledge of God, but by different ways; that the God of the Mūssulman, the Hindú, and the Christian was one and the same. The movement languished into the same indifference of religion, the same laxity of morals, which are prevailing in India now. It ended in a religious reaction, which was inevitable then, and is inevitable now.

The Mussulman conquest of India begins with the exploits of Mahmúd of Ghazní, 997—1030 A.D.; but the history of Mussulmans in general begins with Muhammad the prophet, 570—632 A.D. There is thus an interval of four centuries between Muhammad and Mahmúd; and it was during these four centuries that the Mussulmans established their empire in Asia, and were schooled for the conquest of India. It will be seen hereafter that the men who invaded India took their religion from Muhammad, their enthusiasm from the Arab conquest, and their culture from the Persian revival.³

The career of Muhammad is a well-known story; but the main points of his religion are better gathered from his life and its surroundings than from a critical examination of his teachings. At the advent of Muhammad, Arabia was shut in from the outer world. Its shores were rocky and inhospitable; it had no great rivers to open up the interior. There were towns, villages, and culturable

Mussulman
history prior to
the conquest of
India.

Muhammad,
the prophet of
Arabia, 570-632
A.D.

³ The Persian revival in the ninth and tenth centuries of the Christian era will be brought under review towards the close of the present chapter. It was a revolt, not against the Mussulman apostle or religion, but against the Arab yoke.

CHAPTER I. lands ; but they were mere oases in the desert. The Arabs were a patriarchal people distributed in tribes. Some dwelt in towns and villages ; others wandered from pasture to pasture with their flocks and herds.⁴

His surroundings at Mecca.

Muhammad was born at Mecca, about seventy miles inland from the Red Sea. The city was situated about half way up the old caravan route between Aden and Palestine. It was a seat of trade ; a halting-place for caravans. It was also a holy city ; it contained the temple known as the Kaaba, which had been a centre of pilgrimage for all the tribes of Arabia from a remote antiquity. Three hundred and sixty idols were ranged about the Kaaba ; but somehow this idolatry was mixed up with legends of the Hebrew patriarchs. It was fabled that Abraham had built the Kaaba. Hard by was shown the spot where he had prepared to offer up his son Ishmael ;⁵ also the Zamzem well which had sprung up at the feet of Hagar. These associations worked upon the mind of Muhammad ; they filled his imagination with visions of God and his angels, of Satan and his devils. God was the one and supreme ruler of the universe ; Satan was the rebel who tempted man to worship other gods. When Muhammad was twenty-five years of age he went with a trading caravan into Syria. There he learned something about Jesus Christ, but only as Jesus the son of Mary ; he rejected the doctrine of

⁴ It has been found impossible to append references to all the authorities for the present chapter. It only comprises such heads of information as should be borne in mind whilst dealing with the history of Mussulman India. They are blended with general inferences and remarks for which the author is alone responsible.

⁵ The Arab traditions represent that it was Ishmael and not Isaac that Abraham intended to sacrifice.

the Trinity as opposed to the belief in one God.⁶ CHAPTER I.
 On his return to Mecca he married the widow Khadija, who was fifteen years older than himself. Time passed away; religion and sentiment fermented in his brain, until they burst through all conventionalities. When he was forty years of age, and his wife was fifty-five, he set up as a prophet sent by God to put down idolatry and restore the religion of the patriarchs. He made a few converts at Mecca, but suffered much persecution. His teaching clashed with the idolatry of the Kaaba; it was violently opposed to the vested interests of the Koreish, who were the ruling tribe amongst the Arabs, and the hereditary guardians of the Kaaba.⁷ At the age of fifty he lost his wife Khadija, and was more hotly persecuted than ever. At fifty-two he fled from Mecca to Medina, a city about two hundred and fifty miles to the northward on the route to Syria.

The Hijra, or "flight" to Medina, corresponds with 622 A.D. It is the epoch in the life of Muhammad; the turning point of his career; it has become the era of Islam. He made thousands of converts at Medina. He appealed to the sword as well as to the Koran; he became a prince as well as a prophet. He warred against the Koreish of Mecca and plundered their caravans. He subdued the Jews and Arabs round about Medina.

Flight to Medina: Muhammad a prince as well as prophet.

⁶ There can be little doubt that Muhammad was impressed with Christianity as it was taught in Syria. He rejected the idea that Jesus was the Son of God the Father, but he believed in him as a prophet; and he aspired to be a similar prophet in Arabia. The mosque which he ultimately built at Medina had a pulpit, and was more like a Christian church than a heathen temple.

⁷ Muhammad had been born in the tribe of Koreish; but his fellow-tribesmen were all the more hostile on that account. The prophet was in reality the head of a democratic movement against the Koreish, who were at once a hierarchy and an oligarchy.

CHAPTER I. He built a mosque at Medina : there he conducted prayers every day and preached every Friday ; there he sent forth his captains to battle, and his envoys to proclaim his mission to distant tribes. He married many wives, mostly widows ; he dwelt with them by turns in a row of cottages adjoining the mosque. He sent letters to the emperor of Rome, the kings of Persia and Abyssinia, and the ruler of Egypt, calling upon them to abandon their religion and accept Islam. At last, in the fulness of his power, he conquered Mecca, and destroyed all the idols in the Kaaba. Henceforth the Kaaba was the temple of Islam ; the place of pilgrimage for all Mussulmans, and for none beside Mussulmans. Henceforth Muhammad was the prophet and emperor of the whole Mussulman world. He died in 632 A.D., ten years after his flight to Medina. Within that brief period the persecuted prophet had become a sovereign power.

Specialities of Islam.

The religion of Muhammad was the outcome of his experiences in Arabia and Syria. It is summed up in the formula of Islam :—“There is but one God, and Muhammad is his prophet.” Believers were to be rewarded as loyal subjects ; unbelievers were to be punished as enemies and rebels. Asiatic sovereigns rewarded their faithful servants with beautiful slave-girls ; God would reward his faithful servants in like manner. On earth a believer might marry four wives ; in paradise he would be attended by any number of houris. On earth Muhammad was already the favoured messenger of God ; consequently on earth he was allowed to marry as many wives as he pleased. This simple faith was no stumbling-block to the Arabs ; it was in accord-

ance with their own ideas and usages. It was only CHAPTER I. a stumbling-block to heretics and unbelievers; but in the eyes of every Mussulman such heretics and unbelievers were the enemies of God and his prophet, and would be punished hereafter in the torments of hell.⁸

Muhammad was succeeded by a line of Arab Khalifs, who were the temporal and spiritual heads of the Mussulman empire. They were not prophets like Muhammad; they were the emperors and pontiffs of the world of Islam. Their history is of no moment in dealing with Mussulman India; but they are divided into three successive dynasties, which serve as landmarks in Mussulman annals. The Khalifs of Medina were the four successors of Muhammad, who reigned from 632 to 660.⁹ The Khalifs of Damascus were known as the Omeyads; they reigned

Three dynasties
of Khalifs:
Medina, Damas-
cus, and Bag-
dad.

⁸ It is a popular idea that the Arabs were always a polygamous people; and that Muhammad attempted to abate the evil by restricting them to four wives. But it would rather appear that few females were permitted to live; that a family of brothers were contented with one wife amongst them. Before the advent of Muhammad, female children were buried alive lest they should entail expense or shame upon the family. (See Koran, chaps. vi. and lxxxi.) Strabo, whose authority is undeniable, quotes some gross cases of polyandry and incest amongst the Arabs (Book xvi. chap. 4, sec. 25). Muhammad suppressed infanticide, polyandry, incest, and other depraved usages, by reviving the polygamy of the patriarchs; but he restricted every man to four wives. He has thus been abused as a sensualist, when possibly he deserves to be praised as a reformer.

⁹ The four successors of Muhammad were Abu Bakr, Omar, Othman, and Ali. Their names are household words with every Mussulman; they are associated with that great breach between the Sunní and the Shíah, which has divided the world of Islam into two hostile camps. All four had been elected, or at least recognized, by the congregation at Medina; but Abu Bakr, Omar, and Othman had been accepted only on account of their close friendship with Muhammad; whilst Ali's claim rested upon kinship as well as friendship. Ali had married Fátima, the daughter of the prophet; his two sons, Hasan and Husain, were the grandsons of the prophet. The Sunnis accepted all four Khalifs; the Shíahs rejected the first three as usurpers, and declared that Ali and his two sons, Hasan and Husain, were the only rightful successors of the prophet. All the early Mussulman conquerors of India were Sunnis; the breach between the Sunnis and the Shíahs finds expression in the later history of Mussulman India, when it will be brought more fully under review.

CHAPTER I. from 660 to 750. The Khalifs of Bagdad were known as the Abbasides; they reigned from 750 to 1258, when they were finally subverted by the Moghuls.¹⁰

Khalifs of Medina, 630-660: conquest of Syria and Persia.

The reigns of the four Khalifs of Medina scarcely lasted a generation, but within that brief period the Arab Mussulmans took Asia by storm. They poured out of the desert and overspread Syria and Persia like a destroying flood. They captured wealthy cities, sacked houses and palaces, and carried away multitudes of captives to be their slaves. Syrians and Persians struggled against them in vain. They plundered like brigands, but they fought like crusaders. Whilst filling the air with yells of God and his prophet, they cut to pieces the trained legions of Rome, and scattered the hosts of Persia. The civilized inhabitants of Western Asia had hitherto despised the Arabs as rude barbarians of the desert. They had held Muhammad in no esteem, and had scoffed at his pretensions. They soon found that resistance was not only vain, but led to utter ruin; to the loss of everything that made life dear; to the slavery of themselves and their wives, their sons and their daughters; often to the forced conversions of their women and unutterable shame.

Jews and Christians pay Jezya, or tribute.

Submission, however, did not necessarily involve the surrender of their religion, Jews and Christians might remain as they were, provided that they tendered their submission to the Khalif, and paid a certain tribute or capitation tax, which was called

¹⁰ A strong and bitter antagonism prevailed between the Oneyads and Abbasides, but it has no bearing upon the history of Mussulman India. It belongs only to the history of the Arab Khalifat.

Jezya. : But they were not allowed to expose the symbols or images of their respective religions, or to hinder their children from embracing Islam. They were subjected to many indignities. They were forbidden to ride on Saddles, or to carry arms, or to wear Mussulman costume. They were compelled to entertain for three days any Mussulman travellers that chose to quarter themselves in their houses. They were in fact treated as infidels and enemies of the prophet; to be tolerated on condition of paying Jezya, and nothing more.¹¹

Under such circumstances conversions must have become numerous. Those who turned away from Judaism or Christianity and accepted Muhammad as their prophet, might be scorned as apostates by their own people; but their own people had become the despised and persecuted. On the other hand, by accepting Muhammad the convert was received into the brotherhood of Islam. He shared in the glory, the spoil, and the license of the conquerors, and was qualified for holding high offices and commands.

The causes which enabled the rude barbarians of the desert to triumph over disciplined armies have always been open to question. It has been urged that the Syrians and Persians were sunk in effeminacy and luxury; that the Arabs were much harder soldiers, whilst they were equally skilful in the use

CHAPTER I.

Numerous con-verts.

Causes of the Arab ascendancy: the brotherhood of Islam.

¹¹ The terms upon which Jews and Christians were permitted to reside in Mussulman countries were originally laid down in the treaty of 637 between Khalif Omar and the Patriarch of Jerusalem. (See Ockley's History of the Saracens.) These restrictions were maintained in many Mussulman countries down to a recent period. One of the conditions of peace between Russia and the Khanates of Turkistan was that these restrictions should be removed.

Bigoted Mussulmans denied that idolaters should be permitted to carry on their idolatry even after payment of Jezya.

CHAPTER I. of the sword, spear, and bow. But all these conditions had been in existence from a remote antiquity, and yet the Arabs had been generally kept within their native deserts.¹² The fact appears to be that Islam had changed their organization. They were no longer a loose undisciplined force, divided by their tribal feuds. They were knitted together in the bonds of a brotherhood, which rendered them as strong as the Macedonian phalanx. Under such circumstances neither discipline nor valour could prevail against them.

Influence of women.

There was also another element of strength. The martial enthusiasm of the Arabs was stimulated to the highest pitch by women and religion. The women went with them to the battle. They played timbrels and they sang songs. They urged the men to fight by promised kisses and embraces. They drove back the faint-hearted by taunts and revilings. Meanwhile the blood of the Arab hero was warmed, not only by a burning zeal for God and his prophet, but by visions of the houris of paradise. If he escaped with victory he would be caressed by the fairest women in the camp. If he perished he would be received in the arms of heavenly beauties. Many a dying hero has drawn his last breath with a smile, dreaming that the houris were waving their green veils to welcome him as their lord and bridegroom.¹³

¹² The invasion of Persia by Zohák the Arabian, as recorded in the *Shah Námeh*, is exceptional.

¹³ The great battle of Ajnadin, in which the celebrated Khalid overthrew the legions of the emperor Heraclius, was certainly gained by this powerful incentive. At the beginning of the action Khalid cried out to his Arabs :—‘ Paradise and the houris are before your faces ; hell and the devil are behind your backs.’ Meanwhile the women were singing in the rear :—‘ Fight on, and we will kiss and embrace you ; turn not back, or we will hate and spurn you.’ At the first charge the

During the reigns of the Khalifs of Damascus, the Arabs were pushing their dominion further and further to the eastward. They overran Central Asia, and finally came in conflict with the Hindús in the neighbourhood of the river Indus. The Arab conquest of Central Asia is of deep significance. It throws some light upon the previous invasion of Alexander. It supplements the information supplied by the Chinese pilgrims. It opens up the ground which became the basis of operations during the Mussulman conquest of the Punjab and Hindustan.

CHAPTER I.
Khalifs of
Damascus,
660-750 : con-
quest of Central
Asia.

Central Asia consists of four oases more or less surrounded by desert. The oases have always been occupied by civilized populations dwelling in cities; but they are separated from each other by dreary wastes, sparsely peopled by Turkomans and other nomades, dwelling in tents. The oases are known by the names of Khorassan, Kábul, Bokhara, and Scinde. Khorassan might be described as a promontory of Persia, stretching out eastward into the desert of the Turkomans. Beyond this desert, still further to the eastward, is the territory of Kábul. North-west of Kábul is Bokhara; south-east of Kábul is Scinde. The relative position of these four regions may be best gathered from the accompanying map.¹⁴

Four oases :
Khorassan,
Kábul, Bok-
hara, and
Scinde.

Arabs could not prevail against the discipline of the legions. They began to retreat, when the women abused them for their cowardice and drove them back with the tent poles. The slaughter was terrible, but the Arabs gained the victory. *Ockley's History of the Saracens.*

¹⁴ There is some difficulty in mapping out these regions. Thus Bokhara is used to denote the region occupied in the present day by the three Usbeg Khanates of Khiva, Bokhara, and Khokand; but in the eighth century, the population was apparently Persian, and the Usbeks had not made their appearance. Again, Kábul is used to denote both Kábul and Kandahár; and the term Afghanistan is avoided because it would imply that the Afghans had already founded an independent empire, which is very doubtful. In the previous century the Chinese pilgrim

CHAPTER I.

Conquest of
Khorassan :
outposts at
Merv and
Herat.

The Arab conquest of Khorassan calls for no remark. When it was accomplished, the Arabs established two outposts in the eastern desert, one at Merv and the other at Herat. Merv lies to the north, and is the key of Bokhara. Herat lies two hundred miles to the south of Merv, and is the key to Kábul. As regards Scinde the Arabs had no outpost; and it is doubtful whether they ever maintained a permanent hold on Scinde.

Conquest of
Bokhara : the
cradle of the
Persians.

The conquest of Bokhara was perhaps the most important of the three. This region was known to the Greeks as Transoxiana, and to the Arabs as Mawar-an-Nahr, or "Beyond the Oxus."¹⁵ It was the original seat of the old Persian or Aryan population. Here the Arabs encountered the Persians in their ancient stronghold.¹⁶ Time after time the Arabs conquered the princes of Bokhara, and forced

Hiouen-Thsang found the whole country teeming with Buddhists. (See *ante*, vol. iii. chap. v.) It should also be added that Scinde is cut off from Persia more by the rude populations of Mekran and Beluchistan than by the desert of the Turkomans.

¹⁵ The entire region of Bokhara or Mawar-an-Nahr may be described as a large oasis, watered by the rivers Oxus and Jaxartes, and hemmed in on nearly every side by desert steppes. To the north, the dreary interminable wastes of Kiptchak,—the native home of the Kossak hordes,—which extend from the Caspian to the Chinese frontier, separate Turkistan, or did separate it, from Russia and Siberia. To the west, the great desert of Khiva—dotted with the felt tents of Turkoman nomads—separates it from Persia and Khorassan. To the east, the huge mountain wall—known as the Pamir steppe, or "Roof of the World"—protects it more or less from the Chinese Tartars of Kashghar, Yarkand, and Khotan. The southern frontier is more cultivated and thickly peopled. One line is formed by the river Oxus; further south, a second line is formed by the mountain barriers of the Hindú Kush. Between these two lines is the fertile plain of Balkh, the ancient Bactria, which was the centre of the Zoroastrian fire-worship, and has been celebrated for its corn, wine, and breed of horses from time immemorial. In the present day the region between the Hindú Kush and the Oxus is distributed amongst a number of petty states or provinces, including modern Bálkh and Badakshan, who all own allegiance to the Amír of Afghanistan.

¹⁶ Many of the localities mentioned in the Vendidat of the Avesta, Fargard I., can be identified with places in Mawar-an-Nahr. See Bleek's Translation of the Avesta, London, 1864.

them to accept Islam ; yet whenever the Arabs retired to Merv the princes threw off their allegiance, withheld tribute, and returned to their ancient faith and worship. Again and again the Arabs inflicted a fearful punishment ; apostates were slaughtered, cities were sacked, and women and children were enslaved. But apostasy and rebellion were soon as rife as ever. At last the Arabs took possession of the whole country. The Persian princes were either dethroned or used as puppets by the Arab officials. Police regulations were carried out with the utmost severity. No one was allowed to leave his house after sunset on pain of death.¹⁷ No one dared to whisper to his neighbour lest he should be charged with treason. Meantime the people were converted wholesale. An Arab teacher was quartered on every household until its inmates had accepted Islam ; any relapse or backsliding was punished with ruthless severity.¹⁸

The conquest of Kábul is more obscure. The people of the valleys may have been Buddhist as they were in the days of Hiuoen-Thsang.¹⁹ But the people of the hills were Afghans, and may have been easily induced to accept the Koran.²⁰ The Afghans are to all appearance of Hebrew descent. They style themselves the "children of Israel." They possess endless traditions of their Israelitish origin. Their features are Jewish.²¹

Conquest of
Kábul : Jewish
origin of the
Afghans.

¹⁷ These rigid police regulations were an early characteristic of Arab rule in refractory cities.

¹⁸ Vambery's History of Bokhara, chap. ii.

¹⁹ See ante, vol. iii., chap. 5.

²⁰ At the end of the tenth century the Afghans occupied the mountains of the Hindú Kush to the north of Kábul. See Ferishta's history of the reign of Sabaktigin, vol. i., Briggs's Translation.

²¹ The present Amír of Afghanistan, Shere Ali Khan, in character and

CHAPTER I. They perform sacrifices resembling the passover and scape-goat. They punish blasphemers by stoning. They divide the lands by lot amongst the families of a tribe after the manner described in the book of Numbers. They are much given to worship on high places.²²

Conquest of Scinde : persecution and toleration.

The conquest of Scinde is the first recorded collision between Mussulmans and Hindús.²³ The Arabs had traded with India from a remote antiquity; they brought away cottons, spices, jewels, and female slaves. The war originated in a dispute about an Arab ship which had been detained in Scinde, and which the Raja refused to restore. The Arabs began to make reprisals, and the war soon took a religious form. Kásim, the general of the Arabs, offered the usual alternative, Islam or tribute.²⁴ Both were refused, and the Arabs spent their rage upon the idolaters. Kásim circumcised many Bráhmans by force, but they still refused to accept Islam. He was so enraged at their obstinacy that he put to

physiognomy is a type of Saul, the son of Kish, whom the Afghans generally claim as their ancestor.

²² The evidences of the Jewish origin of the Afghans have been collected by Dr Bellew, and will be found in the second chapter of his *Journal of a Political Mission to Afghanistan in 1857*. London, 1862. The Afghans are said to have descended from the Ten Tribes who were carried away by the king of Assyria, and placed amongst the cities of the Medes. But they are different men from the Jews of Arabia who had rejected Muhammad. The Jews of Arabia were orthodox colonists from Judaea and Jerusalem, who were expecting a Messiah of the house of David, and refused to accept a son of Ishmael, like Muhammad, as their Messiah. The Ten Tribes were a turbulent people, who had revolted from the house of David and knew nothing of a Messiah. Such men would become easy converts to Islam.

²³ See especially the *Fatúhul Buldán* and *Chách-náma* translated in Elliot's *History of India*, edited by Professor Dowson, vol. i. Other histories of Scinde are to be found in the same collection.

²⁴ The route taken by Kásim is somewhat obscure. It probably lay along the coast of the Persian Gulf and Indian Ocean in an easterly direction towards the Indus.

death all who were more than seventeen, and he enslaved all who were under seventeen. The Raja of Scinde advanced against him with a great army, but was defeated and slain by the Arabs. Two daughters of the Raja were taken captive, and sent as a present to the Khalif of Damascus.²⁵ The widow of the Raja made a last stand at the city of Bráhmanábád. The Rajpoot garrison was reduced to extremity, and performed the rite of Johur;²⁶ the women burnt themselves alive with their children, whilst the men rushed out and perished sword in hand. After a while the Hindús came to an understanding with the Arabs. They agreed to pay tribute; but a nice question of toleration was raised. The temples had been destroyed, worship had been forbidden, and the lands and money allowances of the Bráhmans had been confiscated. Did the payment of the tribute warrant the restoration of idolatry? The question was decided in favour of toleration; and the people were permitted to rebuild their temples, and restore the worship of the gods; whilst the Bráhmans recovered their lands and allowances.

Under this tolerant rule Kásim made friends with neighbouring Rajas, and projected an invasion of Hindustan. But his career was suddenly brought to a close. The two Rajpoot princesses had reached Damascus; their beauty had touched the heart of the Khalif; but they accused Kásim of having dishonoured them. The Khalif was furious. He issued orders that Kásim should be sewn up in a raw hide and sent to Damascus.²⁷ Kásim perished

*Story of the two
Rajpoot prin-
cesses.*

²⁵ The invasion of Scinde took place in the reign of Walid the First, the sixth Khalif of the Omeyad dynasty.

²⁶ See *ante*, vol. iii., chap. vii.

²⁷ This mode of execution was one of the studied forms of torture which are

CHAPTER I. on the way, but his remains were carried to the Khalif. The princesses were told of his death, and then said that he was innocent ; they confessed that they had told a lie in order to be revenged on their father's murderer. They were put to a horrible death, but they had avenged the death of their father.²⁸

Khalifs of Bagdad, 750-1258 :
Harún al Ras-híd and Al Mamún, 786-833.

The Khalifs of Bagdad superseded the Khalifs of Damascus in 750 A.D. During the first century of their dominion they dazzled the eyes of Europe as well as of Asia. The reigns of Harún al Rashíd and Al Mamún lasted from 786 to 833 ; they form the golden period of Arab dominion. The two Khalifs were heroes of the Arabian Nights ; the contemporaries of Egbert and Charles the Great. They dwelt in palaces, gardens, and pavilions, surrounded by poets, wits, story-tellers, musicians, and beautiful women. They studied the sciences ; they patronized astronomers, chemists, mathematicians, philosophers, and historians. Every mosque had its school, and almost every town had its college or university.²⁹

peculiar to oriental nations. During the reign of Shah Abbás the Great, who reigned over Persia towards the close of the sixteenth century, a refractory general suffered in like manner. He was sewn up in a raw ox-hide, and daily fed, until the hide began to shrink from the heat of the sun, and he died in agony. See Olearius's Travels in Persia, Book vi., page 263.

²⁸ According to some histories the two girls were walled round with brick and left to starve to death. According to others they were dragged to death at the tails of horses. There is a conflict of authorities as to the length of the period during which the Arabs occupied Scinde after the death of Kásim. See Elliot's History of India, by Professor Dowson, vol. i.

²⁹ The reign of Harún al Rashíd is perhaps the culminating point of Arab grandeur. His sovereignty, temporal as well as spiritual, was acknowledged from the Mediterranean to the Indus, from the northern steppes to the Indian Ocean. He defeated the armies of Rome, captured the island of Cyprus, and compelled the Emperor Nicephorus to pay him tribute. He sent an embassy to Charles the Great ; amongst the presents was a water-clock, which excited the wonder of Europe. His patronage of learning has made him famous for all time. He never

All this while the Arab language dominated over the Persian. It was the language of the Koran, and spread abroad with the Koran. It was the only language taught in the schools. Greek books were translated, not into Persian, but into Arabic. The Arab yoke pressed heavily upon the Persians, and signs of revolt began to appear. False prophets disturbed the minds of the masses. Mokanna, the "veiled prophet of Khorassan," and other fanatical preachers of the same type, opposed the prophet of the Arabs, and were followed by multitudes. Military adventurers, half hero and half brigand, were joined by lawless bands, and conquered whole provinces. In 870, a man of this stamp, known as Yakúb the brazier, became king of Persia, and set the Khalif of Bagdad at defiance. After twenty years he marched against Bagdad to dethrone the Arab Khalif; but perished on the way.³⁰ Other ephemeral dynasties sprang into existence, and then disappeared.

Meanwhile the Khalifs were helpless ; their temporal power withered away ; they dwindled into

Collapse of the Arab Khalifat.
built a mosque without adding a school to it. He was known to Christendom as "Aaron the sage."

But amidst all this outward pomp and splendour there were skeletons in the court at Bagdad. Plots, intrigues, and treachery were ever at work. One day a viceroy might be in rebellion ; on the morrow one of his own followers might carry his bleeding head to the Khalif. One day a minister might be treated as a confidential friend ; on the morrow he might be put to death with all his family. One day a favourite-mistress might be flattered, caressed, and indulged in every whim ; on the morrow she might be sewn in a sack weighted with stones, and dropped in the Tigris. The tales of the Arabian Nights make frequent reference to illicit love and cruel murder ; they are but the reflex of the depravity which prevailed in the pavilions and gardens of Bagdad.

³⁰ The career of Yakúb, the brazier of Seistan, is very obscure. In some respects it bears a strange resemblance to that of Kaveh the blacksmith, the hero of the Sháh Námeh, who overthrew Zohák the Arab usurper and placed Feridun upon the throne of Persia. The point will be brought under review hereafter. See Appendix I., Sháh Námeh.

CHAPTER I. pontiffs, grasping at the shadow of authority when its substance was wanting. They affected to treat the new rulers as viceroys under the Khalifat; sent them dresses of honour and insignia of investiture; instigated them to make war upon each other; and waited vainly for the time when they could depose these rebellious vassals and recover their temporal sovereignty.

Persian revival
under the Sámáni, 900-1000.

Towards the end of the ninth century the Persian revival was associated with the Sámáni empire of Bokhara. The history of this empire is obscure, but significant. Ismail Sámáni, the founder of the dynasty, was a Persian by birth and Mussulman by religion.³¹ He established his authority over Bokhara; after the death of Yakúb, he extended it over Khorassan, and other Persian territories to the westward. The Sámáni dynasty lasted throughout the whole of the tenth century. During that period the Persian language was driving back the Arabic. It took the place of Arabic in the colleges and schools. Poets and other literati composed their works in Persian. Even theologians, who reverenced Arabic as the language of the Koran, began to write their commentaries in Persian. From that day to this the Arabic has never regained its hold on Persian territory.³²

Turkish uprising : slaves became masters.

Meantime there was a new element at work in Central Asia; it was destined to overwhelm Persian and Arab, and extend its dominion to East-

³¹ The Sámánis were not Shiáhs, but Sunnis. The Shíah religion seems to have been in great disfavour at this period. All the military leaders that came to the front were professed Sunnis. Firdusi the poet was a Sunni, although he was strongly suspected of Shíah tendencies.

³² Vambery has discussed the Persian revival at considerable length in his History of Bokhara.

ern Europe. This was the Turkish uprising; one of the most important revolutions in modern Asiatic history. From a remote antiquity the Turks have overflowed the steppes and highlands of the north and north-east, and pressed towards Central Asia. Under the Sámáni rule, independent tribes and individual adventurers were more or less on the move; but large numbers of Turks were also sold as slaves throughout Central and Western Asia. They were strong, brave, and generally faithful. They became zealous believers in Islam. Consequently they were often treated with peculiar favour, and promoted to offices of trust and responsibility. At Bagdad the Khalifs formed body guards of Turkish slaves, and relied upon them for protection against rebellion or treachery. But the body guards were soon conscious of their strength, and grew into masters. They became Mamelukes, and deposed the appointed Khalifs at will. A similar revolution was in progress in the empire of the Sámáni princes. The Turks were at first a source of strength to the Persian revival. They were good servants so long as they were held in by the strong hand of Ismail Sámáni. Under his successors they began to prove dangerous. A Turkish slave named Alptigín, who had been brought up in the royal household at Bokhara, was appointed governor of Khorassan. He interfered in the succession to the throne at Bokhara; but he was defeated. Accordingly he fled over the Turkoman desert from Khorassan to Kábúl, and founded a kingdom in the city of Ghazní.

The Turkish kingdom of Ghazní or Kábúl plays an important part in the history of Mussulman

Foundation of
the Turkish
kingdom of

CHAPTER I. India. It was separated from the Punjab by the Ghazní : first collision be- river Indus. The Turks of Ghazní were on the western side of the Indus; the Rajpoots of the Hindú.

between Turk and
Punjab were on the eastern side.³³ A collision between the two was inevitable. It did not, however, begin in the reign of Alptigín, but in that of his successor Sabaktigín.³⁴ The story of the early wars is of little interest; one campaign, the most important of them all, may be taken as a type. On this occasion Sabaktigín was accompanied by his son Mahmúd, who afterwards became famous as the first Mussulman conqueror in India.

War between
Sabaktigín and
Jaipál.

Jaipál was Raja of the Punjab. Sabaktigín had raided his territory; in return Jaipál invaded Ghazní territory. The two armies were arrayed against each other, but there was no battle. The Rajpoot host was scattered by a storm, and Jaipál was forced to sue for peace. Sabaktigín was inclined to make terms. His son Mahmúd was opposed to any peace. He was anxious to humble the pride of the Rajpoot by a victory which should glorify Islam in the eyes of the idolaters. Jaipál, however, sent messengers saying, that unless peace was made, he and his kinsmen would die like Rajpoots. They would put out the eyes of all their elephants,

³³ The Rajpoots were also in possession of territories on the western bank of the Indus to the northward of the Kábul river; but it is difficult to map out the exact limits, and the point is of no importance.

³⁴ Sabaktigín was originally a Turkish slave, who rose in the favour of Alptigín. After the death of Alptigín in 975, Sabaktigín married his daughter and succeeded to the throne of Ghazní. It is curious that both Alptigín and Sabaktigín should have been originally slaves and eventually kings; but Joseph was sold by his brethren to the Ishmaelites and rose to be the vizier of Pharaoh. The scandal as regards Potiphar's wife is wanting in Mussulman history; but it is not wanting in the domestic life of the modern Usbegs. See Abbott's Journey from Herat to Khiva, vol. i., chap. 3. Also Appendix to vol. ii.

slaughter their wives and children, destroy all their treasures, and then fall to and perish sword in hand. Nothing should be left the Mussulmans but dust and ashes, dead bodies and scattered bones. Sabaktigín then made a peace. Jaipál promised to give money, jewels, and elephants, and to cede a certain territory; and hostages were exchanged for the fulfilment of the conditions.

But Jaipál played falsely. He was not a Kshatriya, but a Bráhman; and he listened to the evil counsel of other Bráhmans. He returned to his city of Lahore, which is the capital of the Punjab; and there he broke his promises, imprisoned the hostages, and summoned all the Rajas far and wide to come and help him.³⁵ A vast array was gathered together; a host of horse, foot, and elephants crossed the river Indus, and encamped like locusts in the plain of Peshawar. But the levies had been assembled in haste; they were badly equipped and little better than a mob. Sabaktigín sought to pierce their centre. He divided his army into troops of five hundred horse each, and ordered each troop to charge in succession until the Hindús were wearied out. He then united the whole in a general charge and drove the invaders into the Indus.

Treachery of
Jaipál: triumph
of Sabaktigín.

³⁵ The Pál Rajas of the Punjab appear at this period to have had all the Rajas of Hindustan at their beck and call as far eastward as Kalinjar near Allahabad, and as far southward as Ujain on the slope of the Vindhya mountains. The Punjab was an outlying kingdom of the Rajpoot league of defence; the first that would have to resist any invader from the north-west. The Pál Rajas would thus hold the leadership of the Rajpoot league of defence. The fact is brought out more prominently hereafter in dealing with the campaigns of Mahmúd.

The Rajpoot kingdoms at this period were Lahore, Delhi, Kanouj, Gwalior, Kalinjar, Ajmír, and Ujain. An irregular line drawn in a south-east direction from Lahore would run through Gwalior and Kanouj to Kalinjar. Another line drawn due south or south-west from Delhi would run through Ajmír to Ujain.

CHAPTER I. Slave or no slave, Sabaktigín was a soldier. Peace was made between the Turk and the Rajpoot, but Sabaktigín guarded against future attacks. Henceforth he held the Khaiber pass by maintaining ten thousand horsemen in the plain of Peshawar.³⁶

Death of Sabaktigín, 997 : a landmark in Asiatic history.

Sabaktigín died in 997. His reign has been overshadowed by the more brilliant career of his son Mahmúd, but it is a land-mark in Asiatic annals. A new era was about to dawn. The Turk was beginning to play his part in history ; to take the leadership of Islam ; to carry on the war against Brahmanism on the east, and Christianity on the west, which has continued down to our own time.

Characteristics of the history of Mussulman India.

The history of the Mussulmans during the four centuries between Muhammad and Mahmúd is thus brought to a close. The campaigns of Mahmúd open up a new era ; he established a permanent dominion in India. There were frequent changes of dynasty. The Afghan succeeded to the Turk, and the Moghul succeeded to the Afghan ; but from the days of Mahmúd the Mussulmans never lost their hold on India. For eight centuries the Mussulmans were the strongest people in India, and although they have ceased to be the paramount power, their dominion lingers to this day.³⁷

Four epochs.

The history of Mussulman India may be mapped

³⁶ Tarikh Yamini of Utbi. Elliot's History, edited by Dowson, vol. ii.

³⁷ There are traditions that both Muhammad Kasim and Sabaktigín established a dominion in India, but the point is of minor importance. The fact is undoubtedly that Mahmúd founded an empire, and he is generally regarded as the first Mussulman conqueror of India. It might be added that the Moplahs and other Mussulmans settled on the Malabar coast as early as the seventh century of the Christian era. These waifs and strays of history are obscure in themselves ; but they will be found hereafter to throw some light on existing populations.

out into four epochs, representing four stages of CHAPTER I. development. In the language of Mussulmans they would be termed the Sunní, the Shíah, the Súfí, and the Sunní-revival. In popular language they might be termed the orthodox, the schismatical, the heretical, and the puritanical.³⁸

The Sunní or orthodox element found expression during the Mussulman conquest of the Punjab and Hindustan ; namely, from the eleventh to the fourteenth centuries of the Christian era. The Sunnís believed in God as a personal ruler ; in Muhammad as his prophet ; in the four Khalifs as the rightful successors of Muhammad. During this period, with the exception of one significant revolt, the Hindú element worked but feebly.

The Shíah or schismatical element found expression after the Mussulman conquest of the Dekhan ; namely, from the fourteenth to the sixteenth centuries. The Shíahs rejected the four Khalifs ; they urged that Ali, the son-in-law of Muhammad, and Hasan and Husain, the sons of Ali, were the only rightful successors of the prophet. They were imbued with a sentimental devotion towards Ali and his two sons, which grew into reverence and worship. During this period the Hindú element worked strongly.

The Súfí or heretical element found expression Súfí, or heretical period.

³⁸ Hitherto the history of the Mussulman empire in India has been divided according to dynasties. Such a division, however, is without historical meaning. The reigns of individual Sultans are valuable, because they present types of character. But the history of Musulman dynasties, however interesting to their descendants, awakens neither associations nor ideas in the minds of general readers. They burden the memory with catalogues of names which indicate nothing and suggest nothing ; they throw no light whatever upon the political and religious developments during the periods that they exercised sovereign sway.

CHAPTER I. during the establishment of the Moghul empire in India in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. The Súfi religion was a development of the Shíáh. It received its impetus from the old Persian worship of fire and the sun which worked beneath the crust of Islam. It spiritualized the Koran. God became the supreme spirit. Muhammad, his son-in-law Ali, and his grandsons Hasan and Husain, became incarnations of the supreme spirit. The heaven of houris symbolized the rapture of communion with the supreme spirit. Man was the lover, God the beloved; the lover and the beloved were one. During this period Hinduism worked its strongest. It imbued Mussulman thinkers with a belief in the transmigrations of the soul; in the final union of the soul with the supreme spirit. It brought the worship of Ali and his two sons, as incarnations of God, into harmony with the worship of Rama and Krishna, as incarnations of Vishnu. But the movement failed to reconcile Mussulmans and Hindús. It drifted into indifference and scepticism, and was finally swamped in a religious revival.

Sunní reaction,
or puritanical
period.

The Sunní or puritanical reaction naturally followed the reign of scepticism and immorality. It found expression during the culmination and decadence of the Moghul empire in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. It was a revival of the orthodox religion in a puritanical form. The Moghul rule became bitterly hostile to the Shíáhs. It harassed, insulted, and maddened the Hindús. It wasted its strength against enemies within and without the pale of Islam. In the eighteenth century it shrivelled into a pageant. It lingered on till the middle of the nineteenth century under the

shadow of British supremacy, and finally perished CHAPTER I.
in the mutiny of Fifty-seven.³⁹

³⁹ The general history of Hindú India has been treated in previous volumes. It has been divided into epochs, but cannot be reduced to chronological annals. The history of Mussulman India however imparts life and sequence to later Hindú legend. This is strongly marked in Southern India. Accordingly Hindú history is separately dealt with in the fourth chapter of the present volume.

CHAPTER II.

SUNNÍ CONQUEST OF THE PUNJAB AND HINDUSTAN.

A.D. 1001 TO 1526.

CHAPTER II.

*Invaded and in-
vaders.*

BEFORE tracing out the progress of the Mussulman conquest in India, it may be as well to bring under review the chief characteristics of the invaded and the invaders.

*Characteristics
of the Hindús.*

The Hindús were children of the past; the outcome of an age when mankind was governed by priests, and priests were reverenced as gods. From a remote antiquity they had been the slaves of a civilization which crushed out all historical life, and turned men and women into automata.¹ They were grouped into families, villages, castes; and hereditary tribes and professions; and they had no political developments outside these charmed circles. They lived in narrow grooves from the cradle to the burning ghát; generation followed generation in dull monotony. The Indian continent was divided amongst a number of little kingdoms, each having its own Raja, its own military aristocracy, and its own Brahmanical hierarchy. There was a family likeness between them all, but

¹ It will be seen hereafter that some of these remarks are not applicable to the Rajpoots. The Rajpoots, as already seen, were the first Hindús whom the Mussulmans had to encounter.

no family ties. Congeries of kingdoms were sometimes linked together in an empire by a conqueror like Asoka or Siláditya; but the links were always liable to be broken, and then the kingdoms returned to their original isolation. There were differences of language; consequently there must have been differences of race; but all had become more or less Brahmanized. There were no living nationalities bound together by a common patriotism. The masses had stagnated in insulated communities under the common name of Hindús. They had played out their parts in the world that had passed away; they had outlived their history.

The Rajpoots were perhaps an exception. They, too, were an ancient people, but they were warriors and conquerors, imbued with a love for chivalrous adyventure. Their aristocracy was feudal; and traces still remain of constitutional forms. They were a proud people, with a keen sense of honour. They preferred death to shame or disgrace; if defeat was inevitable, they slaughtered their wives and children, and perished sword in hand. The Rajpoots were the first Hindús that the Mussulmans encountered after crossing the Indus. The Rajpoot pale extended from the river Indus eastward to the neighbourhood of Allahabad, and southward to the slopes of the Vindhya range.² Relics of their dominion are, however, to be found in the remotest jungles of the Dekhan and Peninsula, but Rajpoot

Rajpoots east-
ward of the
Indus.

* There is some difficulty about the eastern frontier of the Rajpoot pale. Kalinjar is the furthest kingdom to the eastward which is said to have sent its quota to fight in the Rajpoot league against Sabaktigin and Mahmud. The fortress of Kalinjar is situated in Bundelkund to the south of Allahabad. At a later period the empire of Kanouj is said to have extended to an indefinite distance to the eastward of Allahabad. See *infra*.

CHAPTER II. history prior to the advent of the Mussulmans is buried in myth and legend.³

Mussulmans
westward of the
Indus.

The Mussulmans westward of the Indus might be called a new people; their history was only beginning. The Turks were becoming the prevailing type; they were fresh from the northern steppes. The mixed populations—Persians, Arabs, Turks, and Afghans⁴—had been quickened into new life by the Mussulman religion; all may be included under the general term of Mussulmans. They were hardy, enterprising, and warlike; greedy after plunder and dominion. Their political organization was loose; but their common belief in Islam bound them together in a sort of nationality.⁵

Mahmúd of
Ghazní, 997-
1030.

Mahmúd, the son of Sabaktigín, succeeded to the throne of Ghazní in 997 A.D. He was thirty years of age; he was already the foremost Asiatic prince of his generation. He was sovereign of Kábul and Kandahar. On the west he held possession of Khorassan; but on the north he was threatened by Bokhara.⁶ From the first he appears to

³ Ancient traditions of Rajpoots and other Hindús are treated in vols. i. and ii. The traditions of their later history have been brought under general review in vol. iii.

⁴ Persians, Arabs, and Turks appear to have intermarried. Thus Mahmúd of Ghazní was the son of a Turk by a Persian woman. The Afghans, however, like Jews in general, have preserved the purity of their race.

⁵ The political status of the oases of Central Asia had frequently changed. Thus in the eighth century Khorassan, Bokhara, and Kábul had become provinces of the Arab empire of the Khalifat. In the ninth century they were being formed into independent kingdoms. In the tenth century they were included in the Sámáni empire of Bokhara. In the eleventh century they fell under the dominion of Mahmúd of Ghazní. Subsequently they formed part of the empire of the Seljuk Turks.

⁶ A number of petty details are related by Mussulman historians, which are useful as illustrations of the history of Central Asia, but interrupt the main story of Mussulman conquest in India. Thus Mahmúd was not a legitimate son; his mother was only a Persian slave-girl. His younger half-brother Ismail was the legitimate heir, and succeeded Sabaktigín, but was soon ousted from the throne

have planned the conquest of the Punjab. His CHAPTER II.
military position was far better than that of Alexander of Macedon. He was master in Kábul, and Ghazní was the basis of his operations. His Turks were splendid horsemen, and were familiar with Indian warfare. But he had one difficulty. Whilst he was absent in the Punjab his dominions in Central Asia were exposed to attacks from the north and westward. Until therefore the after part of his reign, when he had conquered all Central Asia, his wars were little better than raids, and he was liable at any moment to be recalled to Ghazní.

In November, 1001, Mahmúd moved his army down the valley of the Kábul river, and halted in the plain of Peshawar. He would not, however, bring all his forces into the field. He picked out ten thousand of his best horsemen, and sent the remainder back to Ghazní. The result is told in glowing language by the Mussulman historian.⁷ "The horsemen of Mahmúd were as brave as lions, and as fierce as dragons. The infidel Jaipál came up from the eastward, and crossed the Indus with a vast array of horse and foot and elephants. He thought to overwhelm the believers; he had yet to learn that when God gives the order a small army can overcome a great host. The believers began

Advance of the
Mussulmans to
Peshawar;
defeat and
death of Jaipál.

by Mahmúd and imprisoned for life. Again, the Sámáni dominion of Bokhara had passed into the hands of a ruler named Elik Khan. Mahmúd formed an alliance with Elik Khan, and took his daughter in marriage; but whilst he was absent in India, Elik Khan tried to seize Khorassan. It is needless to follow these details; it will suffice to say that Mahmúd ultimately conquered Bokhara. Compare Ferishta, translated by Briggs; also Elliot's History, vol. ii.

⁷ Tárikh Yamíni. Elliot's History of India, vol. ii. The passage in inverted commas is a condensed paraphrase. There is a conflict of authorities as regards the number of horsemen in Mahmúd's army; some say ten thousand, others fifteen thousand.

CHAPTER II. the battle. Before noon thousands of the idolaters had become the prey of beasts and birds. Elephants were lying helpless ; their legs pierced with arrows, and their trunks cut about with swords. Jaipál was taken prisoner with all his kinsmen. When the battle was over, these enemies of God were despoiled of all their jewels, bound with ropes, and paraded before the Sultan. Some were dragged by the cheek ; others were driven by blows. In this manner they were put to shame, and Mahmúd triumphed over the idolater. Jaipál made over fifty elephants to his conqueror, and agreed to send a yearly tribute to Ghazní ; he then returned to Lahore. But Jaipál could not live after his disgrace. He had been a captive in the hands of the enemy, and never could reign again. He gave his kingdom to his son Anandpál, and then ordered a pile of wood to be made ready. The pile was set on fire, and Jaipál threw himself upon it and perished in the flames."

Anandpál tributary to Mahmúd : the Rajpoot league.

For some time afterwards Anandpál was submissive to Mahmúd. He sent his yearly tribute to Ghazní, and was suffered to remain at peace. But Mahmúd was engaged in other wars, and watching other enemies ; and Anandpál grew refractory and defiant, and stirred up other Rajas to help him against the Turks. The Rajas of Delhi and Ajmír, of Ujain and Gwalior, of Kalinjar and Kanouj, collected all their armies and led them into the Punjab. The Rajpoots, one and all, were filled with hatred against the Turks. There was no dissension and no quarrel. Even the women joined in the enthusiasm, and sold their jewels or spun their cotton in order to keep the armies in the field.

Spirit of the Rajpoot league.

Many Rajas had been friendly with Alexander,

but they all hated Mahmúd. When Alexander CHAPTER II. invaded India, rival princes submitted and prayed for his support. He was no enemy to their religion, and neither women nor Bráhmans had anything to fear. But Mahmúd had come to destroy temples, to break down idolatry, and to carry away men and women into slavery. Accordingly the Rajpoot princes were united against him as one man, and the women were as eager as the men.

Mahmúd knew his danger and took measures accordingly. He entrenched his camp in the plain of Peshawar, having his archers in front and his cavalry behind. For forty days the Turks and Rajpoots were encamped face to face. Meantime the Rajpoots received daily re-enforcements; even the wild tribes from the northern mountains, known as the Gakkars, came down to help them against the invaders. At last Mahmúd put his army in battle-array, and ordered the archers to begin the fight. At that moment the infidel Gakkars got behind the archers, and began to cut down the Turkish horsemen with their sharp knives. Many fell, but meantime the Turkish archers were doing great execution. They blinded the elephants with their arrows, and assailed them with fire-balls, until the maddened brutes trampled down the Hindú infantry and caused utter confusion. Then Mahmúd ordered his cavalry to charge. The horsemen raised their swords and maces, and galloped down upon the Hindús with loud cries of "Allah Akber!" The Hindús wavéréd and fled. The believers pursued them for two days and two nights, pillaging and slaughtering. They plundered the great temple of Nagarkot on the hill Kangra, and destroyed all the

Mussulman
victory at Pesh-
awar.

CHAPTER II. idols.⁸ At last Anandpál sued for peace, and sent tribute and war elephants ; and the peace lasted all the days of Anandpál.⁹

Destruction of
Thánesar:
Mahmúd an-
nexes the Pun-
jab..

Meanwhile Mahmúd resolved to destroy the temple of Thánesar.¹⁰ Anandpál sent provisions for his army, but prayed him to spare Thánesar. Mahmúd replied :—‘ How can I spare Thánesar when God has ordered that idolatry should be destroyed ? ’ So the Sultan plundered the temple of Thánesar, broke down the idols, and then returned to Ghazní. After this Anandpál died, and the Sultan annexed the Punjab, and made it a province of his kingdom of Ghazní.

Mahmúd's in-
vasions of Hin-
dustan.

When Mahmúd had established his dominion in the Punjab, he marched an army into Hindustan, and threatened the cities of Kanouj on the Ganges and Mathurá on the Jumna.¹¹ He spared Kanouj because the Raja made his submission ; he even concluded an alliance with the Raja. But at Mathurá he plundered the temples and broke down the idols. In this way the Sultan invaded India

⁸ Nagarkot was situated upon the upper courses of the Rávi and Sutlej, near the very spot where Alexander was compelled to turn back by his discontented Macedonians.

⁹ The second defeat of Anandpál illustrates the fitful character of the Hindú people. They had marched against Mahmúd of Ghazní in a sudden burst of enthusiasm, but when defeated they resigned themselves to their fate. Anandpál became a tributary vassal, and the great cities fell back into their monotonous repose.

¹⁰ Thánesar was situated about a hundred and twenty miles to the north of the city of Delhi. See Elliot's History of India, vol. ii., Appendix D.

¹¹ The strategy of Mahmúd is remarkable. The three successive stages in the invasion of Hindustan from the north-west have already been indicated. (See *ante*, vol. iii., chap. i.) The first line was held by the Raja of Delhi, who seems to have been a powerful sovereign. The second line was represented by Kanouj and Mathurá; the latter city being over-against Agra. Mahmúd avoided a collision with Delhi. He marched due east along the southern slopes of the Himalayas as far as the upper stream of the Ganges, and then elbowed towards the south and fell upon Kanouj and Mathurá without coming into collision with Delhi.

twelve times ; some say sixteen times. Every time CHAPTER II. he returned to Ghazní with heaps of gold and jewels, and such a multitude of slaves that Ghazní appeared like an Indian city. Every soldier had many slaves, male and female.¹²

When Mahmúd was growing old he was bent on destroying the temple of Somnáth in the land of Guzerat.¹³ • This temple was one of the holiest in India. The idolaters said that Somnáth, the Moon-god, had set up an idol pillar there in honour of Iswara ;¹⁴ and that Somnáth caused the tides to ebb and flow in worship of the pillar. Every day the pillar was washed with holy water from the Ganges. Every new and full moon there was great worship. But every time the moon was eclipsed multitudes of pilgrims came to worship the pillar and bathe in the sea. A thousand Bráhmans dwelt at Somnáth to offer sacrifice. Five hundred damsels, many of whom were daughters of Rajas, were dwelling within the temple to dance and sing before the idol pillar.

The idolaters had stirred up the wrath of Mahmúd against Somnáth. They said that Somnáth was offended with the other gods and therefore per-

¹² The minor expeditions of Mahmúd are devoid of historical significance. They are little better than repetitions of the same story of plunder, idol-breaking, and slavery. From antiquarian and geographical points of view, the routes which he followed are exceptionally interesting. The student may be referred to the valuable essay on the expeditions of Mahmúd, by Professor Dowson, which seems to exhaust the subject. It forms Appendix D to Elliot's History of India, vol. ii.

¹³ Somnáth was about a thousand miles from Ghazní. From Ghazní to Múltan, on the southern frontier of the Punjab, the route was comparatively easy. From Múltan to Guzerat the country was desert. The eastern route, via Ajmír, was the easiest, and Mahmúd adopted it in his march to Guzerat. The western route lay through the burning sands of Scinde, and it will be seen that Mahmúd was compelled to return this way.

Expedition
against Soin-
náth in Guzerat.

¹⁴ Iswara is the same as Siva. See *ante*, vol. ii. chap. viii.

CHAPTER II. mitted Mahmúd to destroy them.¹⁵ Then Mahmúd swore that he would destroy Somnáth, and teach the idolaters that there was no God but Allah, and that Muhammad⁶ was his prophet. He marched from Ghazní to Multan with thirty thousand horsemen. He gathered together thirty thousand camels and loaded them with corn and water; for beyond Multan the land was desert. When all was ready the Sultan went to Somnáth. On the way he sacked the city of Ajmír;¹⁶ for the Raja of Ajmír and all his people had gone out of the city in great fear when they heard of his coming. After this he saw many forts with idols inside, which were chamberlains and heralds to the god of Somnáth, and as he went he destroyed them all.

Halt at
Somnáth.

The Sultan and his horsemen halted before Somnáth on a Thursday. The temple was guarded like a fortress because of its treasures. It stood upon a headland out at sea. The waves washed three of its sides; and the fourth side, which joined on the main, was fortified with walls and battlements and manned with Rajpoots. When the Musulmans galloped up the Rajpoots scoffed at them, saying:—"The god of Somnáth will destroy you all."

The battle. On Friday the battle began. The Turkish

¹⁵ This expression is exactly what temple Bráhmans would use. Mathurá was the cradle of the worship of Krishna as Vishnu. Somnáth was a centre of the worship of Siva. When, therefore, it was told at Somnáth that Mahmúd had destroyed the idols at Mathurá, the Saivite Bráhmans explained that Siva had wreaked his vengeance upon Vishnu.

¹⁶ Ajmír was situated about half way between Delhi and Ujain. Ajmír had sent its quota to assist both Jaipál and Anandpál; but had never been previously attacked by Mahmúd. When Mahmúd returned to his own country, the Rajpoots of Ajmír were in full force, and compelled him to take the route through the western desert.

archers drove the Rajpoots from the battlements, CHAPTER II. whilst the swordsmen planted their ladders and climbed the walls, crying "Allah Akber." Then they fought the Rajpoots with great slaughter until the night closed in and they could see no longer.

On Saturday the battle was renewed. The Sultan prostrated himself upon the ground before all his army and prayed to God for victory.¹⁷ The battle raged in front of the gateway. The Rajpoots fought like devils, but the believers gained the mastery. Many Rajpoots ran into the temple, threw themselves down before the pillar, implored the god for help, and then ran back and perished sword in hand. At last the Rajpoots saw that all was lost, fled to their boats, and put out to sea.

When the fight was over, Sultan Mahmúd and his chief men entered the temple, ^{The temple and its treasures.} whilst the Bráhmans clamoured around them. The temple was large, but as gloomy as a cave, for there was only one lamp. The roof was supported by fifty-six pillars, which were graven with images and set with precious stones. Many bells were also hanging by a golden chain to call the Bráhmans to worship. The Sultan passed through the temple, and entered the inner chamber; he saw the idol pillar which was nine feet high above the ground. The Bráhmans clamoured more than ever, and offered heaps of gold if he would spare the idol. Mahmúd cried out:—"I come not to sell idols, but to destroy them." Then he raised his mace and struck the idol pillar; and it

¹⁷ According to Ferishta the Rajpoots at Somnáth had received large reinforcements.

CHAPTER II. was broken into pieces, and piles of rubies and diamonds were found in that place.¹⁸

Sultan Mahmúd stayed a whole year in Guzerat. He delighted in its gardens, orchards, and green fields; and would have built a city there, but it was too far from Ghazní. He placed a Hindú prince upon the throne of Guzerat, and then tried to return to Multan by the way of Ajmír; but the Rajpoots of Ajmír attacked him in great force, and the guides led him astray into sandy wastes where there was no water. Many believers went mad from the burning sun; others died of thirst. The guides confessed that they had revenged the destruction of Somnáth, and were straightway put to death. Then Mahmúd praycd for water, and water was found; and the Sultan went on to Multan, and so returned to Ghazní.¹⁹

¹⁸ The idol pillar was a huge linga or phallus, which was worshipped as a symbol of the supreme being who created the universe, and who was known by the various names of Iswara, Mahadeva, and Siva. From a strange association of ideas connected with the belief in the transmigration of souls, this supreme being was believed to be the judge of the dead. Accordingly the souls of all departed beings were supposed to assemble at Somnáth, and were sent into new existences according to the sum of their merits or demerits. There is some confusion between the moon god and the emblem of Siva which cannot be clearly explained.

Ferishta describes the idol as an image, and states that Mahmúd broke it in pieces, and obtained a pile of jewels which were hidden in the belly. Older authorities describe it as a solid pillar, and say nothing of the jewels inside it. The pillar however was garnished with gold and jewels, which may have formed part of the treasure. Portions of the pillar were carried away to Ghazní, and formed into a step at the entrance of the Jámí-masjid, to be trodden under-foot by believers. See Professor Dowson's valuable paper on Mahmúd's Expeditions. Elliot's History, vol. ii. Appendix, note v. Professor H. Wilson implies that Ferishta invented the story. The authority of Ferishta may sometimes be open to doubt; but he was a zealous Shíah, and as such was not likely to invent a story for the glorification of Mahmúd. He may have been misled.

¹⁹ According to Ferishta Mahmúd indulged in a dream of Indian conquest. There were said to be gold mines in Guzerat; he also heard that there were gold mines in Ceylon and Burma. Accordingly he proposed giving up his kingdom at Ghazní to his son, and founding an empire in Guzerat. He thought of building a fleet in Guzerat, and conquering Ceylon and Burma. He found, however, that his ministers and army were averse to the scheme, and abandoned the idea.

Return of Mahmúd : Somnáth avenged.

The name of Mahmúd of Ghazní is still famous CHAPTER II.
 in Hindustan. The Mussulmans praise him as a Character of
Mahmud. hero of Islam. He destroyed idols, and converted temples into mosques ; but love of money was his master passion. He was a patron of poets and learned men. He employed Firdusi to compose the Sháh Námeh ; but he disgusted Firdusi with his meanness, by paying him in silver when he expected gold. In revenge the poet scoffed at his low birth.²⁰ Mahmúd built many mosques and palaces at Ghazní with fountains and gardens ; he also founded a university with a library and museum. One mosque was celebrated throughout the East. It was built of granite and marble, decked with gold and silver, and furnished with rich carpets and candelabra. It was named the ‘Heavenly Bride.’

Mahmúd died in 1030, aged sixty-three. He Political ideas
of Mahmud. was a contemporary of Swegn and Knut. He was a man of genius, ambition, and energy. As he grew older he softened towards the Hindús. In the beginning of his reign he treated Jaipál with great brutality. Later on he formed an alliance with the Raja of Kanouj. When he left Guzerat he appointed a Hindú prince to rule that country. Possibly he may have been only actuated by political views. Possibly he set up Kanouj as a counterpoise to Delhi, and as a means for opening up Hindustan. In like manner he may have looked

²⁰ The Sháh Námeh marks an epoch in Mussulman history. It is an expression of the Persian revolt from the Arab yoke. It consists of Persian traditions or romances related in the Persian language. To this day its heroes and heroines are household words throughout Persia, Central Asia, and Mussulman India. It has done much towards softening and civilizing the Mussulmans. The early conquerors were inspired by the bigotry of the Koran ; the later conquerors have been inspired by the more tolerant spirit of the Sháh Námeh. For a further account of the Sháh Námeh, see Appendix I.

CHAPTER II. to Guzerat as an opening into the Dekhan and Peninsula. But one important fact must always be borne in mind ; the Hindús have a power of conciliating their conquerors beyond any other nation. The Arabs never tolerated the Persians as they tolerated the Hindús of Scinde. The English have inclined more towards the Hindús than to any other subject race. The Hindús disarm their conquerors and propitiate them by submission, patience, and helplessness. They are thus often treated as women or children rather than as men ; yet those who have lived the longest amongst Hindús are most alive to their virtues and tolerant of their ways.

Blank in Mussulman history
after Mahmúd,
1030-1180.

Mahmúd died in 1030, and the glory of Ghazní died with him. The history of Mussulman India during the century and a half which followed is of no value. It may be treated as a blank. Annals might possibly be compiled, but few would care to read them. They form a record of names without associations, and of wars without significance. In 1180 the mist begins to clear ; but, notwithstanding the lapse of time, the world of Central Asia and India had undergone very little change. The Afghans had come to the front ; they had demolished Ghazní ; they had overthrown the Turkish house of Mahmúd ; they had founded a new dynasty :—and that was all.²¹

²¹ It would be useless to dilate upon the petty affairs of Ghor and Ghazní. They would only weary the reader, and would throw no light upon the history of Mussulman India. Muhammad Ghori came to the front about 1180, but did not take possession of Delhi until 1193, which is generally regarded as the date of his accession to the throne of Delhi.

It may here be mentioned that, unless otherwise expressed, the history of Mussulman India is based upon that of Ferishta, translated by Briggs, and the valuable annals, translated by Sir H. M. Elliot, Professor Dowson, and others,

Muhammad Ghori²² was Sultan of the new Afghan CHAPTER II.
 kingdom. He filled the void which was left by Mahmúd. The Mussulman kingdom still included the Punjab as well as Kábul. Eastward of the Punjab the political status of the Rajpoots was almost the same as at the death of Mahmúd. There was still the old rivalry between Delhi and Kanouj; but Delhi was the stronger of the two, because she had been united with the southern kingdom of Ajmír. Prithi Raja was the sovereign of Delhi and Ajmír; Jai Chand was the sovereign of Kanouj.

In 1191 Muhammad Ghori marched an army against Prithi Raja. A great battle was fought at Thánesar. The Afghan Sultan tried the old tactics of piercing the Hindú centre; but the Rajpoots outflanked him, surrounded his army and cut it to pieces. Muhammad Ghori was compelled to fly back to the Puñjab. Jai Chand, however, began to intrigue against his Delhi rival. He invited Muhammad Ghori to renew the war. This time Muhammad Ghori gained the victory. Prithi Raja was taken prisoner and murdered in cold blood. Defeat and
death of Prithi
Raja of Delhi,
1191. Delhi and Ajmír were both captured by the Mussulmans, and thousands of people were slaughtered.

Jai Chand paid dearly for his treachery. He was a Rajpoot sovereign of the type of Sáláditya and Asoka. His empire included Benares, and stretched

which have been published of late years under the title of "History of India as told by its own Historians; edited from the posthumous papers of the late Sir H. M. Elliot, by Professor John Dowson." (London: Trübner & Co., 1867—75). Briggs' Ferishta forms four volumes 8vo; Elliot's History already extends to six volumes 8vo, and two more have yet to be published.

²² The Afghans had established their independence at Ghor, a mountain fortress between Ghazní and Herat. Hence the Sultan was named Muhammad Ghori. In the early part of his career he was known by the title of Shaháb-ud-dín; but his later name is alone used in the text to prevent confusion.

CHAPTER II. far away to the eastward towards Bengal.²³ In 1194 Muhammad Ghori advanced against him, defeated him, and drove him into the Ganges. The Mussulmans then advanced still further to the eastward towards Benares, and broke down idols and plundered temples. The story of the campaign is told by the Rajpoot bard.²⁴ The Rahtore of Kanouj was at feud with the Chohan of Delhi. He invited the Mussulman to capture Delhi, and he was duly punished by the loss of his kingdom and his life.²⁵

Rise of Kutb-
ud-dín.

The right hand man of Muhammad Ghori was Kutb-ud-dín. This man had been bought as a slave, but rose to the command of armies. He led the vanguard of the army which routed the host of Jai Chand. When Muhammad Ghori returned to Ghazní, he left Kutb-ud-dín as his viceroy in Musulman India.

Muhammad
Ghori assassin-
ated by Gak-
kars, 1206.

Muhammad Ghori was killed by assassins. He had been harassed by the Gakkars, the same mountaineers who had cut down the horsemen of Mah-

²³ According to the history of Ibn Asir the empire of Jai Chand extended from Malwa to the borders of China. Its western frontier was within ten days journey of Lahore. Eastward it reached the Bay of Bengal. (Elliot's History of India, vol. ii.) This description is somewhat vague. The empire of Jai Chand may, however, have included many vassal kingdoms to the eastward that became independent after his overthrow. Ferishta states that Muhammad Ghori only reached the frontier of Bengal. It will presently be seen that Bengal was subsequently conquered by Muhammad Bakhtiyar.

²⁴ See *ante*, vol. iii. chap. vii.

²⁵ Jai Chand is perhaps the last of the Rajpoot kings who can be referred to the Buddhist era. He kept a white elephant at Benares, which was a relic of the religion of Buddha; but Buddhism has long since been driven out of Hindustan and taken refuge in Burma and Siam. Jai Chand also wore false teeth fastened with golden wire; the teeth were perhaps a relic of an age of Hindú civilization which has passed away. It will be seen hereafter that a white elephant was kept by the Rai of Vijayanagara as late as the fifteenth century. It may be regarded as a relic of Buddhism which had survived the Brahmanical revival. It was paraded before the sovereign every morning, as looking upon it was regarded as a favourable omen.

múd. They laid waste the Punjab, and cut off the communications between Peshawar and Múltan.

Muhammad Ghori fell upon them and slew many; twenty men swore to be revenged. In 1206 Muhammad Ghori was marching from Lahore to Ghazní. One evening he halted at a village on the bank of the Indus. The Gakkars watched every movement. At night they swam across the river and crept through the darkness to the Sultan's tent. Some cut down the sentries, others rushed in and stabbed the Sultan. The affair was the work of a moment; when the confusion was over Muhammad Ghori was a corpse.

The death of Muhammad Ghori was followed by a revolution. Kutb-ud-dín ceased to be the viceroy of a province of the empire of Ghazní; he became the Sultan of Mussulman India. He threw off all allegiance to Ghazní and henceforth reigned at Delhi, and caused the Khutba to be read and money to be coined in his own name.²⁶ Ghazní and Ghor were now forgotten; they dropped out of the history; Delhi became the capital of Mussulman India. The column of Mussulman victory is still towering above the ruins of old Delhi. It is known as the Kutb Minár, and was built to commemorate the victories of Kutb-ud-dín.

Kutb-ud-dín
founds the
Delhi dynasty
of Slave-kings,
1206—10.

²⁶ The Khutba, and the coining of money, are acts of the highest significance in Mussulman history. They are emphatically the assertion of sovereignty. The Khutba is the daily prayer offered up in the mosques for the prosperity of the reigning sovereign. The introduction of the name in the Khutba is the recognition of the sovereign by the church. The introduction of the name on the new coinage is the recognition of the sovereign by the state. They are the first acts of a legitimate prince or a successful usurper. It was the boast of the Seljuk princes,—Toghrul Beg, Alp Arslan, and Malik Shah,—that the Khutba for their prosperity was to be heard every day in the mosques of Mecca and Medina, Jerusalem and Bagdad, Isfahan, Samarkand, Bokhara, and Kashgár.

CHAPTER II.

Delhi empire includes the Punjab and Hindustan.

The wars of Muhammad Ghori and Kutb-ud-dín may be likened to those of Mahmúd. They destroyed idols, and they compelled the idolaters to pay Jczya or tribute. But the Indian dominion of Kutb-ud-dín and his successors formed the separate and independent kingdom of Delhi, which soon grew into an empire. On the west this kingdom of Delhi was bounded by the Indus, on the north by the Himalayas. On the south the Rajpoots opposed a barrier. To the eastward, beyond Allahabad, there was no barrier at all. The people of Bihár and Bengal were no warriors like the Rajpoots. They never even tried to withstand the Mussulmans. They were fascinated with terror, and submitted without a struggle to the wolf-like invaders.

Conquest of Bihár and Bengal by Muhammad Bakhtiyár.

There is thus a striking contrast between the conquest of Bihár and Bengal to the eastward of Allahabad, and that of the Rajpoot Rajas of Delhi and Kanouj. A Mussulman adventurer named Muhammad Bakhtiyár established his supremacy over this eastern region with the utmost ease. Bakhtiyár was a man of great valour and audacity, but he was ill-favoured and very long in the arms. His appearance was so much against him, that he could not obtain military service at Ghazní or Delhi; he therefore went away to the eastern frontier in the neighbourhood of Allahabad. Here he made plundering raids into Bihár, and was joined by other freebooters until he found himself in command of numerous horsemen. He captured the city of Bihár, and plundered it. He also destroyed a college of Bráhmans with shaven heads, and put them all to the sword. He entered Nuddea, the capital of Bengal, with only eighteen horsemen

disguised as horse-dealers. Nobody stopped him ; at last he and his men reached the palace, and murdered all they met. Meanwhile his main force began to enter the city. The Raja was eating his dinner when he heard an outbreak in the court-yard. He was so alarmed that he went out at the back of the palace and fled to the river ; he then embarked in a boat and sailed away to Jagga-náth, leaving all his women and treasures at the mercy of the Mussulmans. He never returned to Nuddea, but passed the remainder of his days at Jagganáth as a religious devotee.²⁷ Henceforth Bihár and Bengal belonged to the Mussulmans, and Gour became the capital of the new dominion.

Mussulman India thus formed two separate regions, which may be distinguished as the kingdom of Delhi, and the kingdom of Gour. The kingdom of Delhi included all the Punjab, and all Hindustan as far to the east as Allahabad.²⁸ The kingdom of Gour included all Bihár and Bengal, from Allahabad eastward to the Brahmaputra river. But these two regions did not always form separate kingdoms. Sometimes they were united into a single empire. Sometimes the Sultans of Delhi exercised a suzerainty as far east as the river Brahmaputra, and the

Two Kingdoms
in Mussulman
India : Delhi
and Gour.

²⁷ Elliot's History of India, vol. ii. The Raja of Nuddea was named Rai Lakhmaniya. His timidity may be in part ascribed to a belief in astrology. His mother is said to have been put to horrible torment in order to delay his birth a couple of hours. The astrologers had assured him that he would be deprived of his kingdom by a man with long arms.

²⁸ The town of Allahabad, the ancient Prayága, is situated at the junction of the Ganges and Jumna in the centre of Hindustan. A line drawn from Allahabad northward, to Ayodhyá, or Oude, would probably correspond to the line of separation, whenever Delhi and Gour formed separate kingdoms.

It will of course be borne in mind that the region to the south, answering to Guzerát and Rajpootana, were not as yet included in Mussulman India, although geographically they form part of Hindustan.

CHAPTER II. Sultans of Gour were their vassals or viceroys. At other times the Sultans of Gour were independent sovereigns. In one instance, which will appear hereafter, the Sultan of Gour conquered all Hindustan and the Punjab.²⁹

Bakhtiyár had conquered Bihár and Bengal with so much ease that he tried to conquer his neighbours. To the east, beyond the lower Brahmaputra, was the kingdom of Kámrup, the modern Assam. Due north, beyond the Himalayas, and beyond the upper Brahmaputra, was the kingdom of Thibet. Bakhtiyár prepared to invade Thibet. Mussulman expedition from Gour to Thibet. He proceeded up the valley of the Brahmaputra with ten thousand horsemen. He crossed the river at a great stone bridge, having twenty arches, and then pushed on for fifteen days through narrow valleys and over lofty mountains. There he was attacked by a powerful army of warriors, who fought with spears and long bows, and wore helmets and cuirasses of bamboos fastened together with raw silk.³⁰ An obstinate battle followed. Bakhtiyár lost many men, and was told that another large army was on the way to attack him.³¹ Accordingly he

²⁹ This was notably the case in the sixteenth century, when Shír Shah the Afghan possessed himself of Gour, and then drove the Moghul emperor Humáyun out of Hindustan and the Punjab. The case is curious. The British government in like manner conquered Hindustan and the Punjab from the side of Bengal.

³⁰ Those people were unquestionably Abors. (Compare Dalton's Descriptive Ethnology of Bengal, p. 27.) This identification was pointed out by Mr T. T. Cooper. The Abors are still inhabiting these localities.

³¹ The story of this expedition into Thibet is somewhat obscure, but it is full of interest. Bakhtiyár was induced to turn back by the information which he received from his prisoners. They told him that fifteen miles from the field of battle there was a very large and strongly fortified city, called Kurmputtun, which was inhabited by Bráhmans and Booteas; that their prince was a Christian, but that he had in his service an innumerable army of brave 'Tartars'; that a thousand to fifteen hundred horses were daily sold in its market; that on the first appearance of the Mussulmans an express had been sent off to the city; and that, without

turned back, but the retreat was most disastrous. CHAPTER II.
 The people had burnt all the grain and forage on the way. The Raja of Kámrúp had broken down two of the arches of the stone Bridge, and taken away all the boats.³² The Mussulmans began to prepare rafts, but found that the army of Kámrúp was surrounding them with a stockade. Bakhtiyár saw that he was in extreme peril. He plunged his horse into the river and reached the opposite shore, but only a hundred horsemen escaped with him. All the rest had been either killed in the battle, or had perished in the retreat, or had been drowned in the Brahmaputra.³³ He died of grief shortly afterwards. The history of his immediate successors is of no moment. It will suffice to repeat that sometimes they were viceroys and sometimes independent princes.³⁴

Kutb-ud-dín died in 1210; but his dynasty, known as the Slave-kings, lingered on at Delhi until 1290. The annals of the period are inex-
 pressibly wearisome. They tell of revolts which are without interest, and of reigns which are without significance.³⁵ A few brief notices of the principal

doubt, a powerful force would arrive from thence early next morning. See Stewart's History of Bengal, sect. iii.

³² Strange to say, the ruins of this bridge are still standing about twenty miles from Gowhatta. Mr T. T. Cooper, in the personal narrative of his journey through the Mishmec hills to the borders of Thibet, writes as follows:—"Behind a large hill, twenty miles inland from the right bank of the river [Brahmaputra], there stand in the centre of a large lake, . . . the ruined arches of a bridge which formerly spanned the Brahmaputra." Mr Cooper has informed me that this is the only ancient bridge over the Brahmaputra in this part of the country. The river has so changed its course that it is now twenty miles from the bridge. Mr Cooper did not see the bridge himself, but was told that it consisted of eighteen arches. This precisely accords with the Mussulman authority given above.

³³ 'Elliot's History of India,' Vol. II. Tabukat-i-Násari.

³⁴ See Stewart's History of Bengal.

³⁵ It is a curious fact that three Sultans of this dynasty, namely, Kutb-ud-dín,

Meagre annals
of the Slave-
kings, 1210-90.

Insignificance
of the details.

CHAPTER II. Sultans might be strung together as types of the whole. Kutb-ud-dín is said to have been just and generous as a viceroy, but indolent and luxurious after he became a Sultan. Altamsh suppressed all revolts, and reigned supreme over both kingdoms of Delhi and Gour. He also established an ascendancy over the Rajpoots, and brought the contests with the Hindús to an end. Razíah, his daughter, succeeded to the throne, but was deposed on account of an amour with an Abyssinian. Mahmúd the Second was an austere type of the old Khalifs at Medina. He lived like a hermit; married only one wife, who cooked his food; and every day copied out a portion of the Koran. Balban was a usurper, who maintained a magnificent court, and defeated the Rajpoots. Kai Kubád was fond of wine, and very fond of “silver-bodied damsels with musky tresses.” In 1290 he was assassinated; and an old man, named Jelál-ud-dín, who belonged to the tribe of Khiljis,³⁶ became Sultan of Delhi.

The dynasty of Slave-kings was thus brought to a close about the end of the thirteenth century. Three hundred years had passed away since the Punjab had been invaded by Sabaktigún and Mahmúd. Yet hitherto the history has been one of conquest alone. It reveals no results of the collision between Mussulmans and the Hindús, beyond the destruction of idols, the plunder of temples, and the building of mosques. The Mussul-

Altamsh, and Balban, were originally slaves. They had been purchased as slaves, they had served as slaves, and then they had risen to favour and usurped the throne. It is, however, difficult to draw any inferences from the circumstance.

³⁶ It is a moot question whether the Khiljis were Afghans or Turks. The point, however, is of no political or religious importance. Although the races are different, it is impossible always to distinguish between Turks and Afghans.

mans fixed their yoke upon the Hindús without the aid of native allies,⁸⁷ and without the slightest interference from the south. Hindustan was conquered by the Mussulmans, and the Dekhán and Peninsula looked listlessly on.⁸⁸

Whilst the Punjab and Hindustan were thus dwelling under Mussulman rule, the Asiatic world outside the Indus and Himalayas was overwhelmed by hosts of Tartars. In the neighbourhood of the desert of Gobi and mountains of Altai, some wretched tribes of Tartar nomades had been wandering for ages amongst the pastures under the name of Mongols or Moghuls. They were ugly barbarians, with yellow complexions, high cheek-

Moghul uprising under Chenghiz Khan, 1154-1228.

⁸⁷ The relations between Mahmúd and the Rajas of Kanouj and Guzerát were only of a temporary character. The alliance between Muhammad Ghori and Jai Chand of Kanouj was soon brought to a close by treachery.

⁸⁸ Throughout the whole of these three centuries, from about 990 to 1290, only four Sultans are deserving of remembrance, namely, Mahmúd of Ghazní, Muhammad Ghori, Kutb-ud-din, and Muhammad Bakhtiyar. The courts of the Slave-kings are veiled from view. Glimpses may be obtained of fortified palaces swarming with officials, servants, and guards; of princes and warriors assembled in the council hall; of jewelled nobility, gazing on jugglers, wrestlers, prize-fighters, or dancing girls; or listening to singers, writers of poetry, tellers of stories, or readers of the Koran and Sháh Námeh. It would be also possible to picture some of the inmates of the harem; the queens, the concubines, the waiting-maids, the eunuchs, and the slaves. But the precise details of real life are altogether wanting.

Students in Mussulman history may consider this assertion too sweeping. It should however be borne in mind that details which are interesting to students are not always necessary to the general reader, who desires to learn more of the political and religious developments of the people than of sovereigns and dynasties. The numismatic history of India has charms for all archæologists. Mr Thomas's *Chronicles of the Pathan (Afghan) kings of Delhi* opens up now and interesting fields of inquiry. The new and valuable edition of Marsden's *Numismata Orientalia*, which is in course of publication by Messrs Trübner & Co., falls under the same category. It comprises Marsden's highly-finished engravings as well as the latest information contributed by the foremost scholars of the day. Both works are complete in themselves; both are of unquestionable value to lovers of Indian archæology; but neither as yet are closely connected with political or religious history. Consequently the present history is an introduction to such studies, rather than an exposition of their results.

CHAPTER II. bones, flat noses, small eyes, and large mouths. Their history begins with Chenghiz Khan. He was born in 1154 and died in 1226. His career marks him out as a type of the world conquerors of antiquity. By sheer force of genius, by the power of creating armies and drilling them into machines, he established his sovereignty over the northern steppes from Western China to the Volga and Caspian. He then turned south and invaded Central Asia; he overran Bokhara, Kábul, Kandahar, and Khorassan; he subdued all Persia to the westward. His empire covered an area nearly four times as vast as that of India. The narrative of his wars is a mere story of battles and sieges, massacres and devastations. The callous Tartar soldiery committed every conceivable outrage and atrocity; they carried away large populations into hopeless slavery. Chenghiz Khan reached the banks of the Indus, but never crossed the river into India. After his death the Punjab was frequently exposed to Moghul raids, as will appear in the progress of the history.³⁹

Dynasty of
Khilji Sultans,
1290-1320.

The annals of the new dynasty of the Khilji Sultans supply data which are wanting in the history of the slave kings. They reveal the life of courts as well as that of camps; the intrigues of the harem as well as the movements of armies. There were but three Sultans of the house of Khilji; their united reigns only lasted thirty years; yet their history is of peculiar value. They carried their arms into the Dekhan and the Peninsula;

³⁹ The characteristics of the Moghuls will be reviewed hereafter in dealing with the rise of the so-called Moghul empire in India under Bâber and his successors. (See *infra*, chap. iv.) The life of Chenghiz Khan was compiled from oriental historians and other sources by the learned Petis de la Croix. It was the labour of ten years. An English translation was published in 8vo, London, 1722.

they formed closer connections with Hindús than CHAPTER II.
any previous Sultans. The result was a Hindú
revolt against the Mussulman yoke, which fore-
shadowed the mutiny of 1857, and in every way
demands a careful study.

Jelál-ud-dín, the founder of the dynasty, was not a man of mark. He was seventy years of age. He had two sons to succeed him on the throne; both he and his family were brought to ruin by a nephew named Alá-ud-dín. Indeed the reign of Jelál-ud-dín is little more than a story of the early life and exploits of his nephew Alá-ud-dín.

Jelál-ud-dín may be dismissed in a few words. <sup>Jelál-ud-dín,
1290-1295.</sup> He was a weak old man, easily deceived, and absurdly lenient towards enemies or offenders. The Moghuls invaded the Punjab; he totally defeated them; he then made peace with them, and permitted them to return to their own country. He enlisted three thousand Moghuls in his own army, and settled them near Delhi. In the end they proved the most refractory and turbulent element in the whole population.

Alá-ud-dín, the nephew of the Sultan, belonged to a different type. He was young, unscrupulous, full of genius and ambition. He was appointed governor of the fortress of Karra. The position of Karra is most important; it was seated on the Ganges a little above Allahabad. On the north it commanded the province of Oude; on the east it formed a frontier fortress towards the kingdom of Gour;⁴⁰ on the south it faced Bundelkund and the Rajpoots. The south was a new country to the Mussulmans. Alá-ud-dín would not, as yet, attack

<sup>Alá-ud-dín,
nephew of Jelál-
ud-dín : plund-
ers the temples
at Bhilsa.</sup>

⁴⁰ At this period Delhi and Gour were separated into two distinct kingdoms.

CHAPTER II. the Rajpoots ; he cut his way through Bundelkund to Malwa ; he plundered the Buddhist temples at Bhilsa on the slopes of the Vindhya range. He then returned to Karra, and was rewarded by his uncle, the Sultan, with the government of Oude.

Plans an invasion of the Dekhan.

The ambition of Alá-ud-dín grew with his success. When at Bhilsa he had heard of a rich city far away to the south. It was named Deoghur, and was the capital of the Mahratta country. He longed to plunder it, but it was as far from Bhilsa as Bhilsa was from Karra. After his return to Karra he resolved on making the attempt. As governor of Oude he had more forces at his command. Moreover, he had gained experience during his campaign in Malwa. Accordingly he planned a raid upon Deoghur.

Raid into the Mahratta country.

The audacity of this idea will appear from a glance at the map. Maharashtra, or the Mahratta country, occupied the western Dekhan. It thus lay to the south of Rajpootana, and south of the Nerbudda river. Deoghur, the capital, was nearly seven hundred miles from Karra ; it was also seven hundred miles from Delhi. A force going to Deoghur must push its way through an unknown country. It might fail to obtain supplies ; it might be surrounded and cut off ; there was no possible way by which it could be relieved. But Alá-ud-dín seems to have understood the Hindús ; their bewilderment and stupefaction on the sudden appearance of a foreign army ; their relief on seeing it move away ; their exaggerated reports after its departure. He knew that with a compact body of horse he could go where he pleased, so long as he told a plausible story and did not tarry on the way.

He kept his plan a profound secret from his uncle, CHAPTER II. the Sultan of Delhi, and from every one else. He sallied out of Karra with eight thousand horsemen; he made his way through the jungles of Bundelkund towards the south. For six months nothing was heard of him. Meantime he passed through different kingdoms telling the same story. He was a nephew of Sultan Jelál-ud-dín of Delhi; he had quarrelled with his uncle, and was going to take service under a Raja in Telengā. No one stopped him; no one questioned him. He and his horsemen rode through Malwa; they crossed the Vindhya mountains and Nerbudda river; at last they appeared before the walls of Deoghur.⁴¹

The Raja of the Mahratta country was named ^{Plunders}_{Deoghur.} Ram-deva. He was utterly taken by surprise. He had never dreamt of an invasion of Mussulmans. He had no troops whatever in Deoghur. He fled with a few citizens and servants into a hill fort close by; he there waited and wondered after Hindú fashion. Alá-ud-dín plundered Deoghur; he tortured the merchants and bankers into discovering their hidden treasures. He attacked the hill fort, but found that it was very strong. He began to threaten and bully. He proclaimed that he only commanded a force in advance; that the Sultan was

⁴¹ Malwa is a large table-land lying between Bundelkund and the Vindhya range. It corresponds to the region now known as Central India. It must not be confounded with the Central Provinces.

Deoghur is situated southward of the Nerbudda river, near the upper course of the river Godavari. It was subsequently called Doulatabad, and plays an important part in the later history.

Telinga or Telengana is a remote territory to the south-west on the coast of Coromandel. Geographically, it is situated partly in the Dekhan and partly in the Peninsula. It must once have formed a distinct nationality, for the people of Telengā speak a language of their own which is known as Telugu.

CHAPTER II. coming up with the main army, and would starve out the Raja, and carry him off to Delhi. Ramdeva was in sore dismay. The fort by some mistake had been provisioned with salt instead of grain. He was obliged to come to terms; just as he had made his peace, his son appeared with an army and attacked the Mussulmans. The son was defeated; the Raja was in a worse position than ever. However, he made over a large hoard of money and jewels to Alá-ud-dín, and promised to pay a yearly tribute to the Sultan. Alá-ud-dín, and all his horsemen, then rode away from Deoghur.

Returns to
Karra: murders
his uncle.

Alá-ud-dín carried the plunder in safety to Karra. But he had a desperate game to play. He was resolved not to part with the spoil; he knew that his uncle, the Sultan of Delhi, would come to Karra with an army and demand it. He schemed every way to induce the Sultan to leave his army behind. He pretended to be afraid of the Sultan's anger. He offered to give up the spoil if the Sultan would come alone; he threatened to fly to Bengal with all the treasure if his uncle brought an army. Karra is situated on the right bank of the Ganges. Alá-ud-dín crossed over to the left bank with all his forces, in order to place the river between himself and the Sultan. Meantime the Sultan was completely deceived. He believed that Alá-ud-dín was really afraid of him; he was anxious to reassure his nephew. He was so infatuated by his blind confidence, that he was angry with those who tried to warn him that treachery was impending. He halted his army; he crossed the Ganges in a small boat, and landed on the opposite bank. There he met Alá-ud-dín and greet-

ed him affectionately. At that moment was he struck by an assassin. He ran back to the boat crying "treachery;" he was thrown down and beheaded on the spot. His head was then set upon a spear and paraded through the camp. Alá-ud-dín was proclaimed Sultan.

Alá-ud-dín made no attempt to excuse the murder. He silenced the army by distributing money; he silenced the people by the same means. He hastened to Delhi, throwing away money at every stage. At Delhi he continued his largesses. Bags full of gold were scattered amongst the rabble. Booths were set up; victuals and liquors were freely given to all comers. Meanwhile the two sons of Jelál-ud-dín were taken prisoners, blinded, and ultimately assassinated. The Khutba was read and money coined in the name of Alá-ud-dín. In this manner the murderer was forgotten or ignored.

There is nothing more remarkable in oriental history than the way in which murder and usurpation are passed over by the masses. The story is whispered about; no one doubts its truth; no one concerns himself respecting it. If a prince of the fallen dynasty appears upon the scene, numbers will join him in the hope of reward; if every member of the family is put to death, the whole kingdom submits to the usurper. Meantime the multitude are amused with money and feasting. Such liberality is practised at the accession of every sovereign; it satisfies the nation that a new Sultan has begun to reign. The sentiment that God knows all, that it is the will of God, quiets every conscience. Even superstition is silenced. Almsgiving and feeding the poor have always been

Seizes the
throne of Delhi;
reigns 1296-1316.

indifference of
the masses..

CHAPTER II. regarded as atonements for sin ; if therefore the Sultan has been guilty of murder, his charities have expiated the crime.⁴²

Conquers Guzerat.

When Alá-ud-dín was established on the throne of Delhi, he sent an army to conquer Guzerat. The campaign was of small importance ; its results were extraordinary. The Raja was a Rajpoot, named Rai Karan. He was defeated and driven into exile in the Mahratta country ; he left his queen and all his treasures behind. The queen was taken to Delhi and became the wife of Alá-ud-dín. A Hindú slave boy was taken from a merchant of Cambay, the capital of Guzerat, and presented to Alá-ud-dín ; he afterwards became a great favourite, and was made vizier under the name of Malik Káfúr.

Marries a Rajpoot queen.

The after life of that Rajpoot queen can never be told. She was a Hindú, but the Sultan was smitten with her beauty. She was a captive and helpless. She could never return to her husband ; she could not refuse to be the wife of her conqueror. She pined, however, for a little daughter whom she had left in Guzerat ; the Sultan sent messengers to bring the child. The girl was named Dewal Deví. Her adventures were of the strangest. She had accompanied her father Rai Karan in his flight to the Mahratta country. Ram-deva, the Mahratta Raja, wished to marry her to his son. Rai Karan was proud of his Rajpoot blood ; he

⁴² It should be added that the crime of Alá-ud-dín is by no means ignored by Mussulman historians. Mussulmans, and indeed orientals in general, are warm-hearted and affectionate in their family relations. The details of the murder of the uncle by the nephew are related by Ferishta and others with every mark of horror and detestation. Indeed, there is reason to believe that Alá-ud-dín was demoralized during his camp life in the Dekhan, or he would scarcely have contemplated such a cold-blooded murder.

refused to give his daughter to a Mahratta. CHAPTER II.
 Then the messengers came from the Sultan; Rai Karan changed his mind; he made over Dewal Deví to the Mahratta prince, rather than send her amongst Mussulmans. Some Mussulmans stopped the wedding train and carried her off to Delhi. She was only eight years of age; she was betrothed to Khizr Khan, the eldest son of the Sultan, who was aged ten. The two were allowed to play together in the harem; after a while they were in love with each other. The mother of Khizr Khan opposed the match, and married him to a niece. The lovers were miserable for awhile; they were consoled after oriental fashion. Dewal Deví became the second wife of Khizr Khan. Her further adventures will be told hereafter.⁴³

When Alá-ud-dín had conquered Guzerat, he began to invade Rajpootana. Hitherto his conquests seem to have been pursued after a regular plan. His ultimate object was the subjugation of Rajpootana. He had conquered Bundelkund and Malwá to the east of Rajpootana. He had reduced the Mahratta Raja to the southwards. He had conquered Guzerat to the westward. Having thus isolated or surrounded Rajpootana, he struck at the heart by the capture of Chítor.⁴⁴

The siege of Chítor, and other operations in

⁴³ The details in the text respecting the early life of Dewal Deví are based on the authority of the Mussulman historian Ferishta. The story of her marriage forms the subject of a poem by the celebrated Persian bard Amír Khuzru, who was supplied with the details of the love passages by Khizr Khan himself. An abstract of the poem is given in the Appendix to Elliot's History of India, vol. iii.

⁴⁴ The story of the capture of Chítor has been related elsewhere. See vol. iii. chap. 7.

CHAPTER II. Rajpootana lasted many months. During the interval there were several plots against the Sultan. A number of Moghuls had been converted to Islam and settled in the Punjab ; they had become most refractory. They were called "New Mussulmans." Many had enlisted in the royal army ; others had entered the service of princes or nobles. Their character was utterly bad. They were ready to commit any villainy. When in fear of punishment they deserted to the Rajpoots, or joined any enemy or rebel who had taken the field.

Plot of Akat Khan.

The plot of Akat Khan is a type of others. He was a nephew of the Sultan. He sought to murder Alá-ud-dín during the war against the Rajpoots, just as Alá-ud-dín had sought to murder his own uncle. He entertained a number of "New Mussulmans ;" he attacked the Sultan outside the camp, and left him for dead. The incidents which followed furnish a striking example of the instability of oriental sovereignties. Akat Khan returned to the camp, and was proclaimed Sultan. The army accepted him without hesitation, presuming that Alá-ud-dín was really dead. He took possession of the royal pavilion ; he received the homage and offerings of all the chief men ; he even tried to enter the royal harem. The chief eunuch, however, was versed in court assassinations. He would not admit Akat Khan into the harem, unless the prince brought the head of Alá-ud-dín. At this moment Alá-ud-dín approached the camp with the canopy of royalty. The troops saw that he was alive ; the tide of public feeling turned in a moment. The army deserted Akat Khan and thronged round Alá-ud-dín ; Akat Khan fled for his

life; some horsemen galloped after him and brought CHAPTER II. back his head upon a spear.

After this, news reached the camp that Delhi Revolt in Delhi. had revolted. The rabble had killed the Kotwál, or head of the police. They had broken into the palace, released the state prisoners, and placed one of them upon the throne. The rebel Sultan opened the treasury, scattered the money amongst the people, and held the throne for seven days. Then the city was retaken by a party of horse. The ringleaders were slain; the head of the rebel Sultan was paraded on a spear. The multitude were so terrified that they carried back the money which had been scattered amongst them to the royal treasury.

When the war was over in Rajpootana, Alá-ud-dín took strong measures for preventing further outbreaks. He employed spies to report all that was said and done in the streets and bazaars, and even in the private houses. He suppressed wine-bibbing with a strong hand. All who imported wine, sold it, or drank it, were flogged and sent to prison. When the prisons were full, great pits were dug outside the city of Delhi for the incarceration of offenders. Many perished from the exposure; others were brought out half dead. Drinking was checked; it could not be stopped altogether. At last the Sultan ordered that when liquor was distilled privately, and drank in private houses without any drinking parties, the informers were not to interfere. He forbade all visiting, feasting, and meetings of every kind. Hospitality fell into disuse; strangers were refused admittance into the houses of the nobles. He

Repressive
measures of
Alá-ud-dín.

CHAPTER II. forbade all intermarriages between noble families, unless his consent had been first obtained. He resumed all lands and pensions; the rich became poor; they could no longer ride horses, or carry arms, or wear fine clothing.⁴⁵ He punished bribery and dishonesty so severely that no one cared to be a revenue officer, or to betroth his daughter to a revenue officer. He fixed the price of grain so that it was always cheap. When the rains were plentiful the dealers bought rice of the villagers, whilst the Sultan hoarded up large stores in the royal granaries. When the rains were scarce the dealers bought rice at the same low rates at the royal granaries. In like manner he fixed the price of everything that was to be sold or hired; he punished all who altered the prices, or used false weights or measures.⁴⁶

Ignores the
Ulamá.

Alá-ud-dín was not a learned man, nor did he associate with men of learning. He could not read or write. He never asked for legal opinions; he never considered whether his commands were lawful or unlawful. He punished all offenders of every degree as he thought proper. Sometimes he was told that his orders were contrary to law, but he took no heed. He cared for nothing so long as he was obeyed.⁴⁷

⁴⁵ It is difficult to say how far this measure was carried out. He could scarcely have resumed military jaghirs, or lands for the maintenance of bodies of horses.

⁴⁶ For an exhaustive history of the administration of Alá-ud-dín, see the history of Barní, translated by Professor Dowson in Elliot's History, vol. iii.

⁴⁷ A long discussion upon this feature in the character of Alá-ud-dín has been preserved by Barní. (See Elliot's History, vol. iii.) The point is of small consequence except as an illustration of the relations between the Sultan and the Ulamá. The Ulamá was the name given to the collective body of doctors and lawyers resident at the capital. The influence of the Ulamás has always been considerable; their opinion has generally had great weight with the reigning Sultan. Indeed, whether the Sultan was good or bad, he always tried to keep on good terms with the Ulamá. Alá-ud-dín was the first Sultan of Delhi who came in conflict with the Ulamá. The Ulamá were afraid to oppose such a self-

Throughout the greater part of this reign the Punjab was exposed to raids from the Moghuls. Ever since the time of Chenghiz Khan, armies of Moghul horsemen appeared at intervals and laid the whole country waste. They plundered towns and villages; they carried away women and children. Their faces were hideous. Their skins were like leather. Their eyes were small, piercing, and very far apart; their noses were flat and ugly; their mouths stretched from one cheek-bone to the other. They were covered with vermin, and their smell was detestable.⁴⁸ Many times the armies of Alá-ud-dín routed these savage hordes. Thousands were slain in battle. Thousands were carried away prisoners, and trampled to death by elephants; towers and pyramids were built with their heads at the gates of Délhi.

All this while the "New Mussulmans," who had enlisted in the army of the Sultan, were growing more and more refractory. At last Alá-ud-dín ordered them to be disbanded. Subsequently they tried to murder him; he ordered them all to be massacred; he sold their wives and children into slavery. Thousands were put to death, but many survived; the "New Mussulmans" were mixed up with different rebellions for generations afterwards.

willed sovereign. The lawyers withheld their opinions until they were asked. One lawyer is said to have assured the Sultan that his measures were contrary to the law; he took care to add that they might be in accordance with a wise policy. The status of the Ulamá will be brought more directly under review in dealing with the reign of the emperor Akber. See *infra*, chap. iv.

⁴⁸ This description of the Moghuls is based on that of Amír Khuzru the poet, who on one occasion was taken captive by these repulsive barbarians. See Elliot's History of India, vol. iii., Appendix. Such invasions must have been regarded as the greatest of calamities.

CHAPTER II.

Meantime Sultan Álá-ud-dín was prosperous.

Álá-ud-dín's aspirations: conquers the Telinga, Tamil, and Karnata countries.

He had subjugated Maharashtra, Guzerat, and Rajpootana. He had put down rebellions, driven out the Moghuls, and strengthened his rule. He had extended his suzerainty over Bihár and Bengal. The Sultan of Gour had seen his greatness ; he had laid aside the insignia of royalty, and professed himself to be a vassal of Delhi.⁴⁹ Álá-ud-dín thus became puffed up. He thought to be a prophet like Muhammad, and a conqueror like Alexander ; after a while he quieted down.⁵⁰ However, he sent out armies under his vizier Malik Káfúr to conquer the Telinga country, the Tamil country, and the Kanarese country. Malik Káfúr defeated the Rajas and captured their forts. He brought away their horses and elephants, their hoards of gold and jewels. He compelled them to pay a yearly tribute to Delhi.

Contemporary state of Peninsular India.

The expeditions of Malik Káfúr throw some

⁴⁹ Stewart's History of Bengal, sect. iii. Álá-ud-dín only permitted the Gour Sultan to retain the city of Gour and the south-western districts of Bengal. The eastern districts were placed under another governor, who held his court at Sunergong. This city has dwindled into a village; before the rise of Dacca it was the capital of eastern Bengal. Álá-ud-dín divided Bengal into two governments, in order to render it more subservient to the court of Delhi.

⁵⁰ Álá-ud-dín is said to have been argued out of the vain ambition of becoming another Muhammad or Alexander. He was told that it was the duty of kings to govern ; that they should leave matters of law and religion to prophets and apostles ; that they would never become prophets, although prophets might become kings. As an example, Chenghiz Khan had caused blood to flow in rivers, but could not establish the religion of the Moghuls amongst Mussulmans ; many Moghuls had become Mussulmans, but no Mussulman had become Moghul. (See Elliot, vol. iii., Barní's history.) There is a flaw in the argument, for Chenghiz Khan had no desire to promulgate any particular religion beyond the recognition of one God ; on the contrary, he was tolerant of all religions. See History of Chenghiz Khan, by M. Petis de la Croix.

As regards becoming another Alexander, Álá-ud-dín was told that times had changed ; that he could not find a vizier like Aristotle ; that he had other duties to fulfil nearer home, namely, the destruction of every rebel in Hindustan, and the complete defence of the Punjab against Moghul invasion.

light upon the condition of the people of Peninsular CHAPTER II. India ; and that too, about the very time that Marco Polo was voyaging round the coasts of Coromandel and Malabar.⁵¹ Deoghur was the basis of operations ; it was from Deoghur that Malik Káfúr set forth to plunder the cities of the Peninsula. Aláud-dín did not plan a regular campaign ; probably he was only half acquainted with the geography of the country. He conquered a great part of the Dekhan and Peninsula. He sent out successive armies under Malik Káfúr ; each army was connected with Delhi by a line of posts with relays of horsemen and runners. He thus guarded against false reports ; news was constantly reaching Delhi respecting the progress of the army ; news was constantly reaching the army respecting the health of the Sultan. The cities actually reached by Malik Káfúr were Warangal, Madura, and Dhúrsamundar. Warangal was the capital of Telinga, or Telingana ; it was situated between the rivers Godavari and Krishna, in what may be called the south-eastern Dekhan. Madura was the capital of the Tamil country ; it was situated in the southern part of the great Karnatic plain, which occupies the eastern side of the Peninsula. Dhúrsamundar was seated in the heart of the Kanarese table land of Mysore, which occupies the western side of the Peninsula ; its ruins may still be traced about a hundred miles to the north-west of Seringapatam. The Belál Raja of Karnata is said to have been carried prisoner to Delhi.⁵² The treasuries at these capitals appear to

⁵¹ See *ante*, vol. iii. chap. viii.

⁵² Native traditions of the Belál Raja are preserved in the Mackenzie manuscripts at Calcutta. They are of little historical value. A story is told that a

CHAPTER II. have been rich in gold and jewels ; the Mussulman historians expressly say that there was no silver money. The pagodas were crowded with Bráhmans, idols, offerings, and temple girls. The Rajas of the Tamil country were the black and naked barbarians described by Marco Polo ; they wore bracelets and necklaces of pearls and precious stones ; they were attended by thousands of wives and concubines.⁵³

Rebellions in
the Dekhan and
Peninsula :
death of Alá-ud-
din, 1316.

The latter years of Alá-ud-dín were disturbed by revolts and losses. Maharashtra, Guzerat, and Telingana were in frequent rebellion. The Rajpoots recovered Chítor. The Sultan grew sour and suspicious of all around him, excepting Malik Káfúr. He did whatever Malik Káfúr told him. He imprisoned his queen and elder sons lest they should plot against him. He died in 1316. He is said to have been poisoned by Malik Káfúr.

Political ideas
of Alá-ud-dín.

Alá-ud-dín belongs to a strange type. His military genius is unquestionable. He was the first Sultan who planned the conquest of all India. The idea may have flickered before Mahmúd ; Alá-ud-dín thought it out, and nearly realized it. The Rana of Chítor was the head of the Rajpoot dominion, the suzerain of the Rajpoot league. Alá-ud-dín surrounded Chítor by the conquest of Bundelkund, Malwá, the Mahratta country, and Guzerat ; he then captured the ancient fortress. Alá-ud-dín is the first Sultan on record who entered the Dek-

daughter of the Sultan fell in love with the Raja. • The story is not altogether impossible. The harem had been Hinduised by the Rajpoot ladies. It will be seen hereafter that twenty-four years after the death of Alá-ud-dín a Belál Raja was still reigning over Karnata.

⁵³ See *ante*, vol. iii., chap. viii. A further account of those kingdoms partly based upon the data preserved in the Mackenzie manuscripts, will be found in a future chapter.

hañ ; he is the first who sent an army into the Peninsula.⁵⁴ Apart from his genius his character was detestable. He displayed every vice which can disgrace an oriental.

There are three points in the life of Alá-ud-dín, which are very suggestive. He is the first Sultan of India who married a Hindú princess; he is the first who set aside the authority of the Koran as upheld by the Ulamá; he is the first who sought to become a prophet and found a new religion. Possibly his Hindú wife upset his religious faith; he drifted into a sea of speculation. Such an inference will seem far fetched in dealing with the single reign of Alá-ud-dín; its significance will be apparent in dealing with the Hindú reaction which took place after his death; more so in reviewing the reign of the emperor Akber, which belongs to another chapter.⁵⁵

The death of Alá-ud-dín was followed by revolutions; they lasted over four years, namely, from 1316 to 1320. Malik Káfúr was bent upon becoming the sole ruler of the state. He produced a will of Alá-ud-dín; it set aside all the princes, except the youngest, who was a child of five. He im-

Religious faith
upset by his
Hindú mar-
riage.

Palace revolu-
tions : murder
of Malik Káfúr.

⁵⁴ There are vague Hindú traditions of previous Mussulman invasions towards the south as far as the Karnata country in Peninsular India, but the chronology is unreliable. See Appendix II., Hindú Annals.

⁵⁵ The analogy between the religious developments of Alá-ud-dín in the fourteenth century, and those of the emperor Akber in the sixteenth century, is somewhat startling. In Alá-ud-dín the cause and its effects are obscure. He was advanced in manhood when he married the wife of the Rajpoot Raja of Guzerat. He never came into direct and open conflict with the Ulamá; he was induced to abandon his design of becoming a prophet. Akber, on the other hand, was married to Rajpoot princesses when he was young and impressionable. He broke up the authority of the Ulamá, and banished its leaders to Mecca. Finally, he founded a new religion, known as the Divine Faith; he allowed himself to be worshipped as a representative of deity.

CHAPTER II. prisoned all the sons of Alá-ud-dín, except the infant; he ordered their eyes to be put out; he placed the infant upon the throne; he began to reign as regent. He was apparently supreme. He was deceived; a prince named Mubárak managed to save his eye-sight. One night the slaves of the palace crept into the chamber of Malik Káfúr and stabbed him to death. They released Mubárak from his dungeon; they made him regent in the room of Malik Káfúr.

*Regency of
Mubárak.*

For two months Mubárak was content to reign as regent in the name of his infant brother. This fact proves that the will of the deceased Sultan had been accepted by the nobles and ministers; it could not lightly be set aside. Mubárak, however, was eager to mount the throne. At the end of the two months he put out the eyes of the infant Sultan; he murdered all his other brothers. • He was proclaimed Sultan; there was no one to oppose him. Khizr Khan was amongst the victims. Dewal Déví, the Hindú widow of Khizr Khan, was still very beautiful; Mubárak made her his wife.

Reign of Mubárak, 1316—1320.

Mubárak was an utter profligate. At the beginning of his reign he marched against the Mahratta Raja and defeated him; he took one rebel prince prisoner and ordered him to be flayed alive.⁵⁶ On his return to Delhi he led a life of low debauchery; he drank wine and associated with courtesans before all his court. He disgusted his nobles; he was madly fond of a converted Hindú, who had adopted the Mussulman name of Khuzru Khan. He relaxed all the ordinances of his father;

⁵⁶ The name of the prince was Harpál Deva. He was a son-in-law of Ramdeva.

he permitted the people to drink and entertain ; to CHAPTER II. buy and to sell as they pleased.

Meantime Khuzru Khan was made vizier ; he was sent with an army against the Tamil country. The Mussulman historians charge this man with the vilest crimes, in the same way that they charged Malik Káfúr.⁵⁷ He is said to have been a low caste Parwári or Pariah. He is accused of having plotted with other Hindús, especially with men who had been the followers of Malik Káfúr. He kept many Pariah attendants in the palace ; he schemed to upset the Mussulman rule. One night he and the other Pariahs put Mubárak to death ; they filled the whole court with horrible disorder.⁵⁸

The measures of this converted Hindú betray ^{Hindú revolt at} Delhi. a strange conflict of ideas. At first he acted like a Mussulman. He opened the royal treasury, and bribed the body-guards. He was proclaimed Sultan under the name of Nasir-ud-dín ; he ordered

⁵⁷ Mussulman historians are painfully bitter respecting the intimacy between Alá-ud-din and Malik Káfúr, and that between Mubárak and Khuzru Khan.

⁵⁸ The details of the murder of Mubárak might be passed over in silence, but the narrative of Barní (Elliot, vol. iii.) furnishes a graphic picture of the palace life at Delhi. Mubárak was so infatuated with Khuzru Khan, that he refused him nothing ; he reviled any one who brought charges against him. Khuzru Khan obtained the keys of the postern gate of the palace, under pretence of admitting his friends to see him at night. One night there was an uproar. The palace was filled with Pariahs. The Sultan came out and asked what was the matter ; Khuzru Khan replied that the horses had broken out of the royal stables. The uproar became greater than ever. The Sultan suspected treachery and ran off to the harem. Khuzru Khan rushed after him, caught him by his long hair, and twisted it round his hand. The Sultan threw him down, and got upon his chest, but still the murderer held on to the hair. Another assassin attacked the Sultan and ran him through with a spear. The Sultan was beheaded on the spot ; his trunk was thrown out into the court-yard below. A horrible massacre followed. When morning dawned, the palace was in the hands of Pariahs and Hindús. The people heard what had happened ; they saw the remains of Mubárak ; they hastened to hide themselves in their houses. Meantime the royal harem was at the mercy of the Pariahs.

Murder of Mu-bárak by Khuzru Khan.

CHAPTER II. the Khutba to be read and money to be coined in his own name. He then did what any other Asiatic usurper would have done ; he slaughtered every male of the house of Khilji. From this point, however, he seems to have acted more like a Hindú, or rather like a leader of Hindú revolt against the Mussulmans. He took the Rajpoot princess, Dewal Deví, who had been twice a widow, to be his wife. This marriage was contrary to Hindú usage ; possibly it raised him in Hindú opinion. His Pariah followers set up idols in the mosques ; they seated themselves on Korans ; they committed the most revolting outrages in the harem. For five months Delhi was at the mercy of Hindú rebels. At last Islam was avenged. Ghazi Beg Tughlak, the governor of the Punjab, marched an army against Delhi. Khuzru Khan was taken prisoner and put to death. Ghazi Beg became Sultan under the name of Ghiás-ud-dín Tughlak.

Strange characteristics of the revolt.

The revolt of Khuzru Khan is a strange jumble. His conversion to Islam was probably a sham from the outset. He belonged to the lowest caste ; he had no other way of raising his social position.⁵⁹ He aspired to be a Sultan after the Mussulman fashion ; he also aspired to marry the Rajpoot

⁵⁹ The account of the Hindú revolt at Delhi is based upon the authority of Ferishta, translated by Briggs, and that of the Tárikh-i Firoz Sháhí, translated in Elliot's History. In the History of Guzerat by Ali Muhammad Khan, it is asserted that Khuzru Khan was a Rajpoot of the Parmár, or Pramasa tribe, one of the thirty-six royal races. Mr James Bird, the translator, asserts that Colonel Briggs has mistaken the name, and reads Parwári, which is the appellation of a Hindú outcaste, instead of Parmár, which would indicate that Khuzru Khan was a high-caste Rajpoot. But the statement of Ferishta is confirmed by Barní in the Tárikh-i Firoz Sháhí. Moreover the details of the outbreak refer to Pariahs rather than to Rajpoots. Had Khuzru Khan been a Rajpoot, it is not likely that he would have married Dewal Deví, who had been twice a widow.

princess; to found a Hindú dynasty, to restore the CHAPTER II. Hindú religion. The Mussulman historians say all this; there must have been much more that they do not say. Dewal Deví may have been concerned in the revolt. She had loved Khizr Khan; she could scarcely have loved Mubárak. Possibly she hated Mubárak, and invited Khuzru Khan to murder him. The Hindú revolt was a social reaction. It resembled the rebellion of 1857. For five months Delhi was in the hands of the rebels; for five months there was unbounded license. In the end Delhi was captured; the rebellion was stamped out; the governor of the Punjab was the saviour of India.⁶⁰

The change of dynasty from the Khiljis to the Tughlaks led to a change of capital. Neither the new Sultan, nor his immediate successor, lived at Delhi; they probably regarded it as a Hindú volcano. They held their court at Tughlakabad, a strong fortress about an hour's ride from old Delhi. The ruins of Tughlakabad tell the history better than the Mussulman chroniclers. The fortifications are large masses of masonry; besides the gates and bastions there are underground galleries. Rebellion might have been put down with ease; armed men could have been sent to any quarter. The streets and bazaars, the palaces

Rise of the
Tughlak
dynasty: capital
at Tughlaka-
bad.

⁶⁰ Hindú influences must have been for some time at work at Delhi. Alá-ud-dín and Mubárak had each married a Hindú wife; they had each made a favourite of a Hindú convert. Indeed, the Turks at this period seem to have sought for Hindú wives. The father of Firúz Shah, whose reign will be described hereafter, wanted to marry the daughter of a Rajpoot noble. The Rajpoot refused to give his daughter to a Turk; he was reduced to such distress that his daughter sacrificed herself to remove his misery. She said:—"Send me to the Turk, and think that I have been carried away by the Moghuls." (*Tárikh-i Ffroz Sháhí* in Elliot's *History of India*, vol. iii.) Such a marriage marks a change in the relations between Turks and Rajpoots.

CHAPTER II. and gardens, may still be traced; but the city is without inhabitants of any kind.⁶¹

Ghiás-ud-dín
Tughlak reigns,
1320-1325.

Ghiás-ud-dín Tughlak is only known as the saviour of Delhi. He built forts to keep out the Moghuls. He reduced the vassal kingdoms of Bengal, Maharashtra, and Telingana to their former allegiance. Apart from this he left no name in history. He reigned from 1320 to 1325; he was killed by the fall of a pavilion.

Muhammad
Tughlak reigns,
1325-1350.

Muhammad Tughlak was the next Sultan of Delhi. His reign is an epoch. He had genius but no experience; he was learned and pious, but hard-hearted and cruel. He formed wild projects; he was kind to those who carried them out; he was merciless to those who thwarted him.

Financial pres-
sure.

The financial pressure at this period was endangering the empire. A strong army was necessary to repel the invasions of the Moghuls; the revenue was not sufficient for the expenditure. Alá-ud-dín was in great straits, although he had filled his treasury with the spoils of the Dekhan. But he kept a strong hold upon the revenue officials; he brought down the price of grain until his soldiers could live on the lowest rates of pay. Muhammad Tughlak was in worse straits. The Moghuls invaded the Punjab, when the army was absent in the Dekhan; he was powerless to fight; he bribed them to return by presents of gold and jewels. The empire of Mussulman India had grown too large. The vassal kingdoms of the Dekhan

⁶¹ The ruins of Tughlakabad are very suggestive. The tomb of the Sultan is near the city; it is connected with it by a covered way. In 1866 the city was a solitude. A few agriculturists were growing grain amidst the desolation; a few native women were chattering and drawing water at an ancient well; a dirty herd of cattle was stabled in the tomb of Tughlak Shah.

and Peninsula were a source of weakness rather than of strength. They had been plundered of all their wealth ; they had nothing more to lose ; they began to rebel.

The obvious policy of Muhammad Tughlak was ^{Necessity for conciliation.} to conciliate his subjects, Hindús as well as Mussulmans. By so doing he might have reduced his military expenditure ; he might have concentrated all the forces he had at his disposal for the protection of his north-west frontier. The conciliation of Hindustan would have checked the disaffection in the Dekhan ; a victory over the Moghuls would have kept the vassal princes to their allegiance. The new Sultan pursued a different course ; it ended in his ruin.

In the first place, Muhammad Tughlak invented ^{Impolicy of Muhammad Tughlak.}⁶² new cesses ; they broke the backs of the ryots. The poor became beggars ; the rich became rebels. The fields were left unsown ; grain became scarce. Then the rains failed, and there was a great famine. The Punjab and a large part of Hindustan became a desolation. Villages were ruined, families were broken up, thousands were starved to death ; the strength and glory of the empire began to fade away.

The Sultan next removed his capital from Delhi to Deoghur ; he sought to escape the famine ; he sought to fix his court in the centre of Mussulman India. From Deoghur he could overrun the Dekhan and Peninsula. The agony of this removal can scarcely be realized. Delhi had been a capital of Islam for a hundred and fifty years. It was as famous as Bagdad

⁶² The cesses were known as "abwabs." They were originally levied in the Doab, the fertile region between the Ganges and Jumna ; subsequently they were collected in other quarters.

Capital transferred from
Delhi to
Deoghur.

CHAPTER II. or Cairo. The city and suburbs spread over an area of eight or ten miles. The city of Deoghur was seven hundred miles off; the route lay through the passes of the Vindhya mountains. Muhammad Tughlak would listen to no objection. He ordered the whole population of Delhi to go to Deoghur; his order was obeyed. He did not mean to be cruel. Indeed he fed the poorer classes on the way. But Delhi was ruined. Many of its inhabitants perished on the toilsome journey; many more died after reaching Deoghur. The misery was so intense that at last the Sultan ordered the people to return to Delhi. The mischief had been done. Many were dead already. Numbers attempted to return; some died on the way to Delhi; others perished of famine after they got there.

Substitution of copper for gold money.

Muhammad Tughlak sought to replenish his treasury by making copper counters take the place of gold money. He had been told that the Chinese used paper money; that the paper bore the stamp of the emperor, and was payable at the royal treasury. Instead of paper he used copper; he coined copper money as counters; he ordered his subjects to use them as gold money. The people obeyed from fear of punishment. Meanwhile the Hindús turned their houses into mints; they flooded the country with copper counters. They paid their tribute in copper instead of gold. They bought horses, arms, and fine clothing; they paid for them in copper. Merchants bought the products of India with copper counters; they sold them to foreigners for gold money. No merchants would bring their goods to India and sell them for counters. At last trade was stopped. Copper became worthless; gold

rose to four times its value.' The Sultan was blind CHAPTER II. with anger; he proclaimed that he would give gold money for the counters. The thing was impossible; the copper money was endless; at Tuglakabad it was piled up in mountains. The treasury could not stand the run; it was emptied of its gold; it was closed against all comers. The result was that thousands were ruined.

The ruin did not come all at once. For a long time the copper counters were current; the Sultan paid his army in copper; the soldiers bought all they needed with copper. The Sultan's head was turned with his success. He sent an army of a hundred thousand horsemen over the Himalayas to conquer China. The troops were defeated, harassed, plundered, starved, or drowned in mountain torrents; only ten men returned to Delhi to tell the story of the disaster. He raised another vast army for the conquest of Persia and Tartary; he maintained it for a whole year without going to war. By this time the treasury was empty; the troops disbanded for want of pay; they pillaged the country in all directions. The land was filled with robbers and outlaws.

Meanwhile there were rebellions everywhere. Bengal and Telenga were in revolt. The armies of the Dekhan and the Peninsula were in mutiny. Hindustan and the Punjab were depopulated by famine and sinking into anarchy. The Sultan made war against his own subjects; he wasted his own dominions with fire and sword. The Hindús burnt their stacks of corn; they suffered their cattle to stray about the country. The Sultan hunted down the Ryots, as though they had been wild beasts. At last news came that the army of the Dekhan had revolted;

Attempted con-
quest of China,
Persia, and
Tartary.

Dismember-
ment of the
Delhi empire:
death of Mu-
hammad Tugh-
lak, 1350.

CHAPTER II. that Hindú Rajas had joined in the revolt ; that the Dekhan had become a separate kingdom ; that one Hasan Gangu had been placed on the throne at Deoghur.⁶³ Muhammād Tughlak lost all heart. He saw that all men had turned against him. He died in 1350, after a reign of twenty-five years.

Peacful reign
of Firuz Shah,
1350-1399.

The death of Muhammād Tughlak brought rest to Hindustan. Bengal and the Dekhan were torn away ; henceforth they ceased to form a part of the kingdom of Delhi. Fírúz Shah became Sultan of Delhi ; he cared not for foreign dominion ; he sought only to make his people happy. He reigned for nearly half a century ; the history of his rule has little historical interest. He defeated the Moghuls, and drove them back to their own country. He abolished all unlawful cesses. He brought waste lands under cultivation. He dug canals and built many dams and bridges. The Ryots grew rich and were satisfied. Every man had grain and horses ; every woman had jewels and ornaments ; every house had beds and furniture. Fírúz Shah forbade all torture and mutilation of criminals. He put down heresy and false doctrine ; he destroyed idol temples, with all their books, vessels, and images.

Bráhmans
forced to pay
the Jezya.

Fírúz Shah was very strict with the Bráhmans. Hitherto they had been exempted from paying Jezya or poll tax ; the Sultan declared that they were the keys to the chambers of idolatry, and could no longer be excused. The Bráhmans were loud in their complaints. They threatened to burn

⁶³ The revolt of the Dekhan is a most important event in the history of Mussulman India. It was apparently a successful repetition of the revolt in Maharashtra and Telenga, which had been suppressed in the previous reign. It will be brought under review in the next chapter.

themselves before the palace ; the Sultan took no CHAPTER II.
hood. They fasted in front of the palace until they
were nearly dead ; the Sultan suffered them to starve.
At last they yielded ; the other castes paid the
Jezya for them.⁶⁴

One Bráhman especially kindled the anger of Martyrdom of a
Bráhman. the Sultan. He had made a tablet of wood, and painted devils upon it ; he had deluded Mussulman men and women into idolatry. The Sultan declared that he must either accept Islam or be burnt alive. The Bráhman was obstinate and would not embrace the faith. He was bound hand and foot ; he was cast upon a pile of wood ; he was burnt to death before all the people.⁶⁵

⁶⁴ It is remarkable that Firúz Shah should have persecuted the Bráhmans so severely, when his mother was a Rajpoot. One incident of his life may, however, be ascribed to the influence of his mother. (See *ante*, page 69, note.) He brought the two ancient stone pillars, which are known as the walking-sticks of Bhíma the Pándava, and set them up in the city of Delhi. He is also charged with having held a golden umbrella over the head of a Hindú idol as an act of worship. This is indignantly denied by Barní. See Elliot's History of India, vol. iii.

⁶⁵ The story of the missionary Bráhman is in every way remarkable. It throws a new light upon the proselyting operations of the Bráhmans in a past age. They were not content with bringing the people of India within the pale of Brahmanism ; they perverted Mussulmans to the worship of idols. The martyrdom of the Bráhman is an authentic fact. Barní, the Mussulman historian, saw it with his own eyes ; his account may be quoted at length :—

"A report was brought to the Sultan that there was in Delhi an old Bráhman, who persisted in publicly performing the worship of idols in his house ; that the people of the city, both Mussulmans and Hindús, resorted to his house to worship the idol. This Bráhman had constructed a wooden tablet, which was covered within and without with paintings of demons and other objects. On days appointed, the infidels went to his house and worshipped the idol, without the fact becoming known to the public officers. The Sultan was informed that this Bráhman had perverted Muhammadan women, and had led them to become infidels. An order was accordingly given that the Bráhman, with his tablet, should be brought into the presence of the Sultan. The judges, doctors, elders, and lawyers [i. e. the collective body of the *Ulamá*] were summoned to give their opinion. Their reply was that the provisions of the law were clear : the Bráhman must either become a Mussulman or be burnt alive. The true faith was declared to the Bráhman, and the right course pointed out, but he refused to accept it. Orders

CHAPTER II.

Invasion of
Timur, 1398-
1399; invasion
of Hindustan
by Báber, 1526.

Fírúz Shah died in 1388. His reign is the last of any moment. Ten years later, in 1398-99, the kingdom of Delhi was subverted by Timúr. This event will be noticed hereafter in dealing with the history of Moghul India ; it is of little moment beyond the fact that it put an end to the Tughlak dynasty. It was followed by a blank of a century and a quarter.⁶⁶ At last, in 1526, a descendant of Timúr, named Báber, invaded Hindustan, and founded the Moghul empire. The Moghul was destined to become the paramount power in India.

Character of
Mussulman
rule.

Thus far the history of Mussulman India illustrates the ordinary progress of Asiatic rule. It treats of a consecutive line of Sultans ; it betrays the utter insecurity of thrones and dynasties. The government was spasmodic ; good or bad according to the virtues or vices of the reigning Sultan. The dominion was sometimes expanded by further con-

were given for raising a pile of faggots at the door of the Durbar [i. e. the assembly hall]. The Bráhman was tied hand and foot and cast upon it ; the tablet was thrown on the top and the pile was lighted. The writer of this book was present at the Durbar, and witnessed the execution. The tablet of the Bráhman was lighted in two places, at his head and at his feet ; the wood was dry, and the fire first reached his feet, and drew from him a cry, but the flames quickly enveloped his head and consumed him." Elliot's History of India, vol. iii.

The process of converting Mussulman women to idolatry may be easily conjectured. Bráhmans affect to heal the barrenness of women, to secure the affection of the husband, to promote the prosperity of children. Under such circumstances it would be no difficult task to tempt Mussulman women into idolatry.

⁶⁶ The history of Delhi from 1399 to 1526 is little better than a chronicle of dynasties. After Timúr retired from India, four officers reigned in succession as his Viceroys ; their rule was confined to Delhi and its immediate neighbourhood. They are known as Sayyids, because they belonged to the family of the prophet. They were doubtless Shíahs ; thus a Shíah element must have been at work in Hindustan during the fifteenth century. Unfortunately there is an utter want of data. The Sayyid dynasty ended in 1450, when an Afghan seized the throne, and founded the so-called Lodi dynasty. The Lodi Sultans were Sunnis ; they seem to have conquered Hindustan as far as Bengal. Their history throws no light upon the collision between Mussulmans and Hindús ; it is too obscure to throw any light upon the struggle between Shíahs and Sunnis ; it may therefore be consigned to oblivion.

quests in India ; sometimes it was contracted by internal revolutions. The province conquered by Mahmud of Ghazni formed the basis of the independent kingdom founded by Kutb-ud-din ; the kingdom grew into an empire under Alá-ud-dín. In consequence of the internal troubles during the reign of Muhammad Tughlak it became dismembered ; it lost the outlying provinces of Bengal and the Dekhan. Finally, when the independent sovereignties were exhausted by interneceine wars, the Moghuls stepped in and subverted the whole. Such has been the political working in India from the dawn of history. Conquerors from the north have founded a kingdom ; the kingdom has grown into an empire ; the empire has overshadowed the Indian continent ; it has become dismembered. Conquerors from the north have again founded a kingdom to undergo the same transformations.⁶⁷

The fact that there was a consecutive line of Sultans from Mahmud to Firuz Shah does not betoken unbroken rule. It merely expresses the idea that in oriental nations a sovereign is a necessity. The Sultan was the embodiment of all the power of the state ; he was hedged around with divinity ; he was almost treated as a deity. If he died suddenly, or was cut off by assassination, a new Sultan was at once placed upon the throne ; all possible rivals were either consigned to a state dungeon, or deprived of their eyesight, or put to death. Any delay in the succession was fatal to the peace and security of the realm ; rebel

CHAPTER II.

⁶⁷ The empire of British India is exceptional. Still Indian statesmen may bear in mind the warnings of history. Is there no element of dismemberment at work in India ? Is there no Moghal power, under another name, hungering after an Indian empire ?

CHAPTER II. princes sprang up in a night, and soon filled the kingdom with anarchy. There was every temptation to rebel; consequently there was every reason to fear a rebellion. A prince might be the brother of a Sultan; his dependence upon that brother resembled the abasement of a slave before an impious master. By assassinating the Sultan, he avenged himself for past wrongs; he assumed the supreme power; he acquired the treasury, the harem, and the throne. The courtiers and ministers had no alternative; they could only accept the usurper, or rally round a rival. They generally paid their homage to the usurper; they intrigued for places and honours. They offered no opposition to the blinding, imprisoning, or slaughtering of all possible rivals; they acquiesced in every deed of violence which prevented further rebellions or complications. Meantime the multitude were satisfied. At every succession to the throne they were gladdened with money, shows, and feasting. They heard the Khutba read in the name of the new Sultan at morning prayers; they saw his titles upon the new coins; they accepted the fact that a new Sultan had begun to reign.

Hindú prop-
clivities of Mus-
sulman rulers.

In the foregoing history of Mussulman India one important element is still obscure. It is easy to understand the materialistic religion of Muhammad; it is not difficult to realize the metaphysical religion of the Hindús. But little as yet can be ascertained of the character and results of the conflict between the two forms of faith and worship. There is an account of the Hindú revolt at Delhi; there is a story of the martyrdom of the Bráhman who perverted the believers into idolatry. But although these data are suggestive, they do

not bring out the developments which followed CHAPTER II. the antagonism between Islam and Brahmanism. The main point, however, is sufficiently obvious. So long as the Mussulmans were breaking down temples and idols, they might preserve their own faith intact. So long as the Hindús were compelled to stand on the defensive, they might hold fast to their idolatry. When Mussulman princes married Hindú wives, and were hood-winked by Hindú favourites, observant men might have foreseen that a revolution was at hand. When Bráhman missionaries deluded believers into the worship of idols, it might have been inferred that the religious thought of the two races was intermingling in under-currents. Movements of this nature demand the closest study from the outset. Contemporary annalists saw what was going on ; they failed to realize the significance. Later historians may have read the facts ; they have failed to bring out the lessons. It will be seen in the sequel that such facts and such inferences are the life and soul of the history of India.

CHAPTER III.

SHÍAH REVOLT IN THE DEKHAN.

A. D. 1347 TO 1565.

CHAPTER III. THE Mussulman conquest of the Dekhan and Peninsula throws further light upon the collision between Islam and Hinduism. So long as the Mussulmans stayed in the Punjab and Hindustan, they were recruited from the hot-beds of Islam in Central Asia ; they were held tightly together in the brotherhood of the faith ; they continued to be orthodox, bigoted, and intolerant. There was no tampering with Hinduism, no intermarrying with Hindú princesses, no development of Hindú influences at the court and capital at Delhi. From the moment the Mussulmans struck into the south, their political and religious life entered upon a new phase. Their history widened out into unexplored countries ; they came in contact with fresh races and languages ; they became isolated from their fellow Mussulmans of the Punjab and Hindustan ; they probably formed connections with Hindú women of the south ; they leaned¹ towards Hinduism and Hindús. The Hindú element told upon them ; it rendered them

Hindú influences at work in the Dekhan : effect on the Mussulmans.

¹ It is significant that Mahmúd of Ghazni originally displayed the utmost bitterness and bigotry towards the idolaters of India. It was only after the conquest of Kanowj and Guzerat that he began to soften towards the Hindús.

impatient of the yoke of Delhi.² A spirit of CHAPTER III. revolt was abroad which none could understand. It broke out at Delhi, the centre of the empire; it was put down by the army of the Punjab. It broke out in the Dekhan, the outlying province on the south; in the end the Dekhan was lost to the empire.

The rise of the Mussulman kingdom of the ^{The Story of two revolts.} Dekhan involves a grave political lesson. The current of Islam had run southward into a sea of Hinduism. It formed a Mussulman delta; it grew into a promontory; it was torn away by rebellion. Ample warning was given. The Delhi revolt of 1320 told the fatal tale of disaffection in the Dekhan army. The warning was unheeded. The innovations and oppressions of Muhammad Tughlak stirred up a second rebellion; it ended in the dismemberment of the empire.

It will be necessary to go back a few years; to ^{Review of the revolt of 1320.} review the events of 1320 in association with those of 1347. In 1320 the Hindú rebels at Delhi were in secret understanding with the Rajas of the Dekhan and Peninsula. When the Pariahs rebelled at Delhi, the Rajas rebelled in the Dekhan and Peninsula. When Ghiás-ud-dín recovered Delhi, he sent his son, the crown prince, to put down the revolt in the

² These phenomena were not perhaps peculiar to the Mussulmans of the Dekhan. Possibly they may be traced out in Bengal. The Mussulmans of Bengal were quite as isolated as those of the Dekhan; quite as ready to revolt against Delhi. But the Hindús of Bengal do not seem to have made so much impression on their Mussulman invaders; they did not help the Mussulmans to revolt. They were enervated by the heat and moisture of the Bengal climate. They had long been slaves of the Bráhmans; they were nearly as ready to become slaves of the Mussulmans. Many became Mussulmans. Many Hindús were Mussulmans at heart of the sect of Sháhs, although retaining all the outward appearance of being strict Hindús. See special instances quoted in the *Siyar-ul-Mutakherin* by Mir Gholam Husain Khar.

CHAPTER III. south.³ The prince restored order in Deoghur; he suffered a terrible disaster at Warangal. The fortress was on the point of surrendering; suddenly his army deserted him; he was forced to fly with a handful of followers to Deoghur.

Treachery in the
Mussulman
camp.

The tale of Asiatic treachery is generally a mystery. Asiatic troops are rarely insubordinate; if their pay is regular they are true to their salt; but they are easily frightened. The army at Warangal had been scared away. No courier had arrived from Delhi for an entire month. Traitors whispered that the Sultan was dead; that officers who had served under Alá-ud-dín were to be put to death; that the “New Mussulmans” were to be again massacred. The army of the Dekhan broke up in a panic of terror. There was no leader amongst them; no common object to bind them together; nothing but a common fear which scattered them. Meantime the traitors in the Mussulman camp were in league with the Hindús of Warangal. The Hindús sallied out of Warangal, and slaughtered the fugitives. The crown prince must have escaped by a miracle.

The revengo.

Another Mussulman army was raised for service in the Dekhan. The new levies were doubtless furious against the Hindús. Warangal was captured. The Raja of Telinga and all his chief men were sent prisoners to Delhi; order was finally restored.

Revolt of
Hindus and
Mussulmans,
1347.

In 1347 twenty-six years had passed away; an interval equal to a generation. Such an interval

³ This was the prince who ultimately succeeded his father under the name of Muhammad Tughlak. The suppression of the revolt has been barely stated in the previous chapter. See *ante*, page 70.

is of profound significance in politics. If a revolt has been suppressed ; if the causes which led to it have not been removed ; it is a moral certainty that it will break out afresh. The new generation forgets the punishment that befell their fathers ; they are ready to risk another rising. Such was the case in the Dekhan. A generation elapsed after the revolt of 1320. Treachery and disaffection were again at work. It is difficult to trace out the intrigue ; but it is obvious that the same panic prevailed in 1347 which prevailed in 1320. The Rajas were frightened at the proceedings of Muhammad Tughlak ; they again threw off the yoke of Delhi. The Mussulman soldiers in the Dekhan were equally frightened ; they broke out into mutiny, and were helped by the Rajas.⁴ The same game was played in 1347 that was played in 1857. Officials were murdered ; treasuries were broken open ; public money was distributed amongst the rebel soldiery. Muhammad Tughlak was utterly unable to cope with the rebellion. The Dekhan was lost to the

⁴ The relations between Hindús and Shias are not strongly marked in the revolt of the Dekhan ; they grew closer in the later history. Strictly speaking there were two revolts ; one in 1344 and the other in 1347 ; the first was set on foot by the Hindús, and the second by the Shias. The details, as recorded by Ferishta, may serve to bring out more clearly the actual state of affairs.

In 1344, a son of the Raja of Telenga, named Krishna Naik, was dwelling near Warangal. He sent privately to Bilál Deva, the Raja of Karnata (on the Mysore table land, in the western half of Peninsular India), and told him that the Mussulmans in the Dekhan were combining to extirpate the Hindús. Accordingly Bilál Deva built the famous capital at Vijayanagar, on the south bank of the Tumbadra. Bilál Deva and Krishna Naik then united their forces with those of the other Hindú Rajas of the Peninsula, and expelled the Mussulmans from every quarter excepting Deoghur. Ferishta, translated by Briggs, vol. i., page 427,

In 1347, the Shiah revolt under Hasan Gangu came to a head in Deoghur, and Hindús joined in it. The language of Ferishta is as follows : — “The Rajas of the Dekhan, also, suffering under the tyranny of the Sultan of Delhi, rejoiced at this revolt (under Hasan Gangu) ; in which some joined, while others, more circumspect, only privately encouraged it, and assisted the rebels with money and supplies.” Ferishta, vol. ii., pages 286, 287.

CHAPTER III. empire ; it was formed into an independent kingdom. Hasan Gangu was the first Sultan of the Dekhan ; he founded the dynasty of the Brahmani Sultans.⁵

Character of
Hasan Gangu.

The character of Hasan Gangu is obscure. Outwardly he was a Mussulman and a Shíah. In reality he was perhaps half a Mussulman and half a Hindú. Possibly he belonged to the same type as Malik Káfúr and Khuzru Khan. Possibly, like them, he had made his religion a stepping-stone to his ambition. He had been brought up by a Bráhman ; when he became Sultan he made this Bráhman his revenue minister.⁶ His dynasty is consequently known as that of the Brahmani or Bahmani Sultans. Probably by some religious intrigues he gained the support of the Hindú Rajas. To all appearance he was a Mussulman and a Shíah ;

⁵ Indian statesmen of the present day will do well to consider the practical question which history suggests. Have the causes which led to the mutiny of Fifty-seven been eradicated ?

⁶ According to Ferishta, Hasan was originally a labourer in the employ of a Bráhman of Delhi, named Gangu. One day he found a treasure in his master's field, and duly carried it to Gangu. The Bráhman was so delighted with this act of honesty that he cast the nativity of his servant, and found that Hasan was destined to become a king. Accordingly Hasan promised that if ever he obtained a kingdom he would make Gangu his minister ; henceforth he adopted the name of Hasan Gangu.

The story told by Ferishta respecting the Bráhman astrologer is open to suspicion. It may possibly have been a current legend ; it is equally possible that it was intended to cover the real connection between Hasan Gangu and the Bráhman, and the real cause of the dynasty being known as the Brahmani or Bahmani dynasty. The opening words of Ferishta confirm this idea ; they are thus translated by Colonel Briggs :—“ Authors differ regarding the birth and the early life of Hasan Bahmani. It would be tedious and useless to relate all that has been said upon this subject, so that I shall merely state that which is most generally believed in the Dekhan.” Upon this passage it may be remarked that Ferishta was a Shíah. Instead, therefore, of relating anything respecting the Brahmanical proclivities of Hasan Gangu, he preferred to tell an idle story about an astrologer.

Ferishta adds that Hasan Gangu was an Afghan by birth. The story of his life and reign prove that he was more of a Persian than an Afghan.

he adopted the black canopy and curtain of the CHAPTER III.
Abbasides.⁷

Few points are more inexplicable in the history of Mussulman India than the workings of the Shíah element. The origin of the antagonism between the Shíahs and Sunnís lies in a nutshell. It was an old quarrel about the succession to the Khalifat; it dates as far back as the death of Muhammad. It is familiar to this day to every man, woman, and child within the Mussulman pale. The question is whether the kinsmen of Muhammad, or the "four friends" elected at Medina, were the rightful successors to the prophet. The Shíahs urge the claims of the kinsmen; the Sunnís accept the four friends.⁸ The disputants are still cursing and reviling each other; occasionally they resort to fisticuffs, cudgels, and swords, in the vague hope of settling the controversy.⁹

Antagonism
between Shíahs
and Sunnís.

⁷ The Abbaside Khalifs sat under a black canopy, and behind a black curtain, as symbols of mourning for the family of the prophet; to this day black is the distinguishing colour of the Shíahs.

⁸ As a matter of fact Muhammad was succeeded in turn by the "four friends," who were elected one after the other by the congregation at Medina, namely, Abu Bakr, Omar, Othman, and Ali. The Sunnís maintained that these four were the rightful successors of Muhammad. The Shíahs maintained that the three first were usurpers, and that Ali, and his two sons Hasan and Husain, were the only rightful successors. Ali, it will be remembered, had married Fátima, the daughter of the prophet, by whom he became father of Hasan and Husain.

From an early period in the history of the Khalifat there had been a split in the Shíah camp; it is of little moment now. Some Shíahs supported the claims of Abbas, an uncle of Muhammad, to the exclusion of Ali. It was a descendant of Abbas who ousted the Omeyad Khalifs at Damascus, and established the Abbaside Khalifs at Bagdad. But the Abbasides were more Arab than Persian. In the present day the Persian Shíahs are the devoted adherents of Ali.

⁹ The antagonism between the Shíah and the Sunní is kept alive by a yearly festival known as the Muharram. Ali and his two sons are regarded by the Shíahs as the three Imáms, or exemplars, who became martyrs to Islam. Husain, the last of the three, was martyred on the tenth day of the month known as Muharram; consequently that day is kept by the Shíahs as an anniversary of the martyrdom. The first fortnight of the Muharram had been a festival time for ages before the advent of Muhammad; as such it is still celebrated as a feast by all Sunnís; but the tenth day of the month is a day of mourning amongst all Shíahs. In every Shíah household the story of the martyrdom of Husain is read

CHAPTER III.

Materialism of
Sunnis.

The progress of this antagonism in Mussulmian India reveals phenomena of historical importance. Sunnis were hostile to Hinduism ; Sháhs gravitated towards Hinduism. The fact is patent throughout the after history. The cause lies underneath the surface. The religion of the Sunnis is more human. They accept the election of the four Khalifs by the congregation at Medina. They have no sympathy with dogmas respecting the supreme spirit, the transmigrations of souls, the apostolic or hereditary succession of prophetic authority through the family of Muhammad. They regard Brahmanism as the worship of idols, and nothing more.

Spiritual ideas
of the Sháhs.

The religion of the Sháhs is more divine. They believe in God as the supreme spirit ; in Muhammad and his family as emanations from the supreme spirit. They ignore the election of the four Khalifs. They believe in a succession, at once hereditary and apostolic, through Ali and his two sons. Their distinctive dogmas thus approximated to those of Brahmanism ; they were worked upon by Brahmanism. The doctrines of the Sháhs changed the face of Islam. They were not confined to the Dekhan ; they soon began to spread northward into Hindustan.¹⁰

aloud amidst groans and lamentations. Men and women weep and wail over the sufferings of the beloved grandson of the prophet. The excitement grows into a religious furor. The first three Khalifs are cursed as usurpers ; Muávia and his son Yezid, the first Omeyad Khalifs of Damascus, are cursed as the destroyers of the three Imáms. At night models of the tombs of the three Imáms are carried through the streets in a blaze of torches in commemoration of their martyrdom.

One proof of the working of Hinduism on the outer life of Islam is still to be seen in the celebration of the Muharram in Peninsular India. Images are expressly forbidden in the Koran ; yet images of Ali and his two sons, as the three Imáms, are often set up in the model tombs.

¹⁰ Further developments in the Sháh religion will be brought under review in the next chapter.

In the Dekhan the Shíah movement was mixed up with a political antagonism. The first Mussulman invaders of the Dekhan were Sunnís ; the native born Mussulmans of the Dekhan were also Sunnís ; hence the Sunnís were known as "Dekhanís." But a large Shíah element entered the Dekhan armies. The Moghuls, known as "New Mussulmans," were Shíahs; so were many Persian immigrants ; hence the Shíahs were known as "Foreigners," and hated as aliens.¹¹

The reign of Hasan Gangu is obscure ; one fact however stands out. He was emphatically a man of the time. He stood in a different position from the conquerors of Hindustan ; he belonged to a different stamp. He was no zealot like Mahmúd of Ghazní. At the outset he had to trim between Hindús and Mussulmans. Zeal for Islam would have stood him in little stead when he wanted the help of Hindú Rajas. He was a Shíah ; he made a Bráhman his minister. Strange to say, nothing further is heard of this Bráhman who gave his name to the dynasty. Later on Hasan Gangu left off trimming. When his Hindú allies of Telinga and Karnata had served his purpose, he turned against them. This looks like ingratitude ; possibly Hasan Gangu was forced to show ingra-

CHAPTER III.
Antagonism
between
Foreigners and
Dekhanís.

Hasan Gangu,
the Shíah, 1347
—1358 : turns
against the
Hindús.

¹¹ There is a necessary confusion in this division of Mussulmans ; race and religion are two different things. It is impossible to make religion a question of race. It is notorious that men of the same race or nation adopt different views. Thus Hasan Gangu was a Shíah, whilst his son and successor, Muhammad Sháh, was a Sunní. Again, the terms Dekhanís and Foreigners are vague and unsatisfactory. Many Arabs and Abyssinians took service in the Dekhan ; they were aliens, but they were Sunnís ; hence they were known as Dekhanís. On the other hand, many Hindús, natives of the Dekhan, were converted to Islam and became Shíahs. They were natives of the Dekhan ; yet they were known as Foreigners.

CHAPTER III. **titude.** In all probability the Rajas acted as Asiatics are accustomed to act under like circumstances. They gave themselves airs ; they exaggerated their services ; they demanded impossible or absurd concessions ; they assumed a tone of superiority or hostility. All who know Asiatics will understand the ingratitude of Hasan Gangu. In the end he seized their frontier fortresses ; he compelled them to pay him the same tribute which they had previously paid to Delhi. The Hindú Rajas obtained nothing by the revolt beyond a change of masters.¹²

Political status
of the Bahmani
kingdom :
Mussulman
dominion sur-
rounded by
Hindús.

The new kingdom of the Dekhan comprised a large square of table land about three hundred miles each way. It corresponded to Maharashtra, or the Mahratta country. It had no outlet whatever to the sea. Towards the north was the river Nerbudda ; on the west was the Western Gháts ; on the south was the river Krishna ; on the east were the jungles of Gondwana and kingdom of Telinga. On the north the new kingdom was linked on to Hindustan by the kingdoms of Malwa and Khandesh, which were growing up out of the dismemberment of the Delhi empire. Malwa lay to the north of the Nerbudda ; Khandesh to the south of the Nerbudda. The Bahmani Kingdom has already been described as a Mussulman promontory stretching southward into a sea of Hinduism. West, east, and south it

¹² Those who remember the claims for reward put forward by certain princes of India after the mutiny of Fifty-seven, will easily account for the ingratitude of Hasan Gangu. Had the rebels succeeded, they would have been worried by similar demands, possibly from the same princes. If the British Government had accepted the help of the Afghans at that crisis, the Afghans would have expected the cession of the Punjab and Kashmár. Had this been conceded they would have asked for Hindustan.

was surrounded by Hindú kingdoms. Its own subjects were Hindús. It was exposed in every way to Hindú influences.

The two Hindú enemies which the new kingdom had to dread were Telinga and Karnata. Telinga was a well-known enemy to the eastward. Karnata on the south was more obscure. It had undergone a transformation which rendered it a dangerous enemy to Islam. An offshoot of the royal house of Warangal established a dynasty in the south, at the city of Vijayanagar on the river Tumbadra. The name of Karnata fell into disuse. The new Hindú dominion was named Vijayanagar; it became the paramount power in the Peninsula; it established an empire to the south of the river Krishna, which extended from sea to sea.

Kulbarga was the capital of the Bahmani kingdom. It was situated a hundred and fifty miles to the west of Warangal; it was¹³ a hundred and fifty miles to the north of Vijayanagar. Hasan Gangu died in 1358; he was succeeded by his son Muhammad Shah. The father was a Shíah, the son was a Sunní; consequently the accession of the son was accompanied by a Sunní reaction. Muhammad Shah cast aside the black canopy and curtain of the Shíahs; he adopted the crimson and gold of the Sunnís. He still maintained a show of friendship with his Hindú neighbours; it was only to secure himself upon the throne. Meantime the two Rajas to the east and south acted in concert. They withheld their tribute; they demanded the restoration of their frontier fortress; they threatened to invite the aid of Fírúz Shah of Delhi. Had they attacked Muhammad Shah at

Hindú powers
of Telinga and
Karnata.

Muhammad
Shah the Sunní,
1358, 1375 :
quarrel respect-
ing frontier
fortresses.

¹³ Kulbarga is now a railway station on the line between Bombay and Madras.

CHAPTER III. once they might possibly have driven him out of the Dekhan. But Hindú princes always delay. Muhammad Shah on his part was quite willing to play a waiting game until he had strengthened himself in his kingdom. He received ambassadors from his Hindú neighbours. He detained them at court as long as possible; he sent other ambassadors in return. In this way he outwitted the Hindús. When he was strong enough he fell upon the Hindús and defeated them. Henceforth there was bitter hatred between Hindús and Mussulmans.

*Insolence of the
Telugu prince.*

Vinaik Deva was the son of the Raja of Telinga. He was an Asiatic to the back-bone. He covertly insulted the Sultan. He stopped some dealers who were carrying horses to Muhammad Shah; he took the horses at his own price. He then shut himself up in a fort, and hoped to escape consequences. Muhammad Shah was furious at the affront. He entered Telinga with a troop of horsemen, captured the fort, and took Vinaik Deva prisoner. Vinaik Deva saw that all was lost. In sheer desperation he abused the Sultan in the foulest language. At last Muhammad Shah cut out his tongue and burnt him alive. This wild revenge raised the whole Telegu people. They harassed the army of the Sultan day and night. He escaped to Kulbarga, but not until two-thirds of his horsemen were killed.¹⁴

*Intrigues of
Telinga and
Vijayanagar.*

At this time both Telinga in the east and Vijayanagar in the south must have repented the part they played in the revolt against Delhi. They

¹⁴ Hindús have a power of abuse which stings a foe to madness. It is a race characteristic; it reveals their peculiar instinct. They do not abuse the opponent direct; they insult his mother and sisters in the coarsest language. The Telugu people to this day will use expressions which cannot be printed.

had helped to throw off the yoke of Delhi only to CHAPTER III. strengthen the enemy at their gates. In their extremity they sent messengers to Delhi ; they besought Fírúz Shah to deliver them from the yoke of Muhammad Shah. But they were too late. Fírúz Shah could do nothing. Muhammad Shah ravaged Telinga with fire and sword ; he captured the great fortress of Golkonda. Then the Raja of Telinga bent to his destiny. He paid up his tribute. He presented Muhammad with a throe of gold which he had prepared for presentation to the Sultan of Delhi.¹⁵

Meanwhile the Raja or Rai of Vijayanagar had grown into a great power. A new sovereign sat upon the throne, named Krishna Rai. The rise of Krishna Rai is a mystery.¹⁶ He appears abruptly in Mussulman annals, like a Pharaoh or Sennacherib in Old Testament history. He was descended from an offshoot of the royal family of Telinga ; but his history is singularly obscure. He belonged to a different type from the old Hindú Rajas. Porus appears in Greek history as the model of a Rajpoot sovereign ; proud and majestic, but courtly, self-restrained, and staunch in his friendship. Asoka and Siláditya were moulded by Buddhism ; they were grave, pious, and conciliatory. But Krishna Rai is a later type than either of the three ; the type of a sovereign moulded by Brahmanism. He resembles Southey's conception of Kchama the de-

Rise of Krishna
Rai of Vijayanagar : a type of
Hindú sovereignty.

¹⁵ This throne was kept for a hundred years, and became famous throughout the Dekhan. It was made of gold and ebony, and was covered either entirely or in part with blue enamel ; every Sultan in succession decorated it with fresh jewels. It was nine feet long and three feet broad ; when finally broken up it was valued at four millions sterling.

¹⁶ The history of the Hindú kingdoms of the Dekhan and Peninsula will be brought under review hereafter.

CHAPTER III. stroyer; his successors appear in a similar character until they were tamed down by the defeats they received from their Mussulman neighbours. Krishna Rai was the haughtiest of Rajas; he had conquered Peninsular India from Malabar to Coromandel.¹⁷

Krishna Rai affronted by Muhammad Shah: massacre at Mudkul.

One day Muhammad Shah was drinking wine in his palace at Kulbarga. Musicians were playing before him; they were singing the songs of Amír Khuzru in praise of kings. He was puffed up with pride; he resolved to cast an affront on Krishna Rai. Instead of rewarding the musicians with money, he gave them an order on the treasury of Vijayanagar. A messenger was sent with the order; in due course it was shown to Krishna Rai. The Hindú sovereign was exasperated beyond all measure. The messenger was set on an ass, and led through the streets of Vijayanagar; he was then dismissed to his master with the utmost contumely. Krishna Rai resolved to be revenged upon the Sultan. He collected a host of horse, foot, and elephants; he crossed the river Tumbadra to capture the frontier fortresses of Mudkul and Raichor.¹⁸ He took Mudkul and slaughtered all the garrison; only one man escaped to tell the story to Muhammad Shah.

¹⁷ It is dubious whether Krishna Rai had conquered the whole of Peninsular India; it seems certain that he had become a paramount power in the South.

¹⁸ Frontier fortresses were often a cause of war between oriental sovereigns. The power which held them maintained an ascendancy over the other, which sometimes led to the exaction of tribute, and other exercise of sovereignty. The frontier fortress on the side of Telenga was Golkonda, near the modern city of Hyderabad; Muhammad had already captured it in order to overawe Telenga. The frontier fortresses on the side of Vijayanagar were Mudkul and Raichor. They were situated in the region between the river Krishna and the river Tumbadra, which is known as the Raichor Doab. Accordingly the Raichor Doab, with its two fortresses of Mudkul and Raichor, was a debatable territory between the Bahmani Sultans and the Hindú Rais of Vijayanagar.

The Sultan was now as exasperated as the CHAPTER III.
Massacre of
Hindus by
Muhammad
Shah: Raja ; his ferocity was intensified by his religious zeal. He entered the mosque at Kulbarga ; he swore upon the Koran that he would not sheath his sword until he had put a hundred thousand idolaters to the sword. He crossed the river Krish-na ; he reached the camp of the Rai by dawn of day. An Asiatic battle is rarely more than a brute fight. Muhammad Shah fell upon the Hindú army with a body of horse ; he gained an easy victory ; he committed a horrible slaughter. The Hindú army comprised not only the soldiers ; it included their wives, children, and camp followers. The Mussulmans cared for nothing but murder. During the battle and the pursuit they are said to have slain seventy thousand men, women, and children. Muhammad Shah crossed the river Tumbadra towards the south ; he gained another bloody victory ; but he could not take the city of Vijayanagar. Indeed the city was impregnable. Three of its sides were fortified by huge granite boulders, united by bastions and curtains.¹⁹ On the fourth side was the river Tumbadra ; the river was impassable because of its rapids. The Hindús mocked the Mussulmans from the walls ; Muhammad Shah was forced to raise the siege. Another battle followed ; it was another massacre of Hindús. At last the Bráhmans declared that Krishna Rai had offended the gods ; they forced him to make peace.

¹⁹ The city of Vijayanagar was circular. It was fortified by seven concentric walls, one within the other. The one described in the text was the outer line of fortifications. Beyond the circuit of this outer wall was an esplanade extending for about fifty yards, in which great stones were half buried, but rose above the earth about the height of a man. See *Travels of Abdur Razzak* in *Elliott's History of India*, vol. iv.

CHAPTER III. He sued for terms; the Sultan told him that he must pay the musicians. The Raja was compelled to obey.²⁰ Mussulmans and Hindús were by this time horror-stricken at the massacres. They agreed together that for the future no one should be slain excepting the soldiers that were fighting in the field.²¹

Slaughter of highwaymen.

There was now peace. Muhammad Shah began to rid his kingdom of highwaymen. He ordered the governors of provinces to kill every robber, and send his head to Kulbarga. At the end of seven months not a bandit remained; eight thousand heads were piled up near the city of Kulbarga.²² Muhammad Shah died in 1374.

Sultans of the Dekhan types of Oriental life.

The chronicles of the Sultans who succeeded Muhammad Shah can scarcely be called history. They comprise the annals of good and wicked sovereigns; of wars between Mussulmans and Hindús; of intermittent conflicts between Shíahs and

²⁰ When Muhammad Shah heard that the money had been paid according to the order which he had given upon the treasury at Vijayanagar, he is said to have exclaimed:—"Praise be to Allah, that what I ordered has been performed, and that no light word can be recorded against me." This anecdote furnishes a striking illustration of Asiatic sentiment. The Sultan forgot the thousands who had been slain in order to carry out his insolent whim; he only exulted in the fact that the money had been paid.

²¹ It is a significant fact that the protest against the needless slaughter came from the Hindús. The Hindú envoys are said to have addressed Muhammad Shah in the following language:—"O Sultan, Krishna Rai may have committed sins, but it is not good for you to kill the innocent. The bestower of kingdoms has given the Dekhan to you and the Kanarese country to, Krishna Rai. There may yet be many wars between the two kingdoms. Let therefore a treaty be made that henceforth none shall be slain excepting the soldiers who are fighting in the field." See Ferishta.

²² This sweeping measure of Muhammad Shah exemplifies the course of Asiatic justice. When a war is over, the disbanded troops disperse in all directions; the country soon swarms with robbers. A reward is offered for their heads; the villains begin to murder one another for the sake of the reward; the innocent are often beheaded with the guilty. At last the bandits are scared away through fear of their fellows; the villagers recover heart, and are once more able to defend themselves.

Sunnís. But the names awaken no associations ; CHAPTER III. the chronology furnishes no clue to the development of political or religious ideas. Islam was gravitating slowly towards Hinduism ; otherwise the civilization was the same in the sixteenth century as it was in the fourteenth. Still many of the Sultans may be regarded as types of character ; the story of their reigns serves to illustrate oriental life and manners.

Mujáhid, who succeeded Muhammad Shah, was a typical sovereign. When a boy of fourteen he killed his father's betel-bearer. When he became Sultan he displayed the same strength, violence, and audacity. He warred against the Rai of Vijayanagar. In one campaign he slew a man-eating tiger single-handed ; the Hindús were so alarmed that they refused to give him battle. In another campaign he penetrated the suburbs of Vijayanagar, climbed a hill and plundered a temple in the face of the Hindú army. He could not capture the city ; he was obliged to return to Kulbarga. He observed the compact which his father had made with Krishna Rai. Instead of slaughtering the inhabitants he enslaved them ; he carried away sixty thousand captives, most of whom were women.

The current of events in Vijayanagar involves a contradiction. Ferishta²³ records the successes of Mujáhid against the Hindús ; yet he extols the Rai of Vijayanagar as the greatest sovereign in all India. Krishna Rai possessed all Peninsular India to the south of the Krishna river. The people

²³ Ferishta, translated by Briggs. The history of the Sultans of the Dekhan had been previously translated by Jonathan Scott. Ferishta is almost the sole authority for the history of the Dekhan.

Mujáhid : head-strong with bulldog courage.
1375—1378.

Greatness of
Krishna Rai of
Vijayanagar.

CHAPTER III. of those countries spoke partly Telugu and partly Kanarese.²⁴ They advanced to battle with songs and dances ; their country was full of woods and fastnesses. The Rai of Vijayanagar was superior to the Sultan of Kulbarga in power, wealth, and dominion. The kings of Malabar and Ceylon kept ambassadors at his court, and sent him presents. The forefathers of Krishna had possessed the kingdom for seven hundred years ;²⁵ they had hoarded up treasures which exceeded those of all the kings of the earth.²⁶ But the Sultan of Kulbarga was superior in valour ; the Hindús were always beaten by the Mussulmans. In the time of Alá-ud-dín, the Rai of Karnata had buried his treasures at Ramiswaram ; much of his hoard was carried away by Malik Káfúr.

Intrigues and assassinations.

Mahmúd : pious and beneficent.
1378—1397.

Mujáhid was stabbed to death by the son of his father's betel-bearer. His uncle Dáúd succeeded to the throne ; he too was stabbed to death. Mahmúd, another uncle, succeeded. He was a Sultan of peace. He reigned twenty years. He employed ten thousand bullocks in bringing grain from Guzerat and Malwa during a famine. He founded schools for orphans in all his chief towns. He gave stipends to

²⁴ It is impossible to say whether Krishna Rai maintained a suzerainty over the Tamil country as far as the coast of Coromandel. On the Malabar side his suzerainty was undoubtedly, for the kings of Malabar sent him yearly presents.

²⁵ This statement of Ferishta is somewhat perplexing. Vijayanagar is said to have been founded about 1344 (see *ante*, page 42 *note*). Possibly Ferishta referred to Karnata ; but Karnata could scarcely have been for seven centuries in the direct possession of the Telinga family. Possibly there had been intermarriages between the royal families of Karnata and Telinga from a remote period ; and thus the seven centuries referred to the family and not to the Karnata kingdom. The subject will be further noticed in dealing with Hindú traditions.

²⁶ This is of course an oriental hyperbole ; but still it conveys the popular idea of the riches of Vijayanagar.

expounders of the Koran, and monthly charities to CHAPTER III.
all who were blind. He died in 1397 ; he was
buried in the tomb of Hasan Gangu.

Ghiás-ud-dín, the son of Mahmud, succeeded to <sup>Ghiás-ud-dín :
blinded and
dethroned, 1397.</sup> the throne at the age of seventeen. An officer of the household was disappointed of a post and resolved on revenge. He invited Ghiás-ud-dín to his house, made him drunk, threw him on his back, and destroyed his eyes with a dagger. Plots and murders followed ; they were mere struggles for power. In the end the blind prince went to Mecca ; Fírúz, son of Dáúd, was proclaimed Sultan.

Fírúz was a man of wit and pleasure ; devoted to learning and science, yet given to wine and women. He read the Old and New Testaments as well as the Koran ; he preferred the Koran because it commanded that women should be hidden from the eyes of strangers. His religion turned upon women. He would not join the Sunnís because they were limited to four wives ; he joined the Shíahs because they did not limit him. His harem was filled with women from every land ; he boasted that he could speak to every one in her own tongue.

Fírúz was eager for knowledge. He collected <sup>Fírúz Shah :
lover of plea-
sure, literature,
and science,
1397-1422.</sup> Evening assemblies. curiosities ; he studied botany, geometry, and logic. Every day when business was over, he surrounded himself with doctors, poets, reciters of history, and readers of the Sháh Námeh. He laid aside all restraint. Every one could come or go, or call for what he pleased to eat or drink. He might speak upon any subject, except an affair of state, or a scandal about an absent person.²⁷

²⁷ It will be seen hereafter that Fírúz Shah belonged to the same type as the emperor Akber, and held evening assemblies of a similar character.

CHAPTER III.

**War against
Vijayanagar.**

Fírúz was soon dragged into a war with Vijayanagar. A new sovereign, named Deva Rai, had ascended the Hindú throne. Deva Rai overran the country between the rivers Tumbadra and Krishna; he captured the frontier fortresses of Mudkul and Raichor; he then encamped on the southern bank of the Krishna river. Fírúz led his forces to the northern bank; he was afraid to cross.

**Assassination of
the eldest son of
Deva Rai.**

At last eight men offered to go over the river; they proposed to assassinate either Deva Rai or his eldest son. Fírúz accepted the offer; it excited no horror; it rather took his fancy. The scheme was carried out as a joke; it certainly was not regarded as a crime. The men crossed the river; they made friends with a company of dancing girls. Two of the men dressed as girls; they went with the company to dance and sing before the son of Deva Rai; the other six men stood outside the pavilion and waited for a signal. The son of Deva Rai and his chief officers got drunk with wine; the two men in girl's attire danced and postured in the Dekhani fashion with a dagger in each hand. Suddenly the prince was stabbed to the heart; so were many of his officers. The six men rushed in and finished the massacre. The lights were put out; the assassins escaped amidst the uproar. The result was that Fírúz crossed the river, routed Deva Rai, and returned with immense booty. Henceforth the Rais of Vijayanagar paid tribute to the Bahmani Sultans.²⁸

**Mussulman in-
trigues with the
Gond Raja.**

About this time another game was played on the northern frontier. The Mussulman Sultans of Malwa

²⁸ Ferishta tries to make it appear that the Rais of Vijayanagar had paid tribute to the Bahmani Sultans after the early victories of Hasan Gangu. The point is doubtful.

and Khandesh were growing jealous of Fírúz. They CHAPTER III.
would not openly attack a brother Mussulman.
They stirred up a Hindú chief, named Narsing
Rai, to invade Berár.²⁹ Narsing Rai was a chief-
tain of Gondwana; he held his court at the fort
of Kherlá on the Sátpura hills. He became a cat's-
paw to the Sultans. He invaded Berár; he soon had
reason to repent. Fírúz captured his fort at
Kherla,³⁰ made him pay tribute, and took his
daughter in marriage.³¹

In 1398-99 Timúr invaded the Punjab with his host of Turks and Moghuls. He entered Delhi, sacked and massacred its inhabitants, and spread a great terror throughout Hindustan. Fírúz propitiated him; he sent presents to Delhi; he offered to become Timúr's vassal. Timúr sent return presents; he also sent a firmán granting Guzerat and Malwa to Fírúz.

Nothing came of the firmán; it only stirred up the Sultans of Guzerat and Malwa to fresh intrigues. They tried to make a cat's-paw of Deva Rai; they were lavish in their promises of help. Deva Rai took advantage of their promises to keep back his

Timúr invades
India, 1398-99;
propitiated by
Fírúz Shah.

Sultans of
Guzerat and
Malwa intrigue
with Deva Rai.

²⁹ The kingdom of the Bahmani Sultans of the Dekhan included four provinces, namely, Doulatábád [i. e., Deoghur] and Berár in the north, and Kulbarga and Telenga ceded districts in the south.

³⁰ The Sátpura range runs along the southern bank of the Nerbudda river, just as the Vindhya range runs along the northern bank. The ruins of the old fort of Kherlá are still to be seen in the neighbourhood of the town of Badnur. Since the publication of Sir Richard Temple's *Administration Report of the Central Provinces* in 1862, Gondwana cannot be called an unknown region. Mr Grant's admirable *Gazetteer of the Central Provinces*, published in 1870, furnishes exhaustive accounts of the whole of this interesting country. Narsing Rai was apparently a Rajpoot; he was a ruler of Gonds. The Gonds are generally regarded as distinct from the Hindús.

³¹ The marriages of the Bahmani Sultans with the daughters of Hindú Rajas became as detrimental to the dynasties of the Dekhan as it had already proved to the Khilji dynasty of Hindustan.

CHAPTER III. tribute from Firúz ; he was afraid to make war. At last he violated the Sultan's territory ; he tried to carry off a girl from the town of Mudkul. Firúz avenged the outrage. He desolated the country round about Vijayanagar until Deva Rai was in despair. The Sultans of Guzerat and Malwa could not help him ; they could not keep their promises ; they dared not aid the idolater against the believer. Deva Rai was forced to sue for peace. Firúz Shah demanded his daughter in marriage ; he also demanded fifty elephants, two thousand musicians and dancers, and a vast quantity of gold and jewels. The Rai had no way of escape ; he was forced to give his daughter to the conqueror.

*Marriage of
Firuz Shah with
the daughter of
Deva Rai.*

The marriage of the Mussulman Sultan with a Hindú bride was celebrated with every oriental rejoicing. For forty days there was nothing but feasting and revelry. The Mussulman camp was more than four miles from the city of Vijayanagar. The road between the two was turned into a street ; it was lined on either side with shops and booths. Provisions and sweetmeats, flowers and perfumes, fruits and choice drinks, were free to all. Conjurors, play-actors, snake-charmers, dancing-girls, and buffoons performed before the multitudes. When the marriage rites were over, the street was covered with carpets ; the princess was carried with great pomp to the Sultan's pavilion. After some days the bridegroom and his bride paid a visit to the palace of the Rai. All the chief officers accompanied the processions in gorgeous array ; music was playing, banners were flying, beautiful children were scattering flowers of gold

and silver. The Sultan was feasted for three days, CHAPTER III. and then took his leave; but the parting was unpropitious. The Rai accompanied his son-in-law part of the way to the camp; he turned back without going the whole way. Fírúz was incensed at the affront; henceforth he was in secret enmity against the Rai.³²

The peace lasted ten years. In an evil hour <sup>Devastation of
the Dekhan by
the Hindús.</sup> Fírúz renewed the war. His army was weakened by pestilence; it was utterly defeated. The Hindús revenged themselves upon the Mussulmans as they had never done before. They cut off the heads of the believers; they built them into a tower upon the field of battle. Deva Rai invaded the Dekhan with a host of idolaters; he wasted the country; he burnt down mosques and shrines; he slaughtered the villagers like sheep. At last the Mussulmans recovered heart; they drove the Hindús back to the Peninsula. Fírúz never recovered the blow; he spent his last days in sorrow and despair. He died in 1422, after a reign of twenty-five years.

The next Sultan was Ahmad Shah. He was <sup>Ahmad Shah
the butcher,
1422-1435.</sup> bent on revenging the wrongs inflicted by Deva Rai. He invaded the territories of Vijayanagar; he compelled the Hindú army to take shelter in the capital. He set aside the old compact; he put to death women and children without mercy. Whenever the tale of slaughter numbered twenty thousand persons, he halted for three days, and made a feast. He broke down the temples; he

³² The damsel of Mudkul, who was the original cause of the war, was not forgotten. Indeed her fate was extraordinary. After the war was over, Fírúz sent for her to court; he found her so beautiful that he was half inclined to marry her himself. Ultimately he gave her to his son.

CHAPTER III. destroyed the colleges of the Bráhmans. In the end he drove the Hindús to desperation. Five thousand banded together; they swore to slay Ahmad Shah at all hazards. They watched his every movement. One day, whilst hunting outside his camp, he saw them approaching him. He galloped to a cattle fold; he was joined by two hundred followers. But he was well nigh overwhelmed. Nearly all his men were slain or wounded; the Hindús were breaking down the walls of the fold; suddenly a body of Mussulman horsemen galloped up and saved him. The Hindús were driven off, but numbers had fallen. Deva Rai saw that fate was against him; he paid up his arrears of tribute. Ahmad Shah then returned to his own dominions.

*Wars against
brother Mussul-
mans.*

Meanwhile the Sultan of Malwa was playing his old game in the Dekhan; he was making war on Narsing Rai for refusing to invade Berár. Narsing Rai was staunch. Ahmad Shah went out to help him; the Mullahs raised a cry that he was helping the idolater against the believer. Ahmad Shah stayed his hand, but only for a while. He soon declared that he had done enough for Islam; he fell upon the Malwa Sultan and defeated him utterly.³³

*Removal of the
capital from
Kulbarga to
Bídur.*

Ahmad Shah moved his capital from Kulbarga to Bídur.³⁴ The change is significant. Bídur is a

³³ This defiance of the Ulamá resembles that of 'Alá-ud-dín Khilji. It reveals the fact that Hindú influences were beginning to work amongst the Sultans of the Dekhan.

³⁴ Bídur is one of the cities mentioned in the Mahá-Bhárata. It was the locality of some of the leading events in the tradition of Nala and Damayanti. The daughter of Raja Bhima dwelt at Bídur; here she chose Raja Nala at her Swayamvara; here she sent her children whilst her husband was engaged in the ruinous gambling match; here she was finally united to her husband. See *ante*, Vol. i. and iii.

hundred miles to the north of Kulbarga. Ahmad CHAPTER III.
Shah found that his Mussulman neighbours to the northward had become more dangerous than his Hindú neighbours to the southward. He strengthened himself against Guzerat and Malwa by making an alliance with the Sultan of Khandesh;³⁵ he married his son Alá-ud-dín to the daughter of the Sultan of Khandesh. He died in 1435 after a reign of twelve years.

Alá-ud-dín succeeded to the throne of Bídur. <sup>Alá-ud-dín the
trimmer, 1435—
1457.</sup> He married a Hindú princess; he neglected his Mussulman queen. The Sultan of Khandesh made war upon him, but was defeated; nothing more is told of the matter.

About this time Deva Rai of Vijayanagar was brooding over his defeats. He could not understand why he should be so often beaten by the Mussulmans. He had larger dominions, more people, and more money. He had many sea-ports teeming with riches. Still the Mussulmans were too much for him. Once only in the reign of Fírúz he had gained the upper hand; ever since that time the Mussulmans had been a terror to the Hindús.

In this perplexity Deva Rai called together a <sup>The great
council.</sup> great council of Bráhmans and Kshatriyas. Such councils were common in ancient times. When they were all assembled together, he begged them to tell him truly:—‘Why was it that the Mussulmans always defeated the Hindús?’

The Bráhmans spoke after the manner of priests. <sup>Opinion of the
Bráhmans.</sup> They said it was the will of God; it had been fore-

³⁵ Khandesh acted as a political buffer between the Bahmani Sultans and the Sultan of Malwa.

CHAPTER III. told in their sacred books ; it was the outcome of the age of Kali.

Opinion of the
Kshatriyas.

The Kshatriyas spoke after the manner of soldiers. They said that the Mussulmans had better horsemen and better archers. The Mussulmans were mounted on horses from Persia and Turkistan. The Hindús were mounted on the ponies of the Peninsula. The Mussulman archers were far superior to the Hindú archers ; they had stronger arm and keener eye ; their arrows were bewildering and blinding.

Deva Rai enlists
Mussulmans.

Deva Rai hearkened to the Kshatriyas. He enlisted Mussulmans ; he drilled his Hindú archers. He respected the religion of the Mussulmans. He built them a mosque. He placed a Koran before his throne ; they prostrated themselves before the sacred book ; they would have refused to prostrate before an idolater.

Deva Rai sub-
mits to destiny.

But Deva Rai could not get the mastery over the Bahmani Sultan. He made war upon Alá-ud-dín. He gained one victory ; he was routed in the second battle ; he lost his eldest son in the third. The extent of his defeat is unknown. He never renewed the war. He tendered his submission ; henceforth he paid his tribute regularly.

Sháhs tempted
to serve Hindu
Bajás.

The enlistment of Mussulmans in Hindú armies is a new phase in the history. Probably it was brought about by the antagonism between the Sunnis and Sháhs, the Dekhanis and "the Foreigners. The bitterness of the struggle was daily increasing. It was growing to a dangerous height. It was threatening to rend asunder the Bahmani empire. It divided the court and army into hostile camps. When the Sunnis were in power, the Sháhs would

be tempted to take service under Hindú Rajas. CHAPTER III.

About this time Alá-ud-dín resolved to conquer Konkana. The Rajas of Konkana were brigands and pirates. They held the region between the Western Gháts and the Indian Ocean. Their country was difficult and unhealthy; it extended from Bombay on the north to Goa on the south. They were barricaded by forests and precipices. Alá-ud-dín sent a mixed force of Dekhanis and Foreigners to root them out of their strong-holds.³⁶ The Dekhanis refused to go; they were alarmed at the thick jungles and overhanging mountains. The Foreigners went; they were ensnared into a narrow pass; they were attacked by the forces of Konkana and slaughtered like sheep. The recriminations which followed between the Dekhanis and Foreigners led to intrigues, treacheries, and murders. According to Ferishta thousands of Foreigners were massacred by the Dekhanis in cold blood. Ferishta, however, was himself a Foreigner and a Shíah. He writes with a bitterness which has perhaps driven him to exaggerations. It would be sheer waste of time to review the dubious detail of perfidy and assassination.

Alá-ud-dín died in 1457, after a reign of twenty-four years. His death was followed by a contest between his two sons Humáyún and Hasan. ^{Humáyún the cruel: horrible punishment of rebels, 1457—1461.} Hu-máyún was the eldest; his character was so utterly bad that the nobles placed Hasan upon the throne. Humáyún broke into the palace with his followers, dragged down Hasan, and put out his eyes.

³⁶ Alá-ud-dín was trimming between Sunnis and Shiáhs. This was the policy of the Sultans who succeeded Firuz. It was not until a later period in the history, when the Bahmani empire was broken up into smaller kingdoms, that the Sultans of the Dekhan began to espouse different sides.

CHAPTER III. Humáyún was proclaimed Sultan; he was called away from the city of Bídur by a rebellion in Telingana. In his absence the people of Bídur rose in insurrection; they released the blind prince together with seven thousand state prisoners.³⁷ The revolt spread to the provinces. Humáyún hastened back to Bídur; he put down the rebellion with the fury of a savage. The public square became an arena of torture. The blind prince was thrown to a tiger. Thousands of men were put to the most cruel of deaths; thousands of women were subjected to a violence worse than death. Menial servants who had no hand in the rebellion were impaled, or cut to pieces, or flayed alive. The subsequent atrocities of Humáyún are indescribable. After three years he was put to death by his own servants.³⁸

Mahmúd, the
last of the Bah-
mani Sultans,
1463—1516.

Then followed the reign of a minor; it lasted for three years longer. But the further history of the Bahmani Sultans grows confused and unmeaning. Mahmúd, who may be called the last of the Bahmani Sultans, reigned from 1463 to 1516. For a brief period the empire flourished. His minister, Mahmúd Gawan, was the ablest man of the time; he conquered Goa and Konkana on one side, and Telinga and Orissa on the other.³⁹ But he was a Foreigner, and the Dekhanis worked

³⁷ There appears to have been a religious element in this revolution; it is too obscure to admit of explanation.

³⁸ It is difficult for a European historian to write a faithful account of the Mussulman Sultans of the Dekhan. Children of both sexes were torn from their parents for the worst of purposes. Humáyún seized brides in the public streets; after a few days he sent them back to their husbands. It is wonderful that such a wretch was permitted to reign for three years.

³⁹ Mahmúd conquered Goa in order to destroy the nest of pirates, who had maintained their hold on the island from a remote antiquity. Forty years afterwards Goa was captured by the Portuguese, as already related in a previous volume.

his ruin. A letter was forged with his seal, purporting to invite the Raja of Orissa to rebel.⁴⁰ The Sultan believed that the letter was authentic; he ordered the minister to be beheaded. Henceforth the Sultan abandoned himself to wine and debauchery. The governors of the provinces broke out in rebellion; they dismembered the Bahmani monarchy; they established independent kingdoms. The drunkenness which prevailed at court spread amongst the people. Ferishta describes the mania for liquor with curious exaggeration. "Holy doctors," he says, "pawned their clothes for drink; expounders of the Koran were swilling in the wine shops."⁴¹ The authority of Mahmúd Sultan was confined to the city of Bídur and the immediate neighbourhood; even this limited authority was usurped by a new minister, named Amú Baríd. Thus Sultan Mahmúd passed away from the page of history. A petty dynasty, known as the Baríds, lingered on at Bídur, until the little kingdom was finally absorbed in the Moghul empire.⁴²

The political relations between the Mussulmans and Hindús were entirely changed by the dismem-

Peace between
the Dekhan and
Peninsula.

⁴⁰ The connection between Orissa and the Dekhan must have been very slight. They were separated by the great forest of Gondwana.

⁴¹ Ferishta is a faithful historian in general, but he was a Shíah. His sympathies were with the Foreigners or Shíahs; he could believe anything that was evil of the Dekhanis or Sunnis.

⁴² One story is related of Sultan Mahmúd, which is worthy of record. During a campaign in Telinga, he was told that there was a temple in the city of Kánchipura [the modern Conjeveram, near Madras], which was covered with plates of gold. Accordingly he set off for Kánchipura with a chosen body of horsemen. As he approached the city the Hindús swarmed out like bees. One tall Bráhman struck a blow at the Sultan, and was killed on the spot. The temple was taken by storm; seven days were spent in stripping it of all its gold and jewels. The subsequent misfortunes of Mahmúd were ascribed by the Hindús to his having slaughtered a Bráhman.

CHAPTER III. berment of the Bahmani empire. The balance of power was lost. The Mussulman empire in the Dekhan was no longer united under a single Sultan: It was no longer able to concentrate all its forces against the Hindú empire of the Peninsula. It was broken up into five kingdoms. The Dekhan at this period may be described as a square, having a little kingdom in the centre, and a larger kingdom in each of the four angles. Bídur was the centre. Northward of Bídur were Ahmadnagar and Berár. South of Bídur were Bíjápur and Golkonda.⁴³

There was a truce between the Mussulmans and the Hindús; it lasted for some years. The Mussulman kingdoms of the Dekhan were distracted by the growing strife between the Shíahs and the Sunnís. The Hindú empire of Vijayanagar was distracted by intrigues, usurpations, and massacres, which followed the death of Deva Rai.

History of Bíjápur, typical of the history of all the Dekhan kingdoms.

The history of the Mussulman kingdoms of the Dekhan is of small value. The one point of interest is the struggle between Shíahs and Sunnís. The character of this struggle is sufficiently depicted in the history of Bíjápur. Again, Bíjápur was nearest to Vijayanagar. When Vijayanagar recovered her strength, Bíjápur bore the whole brunt of the struggle against the Hindús. Accordingly the history of Bíjápur will serve as a type of all the others. It also tells the story of the last war against Vijayanagar.

⁴³ The history of these several dynasties is not only useless, but inexpressibly tedious. It may, however, be desirable to bear their names in mind. The Nizám Sháhí dynasty reigned at Ahmadnagar. The Imád Sháhí dynasty reigned at Berár. The Barid Sháhí dynasty reigned at Bídur. The Adil Sháhí dynasty reigned at Bíjápur. The Kutb-Sháhí dynasty reigned at Golkonda.

Yusuf Adil Shah was the first Sultan of Bíjápur.⁴⁴ CHAPTER III.
 He was a Shíah. He was tolerant towards Sunnís as well as Hindús. It was customary for Shíah Mullahs to curse the first three Khalifs as usurpers; this was strictly forbidden by Yusuf Adil Shah. "Islam," he said, "has many sects, and heaven has many mansions." He leaned still more towards the Hindús. He married a Mahratta princess who accepted Islam; he gave a daughter in marriage to the Sultan of Berár, who was a converted Hindú.

Ismail Adil Shah succeeded Yusuf on the throne of Bíjápur. He was the son of Yusuf by the Mahratta princess. He was only a boy, but he was a Shíah. The minister was a Sunní. A conflict was inevitable. The minister was bent upon obtaining the throne, and restoring the Sunní religion.

The story of the court intrigues at this crisis will show the fierceness of the antagonism. The women were as eager and desperate as the men. The minister shut up the boy Sultan and his mother in the palace. He would have seized the throne at once; he consulted the astrologers; he was told that the stars were unfavourable. He feigned sickness; he shut himself up in his own house; he brooded

Yusuf Adil
Shah, the
Shíah: his
toleration, 1489
—1510.

Ismail Adil
Shah, the
Shíah: 1510—
1534.

Intrigues of a
Sunni minister.

"A strange story is told by Ferishta that Yusuf Adil Shah was the son of Amurath the Second, emperor of Turkey; that when all the sons of Amurath, excepting the eldest, were put to death by the bow-string, he was smuggled out of the seraglio, sent to Persia, and brought up as a Shíah. The whole story is a fiction. It was probably invented for the purpose of ascribing a royal parentage to Yusuf. Amurath left an infant, but it was unquestionably murdered. According to the story told by Knolles, the mother was frantic with grief; she demanded revenge; the executioner was made over to her: she stabbed him to death; she cut out his liver and threw it to the dogs. This incident, horrible as it appears, probably approximates to the truth. There was no motive for inventing it. The wrath of the mother is natural; it proves that her infant was murdered. See Knolles's History of the Turks, folio, page 338. London: 1610.

CHAPTER III. over his schemes whilst waiting for a fortunate hour.

Resistance of
the Mahratta
queen dowager:
assassination of
the minister.

The Mahratta queen knew that her son was in danger. She prevailed on a faithful Turk to assassinate the minister. The Turk gave out that he was going to Mecca ; that he wished to make his salám to the minister before departing. He was admitted into the minister's chamber ; he stabbed the Sunní to the heart. The Turk was cut to pieces by the guards, but the minister was a dead man.

Son of the
minister aims at
the throne.

The mother of the minister was as resolute as the mother of the Sultan. She had lost her son ; she had a grandson who had grown to be a man ; his name was Sáfdar Khan ; she determined that Sáfdar Khan should become Sultan of Bíjápur. She kept the assassination a profound secret. She dressed the corpse in his usual clothes ; she placed it on a sofa in the verandah as though the minister had been still alive. She sent Sáfdar Khan to secure the young Sultan and his mother ; Sáfdar Khan was then to seize the throne.

Desperate battle
between the
Shíahs in the
palace and the
Sunnís outside.

Meantime the Mahratta queen was preparing for a deadly conflict. She knew nothing of what was going on ; she only knew that she and her son must fight for their lives as well as for the throne. She had a woman to help her named Dilshad. The two ladies armed themselves and all the women servants ; they engaged a body of archers to assist them. They sent messengers into the city to summon all the Shíahs or Foreigners to their rescue. When Sáfdar Khan approached the palace with his Sunnís, he was assailed by a storm of stones and arrows. He fell back to procure cannon for battering down the

palace gates. Meantime the women inside were re-inforced by fresh bodies of archers and match-lock-men; the new arrivals made their way over the fort ditch at the back of the palace; they were dragged up to the windows by ropes. A fierce battle raged. Many were killed and wounded. At last Sáfdar Khan burst open the palace gates and rushed into the court-yard. An arrow pierced his eye; he crouched down against the wall. At that moment the young Sultan heaved a great stone upon him; it crushed him to death.

The Sunní revolt was at an end; Ismail recovered his throne. The body of the faithful Turk was buried in a magnificent tomb; holy men were appointed to pray for his soul; so long as the Sultan dwelt at Bíjápur he paid a monthly visit to the tomb, and joined in the prayers.

The further reign of Ismail is of small interest. He was a Shíah; he received an embassy from the Shíah Sultan of Persia.⁴⁵ He was succeeded by his son Mallu. The new Sultan was a monster of wickedness. His grandmother, the Mahratta princess, ordered a Turkish noble to depose him and put out his eyes.

Ibrahim, a younger brother, was the next Sultan. He was a Sunní; he promoted the Sunnis, and persecuted the Shíahs. He turned away the Persian accountants because they were Shíahs; he engaged Mahratta Bráhmans in their room. The change proved mischievous. Many of the Bráhmans proved unfaithful and were put to death.

⁴⁵ In the year 1500 the Shíahs of Persia had established an independent kingdom under the Súfi Sultans. It was a Sultan of this dynasty that sent an embassy to the Sultan of Bíjápur.

CHAPTER III.

Triumph of the
Shíahs.Mallu, the
monster, 1534.Ibrahim, the
Sunní: persecu-
tion of the
Shíahs, 1557—

CHAPTER III. Numbers of Sháhs departed out of the kingdom and entered the service of the Rai of Vijayanagar. Ibrahim carried on many wars against his Mussulman neighbours; they are forgotten now. He died in 1557. His last act was to order the execution of his physicians because they could not cure him.

Revolution in
Vijayanagar.

During the reign of Ibrahim, the empire of Vijayanagar was convulsed by treacheries and massacres. The story is horrible but typical. It tells of a revolution which is frequent in Hindú history; the transfer of the sovereignty from the family of the Raja to that of the minister. It reveals the perfidy and bloodthirstiness which have been the curse of Asiatic courts from the remotest antiquity.

Intrigues of
Timma, the
minister.

Dova Rai had a minister named Timma. When Deva Rai died, there was no son old enough to succeed him as Raja of Vijayanagar. Timma placed an infant prince upon the throne; he ruled in his name as regent of the empire. When the infant was growing old enough to reign, he was murdered. Three infants reigned in succession; each one was murdered in turn. There was no one to interfere; the machinery of the state went on as usual; the treasury was in the hands of Timma; the armies of the empire were at his command.

Ram Rai, son of
Timma, gains
the throne.

Meanwhile Timma married his son Ram Rai to a granddaughter of Deva Rai. This was part of his life-long intrigue. The marriage to the princess gave Ram Rai a show of claim to the throne. In the end Ram Rai was proclaimed Raja. Another work of slaughter was carried out in the dark places of the palace. All the males of the royal

family were put to death; none escaped, except a half-witted man named Termal, and an infant of the female branch.

Ram Rai gained the throne without opposition. Had he been courtly towards his nobles, after the manner of Rajas, he might have reigned until his dying day. But he was puffed-up and insolent; he offended the vassals of the empire by his pride and arrogance. They cried out against the usurper; they demanded a prince royal for their Raja.

Ram Rai was in extreme peril; his kingdom and his life were in equal danger. He saved himself by yielding to the clamour. He placed the infant of the female branch upon the throne; he fell back upon the post of minister. The nobles were satisfied. Ram Rai still reigned as regent; possibly he stooped to fawn and flatter. Meantime he pushed on the work of assassination; every dangerous foe was put out of the way. His resources were boundless; poison or the dagger might be freely used; his instruments had nothing to fear. When Ramia had cut down every enemy, he placed the infant Raja in confinement; he once more took his seat upon the throne as Raja of the empire.

Many of the nobles chafed under the new usurpation. Some broke out in rebellion. Ram Rai took the field against them. Suddenly a strange incident wrested the empire out of his hands. He had entrusted the charge of the imperial treasury at Vijayanagar to a favourite slave whom he had raised to high office. His campaign in the province exhausted his army chest; he sent to the capital for a fresh supply of money. The slave opened the imperial treasury; his brain was turned at the sight of the

Opposition of
the nobles.

Intrigues of
Ram Rai.

Overthrow of
Ram Rai.

CHAPTER III. golden hoards. Wild cravings seduced him into treason. He released the infant Raja, placed him on the throne, assumed the post of minister, and began to levy troops. Every disaffected tributary in the empire hastened to Vijayanagar to rally round the lawful Raja and defend him against Ram Rai.

Termal seizes
the throne.

At this crisis there was another turn of fortune. The slave had not acted alone. He had discovered his plans to Termal, the half-witted prince. Termal had all the craft and cruelty of a madman. He put the slave to death and became minister. He put the infant to death and became Raja. The feudatories accepted the change; probably they would have accepted any change that delivered them from the insolence of Ram Rai. Termal Rai was akin to the old dynasty; consequently he had a claim to the sovereignty. Ram Rai was completely baffled; he retired to his own estates and bided his time.

Invites the Sul-
tan of Bijápur.

The madness of Termal proved more unbearable than the insolence of Ram Rai. The nobles of the empire were driven to rally round Ram Rai. Termal suddenly found himself in mortal danger; a tempest was gathering round him to destroy him. He saved himself by calling in the Mussulmans. He sent large presents to Ibrahim, Sultan of Bijápur; he entreated the Sultan to help him; he promised that if the Sultan saved him he would become the vassal of Bijápur.

Ibrahim Shah
at Vijayanagar.

Ibrahim accepted the offer with gladness. He marched his army with all speed to Vijayanagar; he was admitted within the walls; he was conducted to the palace. Termal hailed him as his deliverer. He placed the Sultan upon the throne of Vijayanagar; he did homage before Ibrahim as his vassal.

The Hindús were in the utmost dismay. Termal CHAPTER III
 had betrayed the empire to the Mussulmans; his
 Mussulman allies enabled him to defy his Hindú
 enemies. Ram Rai and his adherents entreated
 him to send away the Sultan. They declared
 that the presence of the Mussulmans polluted the
 temples and offended the gods. They vowed that if
 he would only dismiss the Mussulmans they would
 be his faithful subjects for the future. Termal
 was already sick of the Mussulmans. He was anxious
 to be reconciled to his feudatories. He bribed
 Ibrahim to go back to Bíjápur with a subsidy of
 nearly two millions sterling. Scarcely had the Mus-
 sulman army crossed the Krishna river when Termal
 was undeceived. The nobles threw their vows to
 the winds. They proclaimed that they were marching
 on Vijayanagar to avenge the young Raja who
 had been murdered by Termal. The tidings drove
 Termal frantic. He put out the eyes of all his
 horses and elephants; he cut off their tails. He
 crushed the jewels in the treasury with heavy mill-
 stones. Finally, just as his enemies were break-
 ing into the palace, he fell upon his sword and
 perished on the spot.⁴⁶

Ram Rai now became Raja of Vijayanagar; he
 soon restored the empire to its former grandeur.
 He threw off all show of dependence upon the Mus-
 sulmans. He was in reality the master. He paid
 no tribute to Bíjápur; he kept possession of the
 Raichor Doab.

Meanwhile Ali Adil Shah succeeded his father Ali Adil Shah,
a Shíah, 1557—
1568.

⁴⁶ These desperate proceedings were in accordance with old Rajpoot usages. Raja Jaipál of Lahore threatened to act in like manner unless Sabaktigin and Mahmúd concluded a peace.

CHAPTER III. Ibrahim as Sultan of Bijapur. He was a Shiah; he restored the ascendancy of the Shias. He ordered the Mullahs to pray for the three Imams,—Ali, Hasan, and Husain; he appointed criers to curse the three Khalifs,—Abu Bakr, Omar, and Othman.

League between the Shah Sultan and Hindu Raja. Ali Adil Shah was the most bigoted Shiah that had hitherto sat upon the throne of Bijapur. It is

a suggestive fact that this bigoted Shiah formed a closer alliance with Ram Rai than had ever existed before between a Sultan and a Raja. Ram Rai lost a son. Ali Adil Shah paid a visit of condolence to Vijayanagar; he was adopted as a son by the Rai and his queen. Ali Adil Shah went further. He made war upon Ahmadnagar; he was helped by the Sultan of Golkonda; he invited the co-operation of Ram Rai. The Raja of Vijayanagar was as eager to interfere in the affairs of the Dekhan as Ibrahim had been to interfere in the affairs of the Peninsula. He readily joined his forces to those of Bijapur and Golkonda; he fought with them against the Sultan of Ahmadnagar. Meanwhile all true believers were filled with horror; they saw Mussulman Sultans helped by an idolatrous Raja in a war against a brother Mussulman.

Mussulman league against Ram Rai.

The two Sultans had bitter reason to repent their apostasy. During the war against Ahmadnagar the Hindus committed enormous sacrilege in Mussulman territory; they stabled their horses in the mosques; they performed Brahmanical rites in Mussulman shrines. When the war was over Ram Rai acted as Hindu Rajas will act under like circumstances. He exaggerated his achievements. He arrogated to himself all the honour of the war. He became puffed up with pride and vain glory. He

treated the Sultans of the Dekhan as his vassals ; CHAPTER III. he insulted their envoys. Then the Sultans banded together to throw off the yoke of the unbeliever. They forgot their quarrels; they thought only of revenge. Berár was too far away to the northward; Ahmadnagar and Bídur confederated with Bíjápur and Golkonda. All four collected their armies on the plains of Bíjápur; they marched south to the bank of the river Krishna.

Meantime Ram Rai was filled with wrath. He gathered together all his horse, foot, and elephants; he thought to overwhelm the Mussulmans. His preparations were noised abroad throughout the Peninsula. He gave money to all his officers; he gave dresses, jewels, and perfumes to all his wives and concubines. He took his farewell of his mother; he received her blessing. He gave his last banquet to all his favourite ladies. He left the zenana, mounted his golden litter, and went out of the palace to take the field. His armies were divided into three great hosts. One host was sent to guard the ford of the river Krishna under the command of his brother Yeltam. The second host was sent as an advanced guard under the command of his brother Venkatadri. The third host formed the main body under his own command.

When the four Sultans reached the Krishna, they saw that the first host was drawn up on the opposite bank. It was impossible to cross the river; the ford was guarded by cannon and rockets mounted on earthworks. The Sultans marched three days along the bank, as if to seek for another ford. Yeltam left the earthworks, and marched his Hindú army the same way along the opposite bank. On

Four Sultans of
the Dekhan
cross the
Krishna.

CHAPTER III. the third night the Sultans returned in all haste to the ford ; they crossed the river before Yeltam discovered the feint. By the evening of the next day they had eluded the army of Venkatadri ; they had encamped within ten miles of the army of Ram Rai.

Battle of Talikota, 1565 : defeat and death of Ram Rai.

The scouts of Ram Rai soon brought him the tidings ; he sent off expresses to summon his two brothers to join him. Next morning the Hindú and Mussulman armies were drawn up facing each other in battle-array. Both had cannon ; the Mussulmans had the best. The Mussulmans guarded their front with a line of cannon fastened together with ropes and chains. The Hindús guarded their front with war elephants as well as cannon. The Hindús began the battle with shot and rockets. They then charged bravely in Telinga fashion ; they drove back both of the Mussulman wings. But the Mussulman centre was unbroken. The Mussulman cannon discharged great bags of copper money against the enemy ; the Hindús fell in heaps. At this moment a war elephant of the Hindús ran madly about ; it overturned the litter of Ram Rai. The Mussulman gunners seized the Rai and carried him off ; they cut off his head without further parley ; they paraded it upon a spear in the sight of both armies. The death of the Raja gave the victory to the Mussulmans. The Hindús turned and fled. The Mussulmans pursued them hotly to the walls of Vijayanagar ; they broke into the city ; they wreaked their vengeance upon the Hindú capital. Three centuries have passed away, but the memory of the battle of Talikota,

and the plunder of Vijayanagar, are still lingering CHAPTER III. in local legend.⁴⁷

The battle of Talikota is a landmark in the history of India. The Hindú empire of the south received a mortal blow; it died away into a phantom. The city of rock and granite became the haunt of beasts of prey. Meanwhile, Moghuls from the north were building up a new empire. It was destined to overshadow the whole Indian continent; to dazzle the world with visions of wealth and grandeur; to burst like a bubble and vanish in its turn.⁴⁸

Fall of the empire of Vijayanagar.

⁴⁷ Cæsar Frederike visited the city of Vijayanagar two years after the battle. He states that Ram Rai perished through the treachery of two Mussulman generals in his service, who turned against him in the middle of the battle. The Mussulmans spent six months in plundering the city, searching in all directions for buried money. The houses were still standing, but they were empty. The court had moved from Vijayanagar to Pennakonda, which was eight days' journey to the south. The inhabitants had disappeared, and gone elsewhere. The surrounding country was so infested with thieves that Cæsar Frederike was compelled to stay six months longer at Vijayanagar than he intended. When at last he set out for Goa, he was attacked every day, and had to pay a ransom on each occasion.

⁴⁸ It is a suggestive fact that within a century after the death of Ram Rai, the history of Vijayanagar had been utterly perverted by the Brahmins. Legends were current amongst the Hindús which ignored the Mussulman conquest. The four Sultans of the Dekhan were said to have been the slaves of the Raja of Vijayanagar. They had been appointed to govern their respective kingdoms as his vassals. They had rebelled against their suzerain and slain him. This story again was mixed up with a myth. In ancient times all India was said to have been under one suzerain. It was divided into four vassal kingdoms. The four vassal princes were respectively known as the lord of elephants, the lord of horses, the lord of oxen, and the lord of the umbrella. It is difficult to say who was the suzerain. Indra-prastha, or old Delhi, seems to have been the capital. To attempt to separate ancient myths from modern perversions in stories of this description would be sheer waste of time. Compare Fryer's Travels in India, Letter IV. chap. 4; Thevenot's Travels in India, Book II. chap. 1; Sterling's Orissa, chap. 3; Lettres Edifiantes et Curieuses, vol. xii. page 93, et seq. The utter worthlessness of Hindú Puráns and Buddhist chronicles has already been pointed out in Appendix II. to vol. iii. The worthlessness of so-called native histories will be fully shown hereafter.

CHAPTER IV.

THE MOGHUL EMPIRE : BÁBER, HUMÁYUN, AKBER. A. D. 1526 TO 1605.

CHAPTER IV.

Moghul empire
in India, a type
of old Hindú
empires.

THE establishment of the Moghul empire in India is the most notable event in Indian annals. It brings a new people upon the stage; heroes and heroines of a different stamp from the Turks and Afghans of the preceding age; a race who have played an important part in the development of Asia, and possibly in that of Europe, from the very beginning of things. The Moghul empire in India is not an isolated event; not a mere episode in Hindú life. It was the last link in a chain of empires. Link after link has dawned upon the world at intervals, and died out at intervals, from the remotest antiquity. Ninus and Sardanapalus, Cyrus and Ahasuerus, Chenghiz Khan and Timur, are all heroes of similar empires. The history of the Moghul empire thus throws a light, not only upon the past condition of India, but upon all past time.

Moghuls dubi-
ous Mussul-
mans.

The Moghuls of modern times professed to be Mussulmans; their profession was only a thin varnish over old idolatries. They were lax, indifferent, and sceptical. Sometimes the varnish

disappeared altogether ; they inclined to Brahmanism, Buddhism, and Christianity. Consequently they introduced a new element into the collision between the Mussulmans and Hindús.

The Moghuls of historic times have three epochs in their history, three stages in their development. They may be distinguished as the Tartar, the Turk, and the Persian. They differed only in outward appearance. In each stage the Moghul nature remained the same.

The Tartars are barbarous nomades ; they have wandered over the vast steppes of northern Asia from an unknown antiquity. They have no settled habitations ; they dwell in huts which they carry about in carts. Their days are passed in moving to and fro between summer and winter pastures. They have gone on unchanging and unchanged from generation to generation. Their history is nearly as monotonous as their lives ; occasionally it has been disturbed by tempests. At intervals world-stormers¹ arose amongst them and formed them into armies. Hordes of Tartar horsemen were moved at will by some commanding genius. They ravaged and plundered the south and west like demons from another sphere. For a brief period they filled the world with the terror of their name ; they then broke up and disappeared. The formation of their empire was like the encampment of a vast army. For a while it was full of life and energy ; it threatened to conquer the world ; it arrayed itself in all the pomp and show of Asiatic sovereignty. It spent its force in feasting and harem license ; it passed

Three epochs in
Moghul history
—Tartar, Turk,
and Moghul.

Character of the
Tartars.

¹ The coining of this word is due to Mr Thomas Carlyle.

CHAPTER IV. away and was heard of no more. The history of Moghul conquests had no more significance for posterity than the eruptions of volcanoes. They desolated the world for awhile ; they then became extinct and void.²

Moghuls, a royal tribe of Tartars ; Chenghiz Khan.

The Moghuls were the ruling tribe among the Tartars. Chenghiz Khan, who flourished in the thirteenth century, was a type of the world-stormers of heroic times. He and his descendants assumed imperial magnificence ; they were all Tartars at heart. Instead of migrating from pasture to pasture, they made royal progresses throughout their immense empire from China to the Crimea, from the deserts of Siberia to the luxurious cities of Samarkand and Ispahan. Their camps were like cities. Streets were arranged in prescribed order ; every man knew where to pitch his tent, and where to find it. The royal pavilions resembled palaces. They were richly ornamented ; they were decorated with pictures of trees and animals. Every Khan had numerous wives ; every wife had tents and carts of her own.

Character of the Moghuls.

The Moghuls were ignorant and inquisitive, proud and overbearing. They would not work ; they would not serve in mean capacities. Their labourers and servants, male and female, were

² The political and social condition of the Moghuls is to be gathered from travellers rather than from historians. The review in the text is chiefly based upon the following authorities :—Carpini's Travels in 1246 ; Kerr's Collection, vol. i.; Rubruquis' Travels in 1253 ; *ibid.* vol. i.; Piskerton's Collection, vol. vii.; Marco Polo's Travels, edited by Colonel Yule, 2 vols. See also History of Chenghiz Khan by Petit de la Croix : London, 1722. History of the Tartars by Abul Ghazi Bahadur, 2 vols. 8vo : London, 1730. Price's History of the Mussulman empire in Asia, 4 vols. 4to : London, 1811—1820. Travels of Jesuits and others in Tartary, Mongolia, and China, printed in Astley's Collection, 4 vols. 4to : London, 1746.

captives taken in war. They left all household concerns to their wives, all manual labour to their slaves. Their pursuits were war and the chase. Their pleasures lay in feasting and banqueting. They drank wine, mead, and fermented mares' milk. They caroused with their wives, whilst their servants danced round them, or played on fiddles, or clapped their hands. They were frank in their manners, but suspicious and intriguing in their ways. The women were chaste and orderly. Adultery was regarded as a heinous crime; it was punished by death according to the laws of Chenghiz Khan.³

The religion of the Moghuls of the thirteenth century bore a significant resemblance to that of the Hindús. There was a primitive religion which was essentially Vedic. They presented food and wine to the four quarters of the earth in honour of fire, air, water, and ghosts. They set up domestic idols in their moveable houses; they propitiated them in like manner. They poured libations on the earth and also on the horse. They practised divination with burnt rams' horns. They had priests, like Bráhmans, who were skilled in astronomy, foretold eclipses, and cast nativities. They also had dirty saints, resembling Hindú Yogis, who performed miracles by virtue of their sanctity and penances. Amidst all the various idolatries there

Religion and civilization.

³ The first wife ruled supreme in every household. She could not prevent the husband from making a female slave his concubine: if offended she might sell the slave. Petit de la Croix tells a significant anecdote. A female slave was about to become a mother. The first wife, in the absence of the husband, sold the slave to a man who took her away to another country. When the husband returned he was very angry; he could not complain. These data are historical. In a future chapter it will be seen that the same instincts were at work in the harems of the Moghul emperors of Hindustan.

CHAPTER IV. was the same belief in one God as there is amongst the Hindús. Some of the ordinances of Brahmanism were disregarded, as indeed they were in ancient India. The Moghuls, like the Kshatriyas, were fond of flesh meat. They would eat the flesh of any animal, even if it had died a natural death.* Their idea of marriage was that of capture. Their wives were not shut up in zenanas; they appeared at feasts and receptions. Widows were not burnt alive. The son inherited all his father's women excepting his own mother. A brother took the widows of a deceased brother.⁴

Gravitations
towards Islam,
Christianity and
Buddhism.

The Moghuls retained their own religion; they were easily converted to any other. How far their conversion was real, must be left to conjecture. Nominally many were Mussulmans; others were

* The Moghul origin of the Hindú people is a point which the author hopes to treat in a separate work. Rubruquis' description of the Moghul priests is very suggestive; he seems to be describing Bráhmans. The passage is given at length:—"The soothsayers are their priests, and whatsoever they command to be done is performed without delay. They are many, and they have always one head or chief priest, who always places his house before the palace of the Grand Khan, within a stone's cast. Under his study are the chariots which bear their idols; the others are behind the court, in places appointed for them; and they who have any confidence in that art come to them from divers parts of the world. Some of them are skilful in astronomy, and especially the chief of them; and they foretell to them the eclipses of the sun and moon. And when they are to come to pass, all the people prepare them food, so that they need not go out of their houses; and when there is an eclipse they play upon their timbrels and organs, and make a great noise, and set up loud shouts. When the eclipse is past, they give themselves to feasting and drinking, and make great cheer. They foretell fortunate and unlucky days for all business. . . They are also invited when any child is born, to foretell its destiny." Rubruquis' Travels, chap. 52.

Marco Polo describes the astrologers as being able to work miracles, such as bringing storms or dispersing them. He says:—"They persuade the vulgar that these works are effected through the sanctity of their own lives and the merits of their penances; and presuming upon the reputation thus acquired they exhibit themselves in a filthy and indecent state." Marco Polo, Book i. chap. 57. The Hindú Yogis were thus nothing more than Moghul priests.

It might also be remarked that the Moghals were the ruling tribe amongst the Tartars. They thus bear a resemblance to the Royal Scythians described by Herodotus, as well as to the Kshatriyas or Rajpoots of India.

Christians; some were Buddhists. Even those who CHAPTER IV.
did not change their religion were ready to pay
worship to the four prophets—Jesus Christ, Muham-
mad, Moses, and Sakya Muni.⁵ Indeed it was one
of the laws of Chenghiz Khan that every priest ~~was~~
to be reverenced who taught the belief in one God.
The working of this law is to be traced in almost
every stage of Moghul history.⁶

The religious toleration of the Moghuls was not
the outcome of political genius or philosophic in-
difference. It was the natural result of Moghul
covetousness. The Moghuls were the most grasping
people under the sun. They lost nothing by
not asking. They worshipped any god; they im-
plored the help of any saint or prophet. The same
religious thought finds expression in the Vedic
hymns. The Vedic people worshipped a thousand
gods in turn; they prayed to one and all for the
material blessings of this life. They did not pray
for righteousness; they did not seek after right-
eousness; they did not pray in behalf of others.
So far the Vedic people resembled the Moghuls.
Whether this resemblance amounts to an identifica-
tion will be seen from the after history.

During the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries,
the Moghuls who settled in Central Asia affected to
be Turks. They married the women of the south.
Their descendants lost the yellow complexions, high
cheek-bones, flat noses, small eyes, and large
mouths of the old Moghuls. They became full-
faced, ruddy; and handsome, like the Turkish

Toleration
amongst the
Moghuls and
Vedic Aryans.

⁵ Marco Polo's Travels, Book II., chap. ii.

⁶ See the Yasao, or Laws of Chenghiz Khan. Petit de la Croix, Book i.
chap. 6.

CHAPTER IV. Sultans of Delhi. They were hedged around by Mussulmans; their wives were believers; consequently they became Mussulmans, or affected to be Mussulmans. It is doubtful whether they shut up their women in harems. Timúr, the invader of India in 1398-99, belonged to this type; in his day the women appeared with the men in the public festivals which were held in tented pavilions. Báber belonged to the same type; he was the sixth in descent from Timúr. It was Báber, and his son Humáyun, who laid the foundations of the Moghul empire in India in 1526—1556. Possibly it was not until after their conquest of Hindustan that the Moghuls secluded their women like the Mussulmans and Hindus by whom they were surrounded. Humáyun was half a Persian. His son Akber, who reigned between 1556 and 1605, was still more of a Persian. In both men the Moghul instincts were in full play. This point, however, will be brought out stronger in dealing with their history.

Timúr's invasion of India : Timúr no Mussulman.

The invasion of India by Timúr is an obscure episode in Indian history. He came, he plundered, he massacred; he then went away. He left officers to rule in his name, or rather to collect tribute in his name. He is said to have been a strict Mussulman of the Sunní religion; to all appearance he was not a Mussulman at all. No strict Mussulman would have made war upon a brother Mussulman. No strict Sunní would have attacked a brother Sunní. Timúr made war upon the Sultan of Delhi. The Sultan was a Sunní; he was maintaining the rule of Islam over idolaters. It is plain that Timúr was either no Mussulman, or only a Mussulman in name. He called himself a Sunní to

please the Turks and Afghans; he called himself a CHAPTER IV. Shíah to please the Persians. The embassy of Clavijo reveals the fact that Timúr ignored the Koran. He drank wine with lords and ladies, after the manner of Belshazzar. He feasted his court on roasted horseflesh, after the manner of the Híindú Rajas of the Mahá Bhárata, and Rámáyana. He entertained men of all religions. He sent embassies to Christian princes. He was a Mussulman for political purposes; had circumstances been different, he might have been a Christian or a Jew.⁷

The career of Báber is a romance. He was <sup>Birth of Báber,
1482.</sup> born in 1482. At the age of twelve he inherited the kingdom of Khokand to the north-east of Bokhara. Whilst still a youth he conquered Bokhara. About this time the Uzbeg Turks began to

⁷ See "Narrative of the Embassy of Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo to the court of Timúr, 1403-6; translated for the Hakluyt Society by Mr Clements Markham. London : 1859." The graphic pictures of court life among the Moghuls, which are presented by Clavijo, are of the same character as those presented by Rubruquis and Marco Polo. Clavijo's descriptions are more refined.

Manouchi the Venetian, who professed to compile Memoirs of the Moghul dynasty in India from an authentic Moghul chronicle, gives the following account of Timúr:—"The Tartars of the time of Timúr were in general disciples of Muhammad. He himself followed the religion of Chenghiz Khan, which had been preserved in the family of the Moghuls. He adored the eternal God, invisible, infinite and almighty, without distinction of nature or persons, one only in unity. He observed the law of nature, contained in eight precepts, which are nearly the same with those of the Decalogue. He condemned the reveries of the Koran; he was equally the enemy of idolaters and Mussulmans. To the law of Jesus Christ he had no aversion." See Father Catrou's History of the Moghul dynasty.

This account tallies with what might have been inferred from a consideration of the life and career of Timúr. The authenticity of Manouchi has been treated in the preface. There is a so-called Autobiography of Timúr. It has been translated by Major Stewart for the Oriental Translation Committee. It represents Timúr as an exemplary Mussulman. It was originally written in Turkish, and represented Timúr as a Sunní. Shah Jehan, the grandson of Akber, ordered it to be translated into Persian, and altered in accordance with Persian history and ideas. It reveals a trimming between the Sunní, the Shíah, and Súfi religion. It praises saints and holy men of each persuasion.

CHAPTER IV. play a part in Central Asia. They drove Bâber out of both kingdoms. He continued, however, to fight on against the Uzbegs. Sometimes he was storming a city or defending a stronghold. At other times he was an exile in the desert, broken down by wounds and privations. Naturally he was light-hearted and sentimental. He was fond of drinking bouts with gay companions ; he could weep over the memory of his old home and kinsfolk. At last he turned towards the south. He crossed the Oxus ; he founded a kingdom in Kâbul and Kandahar. There he reigned for some years. From the first he turned an eager eye towards the Punjab.⁸

Afghan rule in India.

Meanwhile the Punjab and Hindustan had become the prey of the Afghans. Ever since 1450 Afghan Sultans of the Lodi dynasty had been reigning at Delhi. Lawless Afghan chiefs had been spreading over northern India. They set up as independent princes. They held fortresses and exercised dominion, especially in the outlying provinces of Bihâr and Bengal. They levied tribute and black mail. They were often in revolt against the Lodi Sultan of Delhi ; they were often at war amongst themselves. They were turbulent, blood-thirsty, and treacherous. They bore a strong family likeness to their forefathers who rebelled against the house of David. They bore an equally strong likeness to their descendants, who are still rebelling and fighting in Herat and Kandahar.⁹

Antagonism between Moghul and Afghan.

The antagonism between Moghul and Afghan

* Bâber has written Memoirs of himself. They have been translated by Mr Erekine. See also Elliot's History of India, edited by Dowson, vol. iv. They are far more authentic than those of Timûr and Jehangîr.

⁹ Fersîha, translated by Briggs, vol. i.

is the key to the after history of India. The Mo- CHAPTER IV.
ghuls were only nominal Mussulmans ; those who
were Mussulmans were mostly Shíahs. They dis-
played all the characteristics of Shíahs. They were
ready to ally with Hindús when it served their
purpose ; they were equally as ready to make war
upon the Hindús when occasion arose. They were
not bound together by hereditary ties ; they were
held together solely by military command.¹⁰

The Afghans were staunch Mussulmans and Afghans
staunch Sunnis. Sunnis. They were a debauched race ; otherwise
they had all the characteristics of Sunnis. They
were bigoted in their religion ; they were bitterly
hostile to Hindús and Brahmanism.¹¹ They were
distributed in families and clans ; they were divided
and distracted by hereditary feuds ;¹² they were
often open to the assault of an invader.

In 1525 an Afghan Sultan, named Ibrahim Lodi, was reigning at Delhi. The Afghan empire in India was disaffected. The Afghan governor of the Punjab invited Báber to invade the country. The Rája of Chítór sent messengers to Kábúl promising to attack Agra if Báber would attack Delhi. Báber obeyed the call. In the cold season of 1525-26 he

Báber defeats
the Afghan
Sultan, 1525-26.

¹⁰ This point will be explained hereafter, in dealing with the constitution of the Moghul empire in the reign of Akber.

¹¹ It has been stated that the history of the Lodi Sultans throws no light upon the collision between Mussulmans and Hindús. (See *ante*, page 76, note.) It should have been added that it illustrates the bitterness of the antagonism between Afghans and Hindús. Under their rule temples were broken down and mosques built in their room as in the days of Mahmúd of Ghazní. One Brahman was put to death by Sikandar Lodi Afghan for maintaining that the religions of Mussulmans and Hindús were equally acceptable to God. See *Ferishta*, vol. i., Briggs's translation.

¹² The revenge of an Afghan is a proverb in India. No man is said to be safe from the revenge of an elephant, a cobra, or an Afghan. See *Ferishta*, translated by Briggs, vol. i. page 647, note.

CHAPTER IV. crossed the Indus ; he invaded the Punjab with ten thousand men. Ibrahim Lodi heard of his coming ; he marched against Báber with a hundred thousand men. Báber watched his every movement ; he soon saw that he had little to fear. 'The Afghan had no strategy, no plan, no foresight. Báber, on the contrary, was a veteran soldier, trained from his boyhood in fighting against the Uzbegs.' Accordingly Báber gained the victory ; Ibrahim Lodi was slain.¹³

Moghul occupation of Delhi :
advance to Agra.

Báber at once occupied Delhi ; he then pushed on for Agra. As he advanced the Hindús fled from the villages ; he fell short of supplies. His soldiers became dispirited with the heat ; they wanted to return to Kábul. At this crisis he found the whole Rajpoot army arrayed against him.

Rajpoots oppose
Báber.

The Rana of Chítór had played a waiting game after Asiatic fashion. He had promised to co-operate with Báber ; he never meant to do so. He wanted Báber to crush the Afghans. He expected Báber to plunder Delhi, and return to his own country, as Timúr had done. He then hoped to restore the Rajpoot dominion in Hindustan. He was baffled by the Moghul advance to Agra ; he was aggrieved, and went out to fight Báber.

Moghul defeat
of the Rana of
Chítór.

Báber roused the spirit of his soldiers. 'He appealed to Moghul pride. He exhorted them to risk their lives for the sake of glory. He broke up his drinking-vessels on the field ; he swore that henceforth he would never taste wine.'¹⁴ The battle

¹³ Elliot's History of India, vol. iv. ; Ferishta, vol. ii. ; Báber's Autobiography translated by Erskine. The history of the reign of Báber is based on these authorities.

¹⁴ Báber relates this story in his Autobiography. It is open to question. Men who had been fighting against Afghan Sunnis were not likely to feel much zeal because Báber promised to leave off wine.

was fought at Sikri, a few miles from Agra. Bábér CHAPTER IV.
gained the day. The Rajpoots were utterly routed ;
henceforth they gave him no more trouble.

Bábér had played his part like a Moghul. He ^{Policy of Bábér.} made war against Mussulmans and Sunnis. He confederated with the idolatrous Rana against Mussulmans. If ever he professed to be a Sunní, it was only to ingratiate himself with the Afghans.

Bábér only reigned four years. He was chiefly ^{Death of Bábér.} 1530. occupied in rooting the Afghans out of their strongholds. He died in 1530.

Bábér was succeeded by his son Humáyun.¹⁵ ^{Humáyun's reign : his Moghul proclivities.} The new Padishah had neither energy nor genius.¹⁶ He offended all good Mussulmans by hankering after the religion of his Moghul ancestors. He divided his household affairs according to the four elements of fire, air, water, and earth. He built a pavilion with seven apartments of different colours to represent the sun, moon, and planets ; he sat each day in a different apartment ; he transacted business or took his pleasure according to the reigning luminary. The events of Humáyun's reign are obscure. He interfered in Rajpoot affairs. He made war on Guzerat. It is difficult to discover that he followed any definite policy. On the contrary, he was vain and foolish ; he allowed an Afghan, named Sher Khan, to trick him out of his kingdom.

The story is a striking illustration of Asiatic ^{Humáyun out-}

¹⁵ The reign of Humáyun is based on the same authorities as that of Bábér. Humáyun has written his own Memoirs. They teach little respecting the man himself.

¹⁶ Europeans gave to each Moghul sovereign the title of emperor. The Moghuls called their sovereign Padishah. "Pad" signifies stability and possession ; "Shah" means origin or lord. See Abul Fazl's preface to the *Ain-i-Akbari*, translated by Mr Blockmann. Frequent reference will be made to this invaluable work in dealing with Moghul history.

CHAPTER IV. cleverness. Sher Khan held the fortress of Chunar, ^{written by Sher Khan the Afghan.} one of the strongest positions in Hindustan. It overhangs the Ganges ; it commands the highway from the north-west into Bengal. Humáyun might have dislodged him, but Sher Khan was all submission. He was very respectful to Humáyun. He wished to hold the fortress, but only in the name of Humáyun. He sent his son with a troop of horse to fight in the Moghul army. Humáyun was flattered and gulled. He left Chunar in the hands of the Afghan ; he went away westward to reduce the Sultan of Guzerat.

Defeat and exile of Humáyun. When Humáyun returned from Guzerat, Sher Khan was master of all Bengal excepting Gour. Sher Khan was, in fact, at that very moment besieging Gour. Humáyun was not aware that Gour was in jeopardy ; he knew enough to resolve on marching towards Bengal. At the first onset he found that the road was blocked up by the fortress of Chunar. Six months passed away before he could capture Chunar. After leaving Chunar he met a second block ; the defile between the Ganges and Rajmahal hills was closed by Afghans.¹⁷ Suddenly the Afghans disappeared. The road was clear ; Humáyun pushed on to Gour. There he saw that he had been outwitted. Sher Khan had kept the Moghul army out of Bengal just long enough to suit his own purposes. He had plundered Gour ; he had carried the booty to a safe place. Above all, he had hindered the advance of Humáyun until the beginning of the rains. On entering Bengal the Moghuls were doomed to destruction.

¹⁷ Railway travellers will remember this defile. Its eastern end begins after leaving the station at Sahibgunj.

The country was under water. Numbers died of CHAPTER IV. fever and dysentery brought on by the steamy atmosphere. When the rains were over Humáyun tried to cut his way back to Agra. The Afghans, fell upon him; they drove the remains of his army into the Ganges. Humáyun escaped to Agra; he had lost his army. He was driven into exile; he left Sher Khan in possession of Hindustan and the Punjab.

The further adventures of Humáyun are mere ^{Escape to Persia.} personal details. He found no refuge in India. He toiled painfully through the desert of Scinde. He suffered agonies from thirst and heat. At this juncture one of his wives gave birth to the celebrated Akber. At last he reached Persia and was entertained at court; he affected to become a Shíah. In this manner Humáyun passed fifteen years. in exile.

Meantime Sher Khan had founded a dynasty; ^{Character of Sher Khan.} it lasted fifteen years. Its history throws no light upon political or religious development. Sher Khan has been much belauded by Mussulman historians. According to them he built numerous caravanserais; he dug fifteen hundred wells between the Ganges and the Indus; he erected mosques on the highways; he planted fruit-trees on the highways; he introduced a fixed and universal standard of weights and measures. Most of this may be dismissed as oriental hyperbole.¹⁸ Sher Khan

¹⁸ The history of the reign of Sher Khan was composed by Abbas Khan. It was written many years after the death of Sher Khan by the order of the Emperor Akber. Abbas Khan was related by marriage to the family of Sher Khan. He wrote at a time when there was a deadly struggle between Afghans and Moghuls, between Sunnis and Shíahs. Abbas Khan was thus impelled by the pride of kinship, by Sunní prejudice, by Afghan proclivities, by every instinct in

CHAPTER IV. was an Afghan freebooter ; he had seized an empire ; he only reigned five years ; he was constantly at war with the Rajpoots. It is monstrous to suppose that such a man would have had the time or inclination to dig wells, to plant fruit-trees, to build mosques and caravanserais. He did one thing which reveals his real character. A Rajpoot garrison had surrendered on condition of marching out with their arms and property. Sher Khan broke faith and slaughtered every man. It is obvious that he was as treacherous and bloodthirsty as the ordinary run of Afghans.¹⁹

Humáyun re-covers his kingdom.

Sher Khan died on the throne ; he was succeeded in turn by a son and a grandson. The grandson was murdered by an uncle who usurped the throne. The usurper had a Hindú favourite named Hemu.

man's nature which makes a party writer, to belaud Sher Khan as a model sovereign. The history written by Abbas Khan sufficiently reveals the fact that a horrible anarchy prevailed throughout Hindustan ; that Sher Khan kept down robbery and rebellion by sheer terrorism. Abbas Khan's history was translated by Mr E. C. Bayley. It is printed in Elliot's History of India, vol. iv. Professor Dowson adds that Abbas Khan fell into disgrace with Akber. No wonder. Akber was not likely to favour the historian who praised the enemy of Humáyun.

¹⁹ There is a conflict between experience and evidence in dealing with the reign of Sher Khan. Experience teaches that an Afghan like Sher Khan could not have been the beneficent sovereign he is described. The fact is that Muslim history from the beginning of the Shíah revolt grows more and more untrustworthy. Sultans are praised and blamed, not according to their merits or demerits, but according to whether they were Shíahs or Sunnis. Striking instances of the strength of this party-feeling will be found hereafter in dealing with the reign of Shah Jehan and Aurungzeb.

The conflict between experience and evidence disappears in dealing with the later history. The experience is supported by European evidence. The European evidence proves that so-called oriental historians were shameless flatterers. The most wicked and contemptible princes have been praised by party writers as the greatest of kings.

It is strange that Ferishta, who was a Shíah, should have repeated the praises that had been bestowed on Sher Khan. Ferishta, however, was an honest man ; he tried to be impartial ; he generally is impartial. In dealing with Sher Khan he was probably misled by Abbas Khan.

He made Hemu his minister, He advanced Hindús CHAPTER IV.
to rank and power to the prejudice of the Afghans ;
his proceedings drove the nobles into rebellion.²⁰ At
this crisis Humáyun suddenly returned to India :/
he took possession of Delhi and Agra. He began
the old work of restoring order. Within six months
he was killed at Delhi by a fall from the parapet of
his palace.²¹

Báber and Humáyun were types of the transition period between the Moghul Turk and the Moghul Persian. Both were lax Mussulmans. In both religion was little better than lip-service. Humáyun was a professed Shíah. After his return from Persia nothing is said of his Moghul fancies. Probably he became a better Mussulman.

Báber and Hu-máyun types of a transition period.

Akber, the son and successor of Humáyun, ^{Akber a Persian type.} may be described as the first Moghul sovereign of the Persian epoch. Before attempting to delineate his character it will be necessary to glance at the leading events of the first twenty years of his reign.

Akber, the contemporary of Queen Elizabeth, ascended the throne in 1556. He was only a boy of fourteen ; he was away in the Punjab fighting against the Afghans. A general of capacity, named Bairam Khan, was commanding the armies in the Punjab. When Humáyun died, Bairam Khan became guardian of Akber.

Akber Padi-shah : regency of Bairam Khan, 1556.

The reign of Akber is one of the most important in the history of India ; it is one of the most important in the history of the world. It bears a strange

Importance of the reign.

²⁰ Hemu belonged to the same type as Malik Mafúr and Khuzru Khan.

²¹ The history involves a curious coincidence. The Moghuls reigned fifteen years and were succeeded by Afghans. The Afghans reigned fifteen years and were succeeded by Moghuls.

CHAPTER IV. resemblance to that of Asoka. Indeed the likeness between Akber and Asoka is one of the most remarkable phenomena in history. They were separated from each other by an interval of eighteen centuries; the main features of their respective lives were practically the same.

Resemblance
between Asoka
and Akber.

Asoka was putting down revolt in the Punjab when his father died; so was Akber. Asoka was occupied for years in conquering and consolidating his empire; so was Akber. Asoka conquered all India to the north of the Nerbudda; so did Akber. Asoka was tolerant of other religions; so was Akber. Asoka went against the priests; so did Akber. Asoka taught a religion of his own; so did Akber. Asoka abstained from flesh meat; so did Akber. In the end Asoka took refuge in Buddha, the law, and the assembly. In the end Akber recited the formula of Islam:—There is but one God, and Muhammad is his prophet.²²

Similarity in re-
ligious develop-
ment.

Some of these coincidents are mere accidents. Others reveal a similarity in the current of religious thought, a similarity in the stages of religious development; consequently they add a new chapter to the history of mankind.²³

War against
Hemu.

The wars of Akber are only interesting so far as they bring out types of character. When the news reached the Punjab that Húmáyun was dead, other news arrived. Hemu had recovered Agra and Delhi; he was advancing with a large army

²² Compare *ante*, vol. iii. chap. 5.

²³ It will be seen in the course of the after history that the Moghul emperors lived in the same fashion as the ancient Hindú Rajas of the type of Sandrokottos. They kept up large harems. They were often in camp with their armies. They went out on great hunting expeditions. They were guarded within the harem by a corps of Tartar women.

into the Punjab. The Moghul force was very small. CHAPTER IV.
 The Moghul officers were in a panic ; they advised
 a retreat into Kábul. Akber and Bairam Khan
 resolved on a battle. The Afghans were routed.
 The Hindú general was wounded in the eye and
 taken prisoner. Bairam Khan bade Akber slay
 the Hindú, and win the title of "Champion of
 the faith." Akber drew his sword, but shrunk back.
 He was brave as a lion ; he would not hack ^a
 wounded prisoner. Bairam Khan had no such sen-
 timent. He beheaded Hemu with his own sword.²⁴

This story marks the contrast between the prince
 and his guardian. Akber was brave and skilful in
 the field ; he was outwardly gracious and forgiving
 when the fight was over. Bairam Khan was loyal
 to the throne ; he slaughtered enemies in cold blood
 without mercy. It was impossible that the two
 should agree. Akber grew more and more impatient
 of his guardian ; for years he was as self-constrained
 as Ráma. He thought a great deal but did nothing ;
 he bided his time.

Contrast be-
tween Akber
and Bairam
Khan.

Within four years Bairam Khan had laid the <sup>Foundation of
the Moghul
empire.</sup> foundations of the Moghul empire. Its limits were
 as yet restricted. The Moghul pale only covered the
 Punjab, the North-west provinces, and Oude ; it only
 extended from the Indus to the junction of the
 Jumna and Ganges. On the south it was bounded
 by Rajpootana. It included the three capitals of
 Lahore, Delhi, and Agra. So far it coincided with
 the kingdom of Alá-ud-dín, who conquered the
 Dekhan and Peninsula.

²⁴ The principal authorities for the life of Akber are Ferishta, vol. ii. ; the Akber-náma of Abul Fazl, Elliot's History, vol. vi. ; the Ain-i-Akbari by Abul Fazl, translated by Blockmann. See also Catrou's History of the Moghul dynasty, based on the memoirs drawn by Manouchi from the Moghul chronicles.

CHAPTER IV.

Removal and
death of Bairam
Khan.

At the end of the four years Akber was a young man of eighteen. He resolved to throw off the authority of his guardian. He carried out his designs with the artifice of an Asiatic. He pretended that his mother was sick. He left the camp where Bairam Khan commanded in order to pay her a visit. He proclaimed that he had assumed the authority of Padishah; that no orders were to be obeyed save his own. Bairam Khan was taken by surprise. Possibly, had he known what was coming, he would have put Akber out of the way; but his power was gone. He tried to work upon the feelings of Akber; he found that the Padishah was inflexible. He revolted, but was defeated and forgiven. Akber offered him any post save that of minister; he would be minister or nothing. In the end he elected to go to Mecca, the last refuge for Mussulman statesmen. Everything was ready for his embarkation; suddenly he was assassinated by an Afghan. It was the old story of Afghan revenge. He had killed the father of the assassin in some battle; in revenge the son had stabbed him to death.

Hostility of
Afghans; dis-
affection of Mo-
ghuls.

Akber was now free to act. The political situation was one of extreme peril. The Afghans were fighting one another in Kábul in the north-west; they were also fighting one another in Bihár and Bengal in the south-east. When he marched against one, his territories were exposed to the raids of the other. Meantime his Moghul officers often set his sovereignty at defiance; when brought to task they broke out in mutiny and rebellion. Two events at this period will show the actual state of affairs.

Far away to the south of Rajpootana lies the re-

môte territory of Malwa. It was originally conquered CHAPTER IV. by Alá-ud-dín. During the decline of the Tugh-laks the governor of Malwa became an independent ruler. At the beginning of the reign of Akber, Baz Bahadur was ruler of Malwa. He was a type of the Mussulman princes of the time ; no doubt he went to mosque ; he surrounded himself with Hindú singing and dancing-girls ; he became more or less Hinduised. Akber sent an officer named Adham Khan to conquer Malwa. Adham Khan had no difficulty. Baz Bahadur abandoned his treasures and harem and fled. Adham Khan distributed part of the spoil among his soldiers ; he kept the treasures and harem for himself ; he sent only a few elephants to the Padishah.²⁵ Akber could not brook such disobedience. Notwithstanding the distance he hurried to Malwa. He received his rightful share of the plunder ; he professed to accept the excuses of the defaulter. When he returned to Agra he recalled Adham Khan to court ; he sent another governor to Malwa. Adham Khan obeyed ; he went to Agra ; he found that he had lost favour. Commands were given to others ; he could get nothing. He was driven mad by delay and disappointment. He did not suspect Akber ; he threw the blame upon the minister. One day he went to the palace ; he stabbed the minister to death in the hall of audience ; he ran up to an outer terrace. Akber heard the uproar ; he rushed in and beheld the bleeding corpse. He saw the stupefied murderer on the terrace ; he half drew his sword, but remem-

²⁵ The Mussulmans generally respected the harems of their fellow-Mussulmans. They had no scruples as regards Hindú women. The favourite mistress of Baz Bahadur is said to have poisoned herself rather than yield to the advances of Adham Khan.

CHAPTER IV bered himself. Adham Khan seized his hands and begged for mercy. Akber shook him off and ordered the servants to throw him from the terrace. The order was obeyed ; Adham Khan was killed on the spot.

Affairs in Bihár
and Oude.

Another officer, named Khan Zemán, played a similar game in Bihár. He was warned that Akber was on the move ; he escaped punishment by making over the spoil before Akber came up. This satisfied Akber ; he returned part of the spoil and went back to Agra. Henceforth Khan Zemán was a rebel at heart. Some Uzbeg chiefs revolted in Oude ; they were joined by Khan Zemán. Akber was called away to the Punjab by an Afghan invasion ; on his return the rebels were in possession of Oude and Allahabad. Akber marched against them in the middle of the rains. He outstripped his army ; he reached the Ganges with only his body-guard. The rebels were encamped on the opposite bank ; they had no fear ; they expected Akber to wait until his army came up. That night Akber swam the river with his body-guard. At day-break he attacked the enemy. The rebels heard the thunder of the imperial kettle-drums ; they could not believe their ears. They fled in all directions. Khan Zemán was slain in the pursuit. The other leaders were taken prisoners ; they were trampled to death by elephants. Thus for awhile the rebellion was stamped out.

Decay of Islam.

These incidents are only types of others. In plain truth, the Mussulman power in India had spent its force. The brotherhood of Islam had ceased to bind together conflicting races ; it could not hold together men of the same race. The struggle be-

tween Shíah and Sunní was dividing the world of CHAPTER IV. Islam. Moghuls, Turks, and Afghans were fighting against each other; they were also fighting amongst themselves. Rebels of different races were combining against the Padishah. Meantime any scruples that remained against fighting fellow-Mussulmans were a hindrance to Akber in putting down revolts. The Mussulman power was crumbling to pieces. The dismemberment had begun two centuries earlier in the revolt of the Dekhan. Since then the strength which remained in the scattered fragments was wasted in wars and revolts; the whole country was drifting into anarchy.

No one could save the empire but a born statesman. Akber had already proved himself a born soldier. Had he been only a soldier he might still have held his own against Afghans and Uzbegs from Peshawar to Allahabad. Had he been blood-thirsty and merciless, like Bairam Khan, he might have stamped out revolt and mutiny by massacre and terrorism. But he would have left no mark in history, no lessons for posterity, no political ideas for the education of the world. He might have made a name like Chenghiz Khan or Timúr; but the story of his life would have dropped into oblivion. After his death every evil that festered in the body politic would have broken out afresh. His successors would have inherited the same wars, the same revolts, and the same mutinies; unless they had inherited his capacity, they would have died out in anarchy and revolution.

Akber had never been educated! He had never learnt to write, nor even to read. He had not gone with his father to Persia, where he might have been New force wanted to overawe Afghans.

CHAPTER IV. schooled in Mussulman learning. He had spent a joyless boyhood with a cruel uncle in Kábul ; he had been schooled in nothing but war. But he had listened to histories, and pondered over histories, until grand ideas began to seethe in his brain. The problem before him was the resuscitation of the empire ; or rather the creation of a new empire out of the existing chaos. Fresh blood was wanted to infuse life and strength into the body politic ; to enable the Moghul Shíahs to subdue the Afghan Sunnís. Akber saw with the eye of genius that the necessary force was latent in the Rajpoots. Henceforth he devoted all the energies of his nature to bring that force into healthy play.

Latent force of
Rajpoots.

It is easy to realize the train of ideas which ran through the mind of Akber. The princes of Rajpootana, the children of the sun and moon, had been the ancient sovereigns of India. They had been conquered by the Mussulmans ; they had never become a subject people ; they still retained their independence. Akber sought to conquer them ; not to drive them from their thrones ; not to take possession of their territories ; but to weld them into the body politic. He looked to this Rajpoot element to counterbalance the Afghan element ; to overcome Moghul disaffection. He thought to blend the Rajpoot with the Mussulman ; to mould them into one imperial system. The idea was generous ; it was utterly impracticable. Akber ignored all distinctions of race and religion. He sought to amalgamate Rajpoots and Mussulmans into one empire. His successes and his errors are lessons for all time.

The story of Akber's wars in Rajpootana is of

small moment. It illustrates the bravery, the delirium, the self-sacrifice of the Rajpoots ; the superiority of Mussulmans ; the geni^s and audacity of Akber himself. It throws no light upon Mussulman developments. The entire interest of the story centres in his policy. His object was to induce the three leading princes of Rajpootana—Jaipúr, Jodhpúr and Chitór—to pay him homage and give him each a daughter in marriage. The Rajpoot ^{Akber's Rajpoot marriages.} princes revolted at the demand ; it was repugnant to all their ideas of religion, caste, and royalty. Akber was inexorable. He insisted upon having a Rajpoot element in the dynasty as well as in the empire. He saw that the Rajpoot league had endured for twenty centuries by reason of its intermarriages ; that every feudatory prince was bound to his lord paramount, the Rana of Chitór, by the pride of giving him a daughter in marriage, and of receiving a daughter in marriage. By a union with the daughters of the princes of Rajpootana Akber would break up the Rajpoot league. Nothing is said of his giving daughters in return.²⁶

The Raja of Jaipúr was the first to yield. The Raja of Bikanír followed. In return they were received with high honours at the court of Akber; they were enrolled amongst the nobles of his empire. The Raja of Jodhpúr submitted after a

²⁶ Father Catrou distinctly states that it was part of the policy of Akber to give Moghul princesses in marriages to Hindú Rajas. This was possibly the case; the fact, however, would be ignored by Mussulman historians. There is a Hindú tradition of a Sultan of Delhi giving a daughter to a Raja of Karnata; it has in like manner been ignored by Mussulman historians. Father Catrou's history is based on the Memoirs of Manouchi the Venetian; Manouchi professes to draw his memoirs from the chronicles of the Moghul court. The existence of contemporary chronicles is undeniable. They were ultimately abolished by Aurungzeb.

CHAPTER IV. severe struggle; he was well rewarded for the sacrifice. He was placed at the right hand of the Padishah; he received large additions to his dominion. Many chiefs of Rajpootana paid their homage to Akber. The Rana of Chitór never gave in. He became an exile and outlaw rather than pay homage to another sovereign, or give a daughter in marriage to the Moghul.²⁷

Bitterness of
Mussulmans at
the Rajpoot
marriages.

. . . Akber is said to have been much attached to his Hindú wives. With the easy indifference of a Moghul, he entertained Bráhmans on their account; he joined in their worship and sacrifices. But the Rajpoot marriages were regarded with bitter feelings by the Mussulmans. This fact is not stated in history; it is only to be inferred from history. No one dared to blame the Padishah; but the names of Akber's brides are never mentioned by Mussulman historians.²⁸

²⁷ The question of marriages in connection with state alliances opens up a curious inquiry. In primitive times men fought for women; the woman became the prize of the conqueror. Out of this usage grew up a law of war that the wife or daughter of the conquered became the prize of the conqueror. Later on political alliances were cemented by intermarriages. Polygamy led to further developments; a conqueror gloried in filling his harem with the daughters of the conquered. Caste ideas led the conquered to regard the sacrifice with horror. Amasis, king of Egypt, shrank from sending his daughter to Cambyses. The Arab Khalif of Bagdad refused to give his daughter to Toghrul Beg, the Seljuk Turk. The Emperor of China suffered all the unutterable horrors of a protracted siege rather than give his daughter to Chenghiz Khan. In like manner the Rajpoots were accustomed to slaughter their wives and daughters to preserve them from profanation. In the days of Akber they must have been coaxed and bribed into submission. To this day the Rajpoot marriages of Akber are a mystery.

²⁸ Jehangir, the son and successor of Akber, was evidently born of a Rajpoot princess. He has written his own autobiography; he never once mentions his mother by name, or even alludes to her. This is all the more remarkable as he mentions the names of the different mothers of all his brothers and sisters. Moreover, he names the mothers of his own sons and daughters, Rajpoot as well as Mussulmani. The mother of his eldest son Khuzru was a princess of Jaipúr. The mother of Shah Jehan and Shahryár was a princess of Jodhpúr. Possibly the bitterness of the marriages had not died out in his reign. He may have still felt sore about his own birth; he regarded that of his children with complacency.

The policy of Akber proved partly successful. CHAPTER IV.
 The empire was saved from destruction ; it entered ^{Political antagonisms.} upon a new life. The Padishah began to put down disaffection and mutiny. The Rajpoots overawed Moghuls and Afghans. There were revolts, wars for the succession, and troubles of various kinds ; but the Moghul empire was built up on lasting foundations. For more than a century and a half its prestige was unquestionable. Elements of dismemberment were at work. There were antagonisms between Moghul Shias and Afghan Sunnis ; between Afghans and Rajpoots ; between Mussulmans and Hindús. Still the empire held together. How it held together is the problem to be solved. How it fell to pieces is the lesson to be borne in mind.

This measure of success was not due to the Rajpoot marriages. Indeed, it will be seen hereafter, that much evil was wrought by these marriages. It was due entirely to the military policy of Akber. He admitted the Rajpoot princes to a share in the glory and honour of the imperial army. He gave them what they wanted, and the only thing they wanted—military command. The aspirations of the Rajpoot princes harmonized with the Moghul constitution. The Moghuls had no hereditary nobility outside the royal family. The Padishah was the sole fountain of honour, and the fountain of all honour. He gave rank at will ; all rank was military rank. He gave titles at will ; every title was associated with the idea of loyalty. The emoluments took the form of military pay. Every grandee was appointed to command a certain number of horse. He maintained about a third of the number;

<sup>Success of
Akber's military
policy.</sup>

CHAPTER IV. he drew pay for the whole.²⁹ Rank and title might be given in a moment; in a moment they might be taken away.³⁰

Elements of antagonism.

Moghul aristocracy : not hereditary.

The political working of this policy will appear hereafter. For the present it will suffice to realize the elements that were in antagonism.

The Moghul nobility in India was an aristocracy of white-complexioned foreigners. They had nothing that was hereditary. All foreigners with a fair complexion were termed Moghuls. They might be Persians, Turks, or Arabs; still they were termed Moghuls. The Padishah took his nobles from this

²⁹ After the death of Akber there was a much greater disparity between the pay of the rank and the number of horse actually maintained. Both were fixed by the Padishah; the disparity was greater in some than in others. Bernier mentions a grandee who ranked as commander of five thousand horse and only maintained five hundred.

³⁰ The working of the military administration will appear in the progress of the history. It will be seen that the Moghul army was weak and loose in its organization; it was of some political value in holding the empire together. Prince Selim, the eldest son of Akber, was commander of ten thousand horse; Murad, the second son, was commander of eight thousand. Danyil, the third son, was commander of seven thousand. No one, excepting a son of the Padishah, held a higher rank than commander of five thousand. The son of Prince Selim, the crown prince, only held the rank of five thousand. There were twenty-one grades, beginning with five thousand and ending in two hundred. All these are enumerated in the Ain-i-Akbari; Mr Blockmann has furnished the names and biography of every individual in these grades. Altogether there were four hundred and fifteen Amirs and Mansubdars in the above grades. There were also nearly fourteen hundred officers of lower rank, who are not named. Bernier had a low opinion of the Moghul grandees.

Mr Blockmann includes Amirs and Mansubdars in the same list. But there was a marked difference between the two ranks. Bernier, in his letter to Colbert, states that no Mansubdar received less than a hundred and fifty rupees a month, or more than seven hundred. It may be inferred from this statement that all military officers drawing higher pay belonged to the rank of Amirs.

Mr Blockmann remarks that the list of Amirs and Mansubdars discloses two important facts. First, that there were very few Hindustani Mussulmans in the higher ranks; most of the officers being foreigners, especially Persians and Afghans. Secondly, that there was a fair sprinkling of Hindus,—namely, fifty-one Hindus among the four hundred and fifteen Mansubdars. Mr Blockmann does not state the reason why there were so few Hindustani Mussulmans in the higher ranks; it was because such men soon lost their white complexion.

class; they were ranked according to their commands.³¹ The highest class comprised the Amírs; they might be regarded as the nobles properly so called, the grandees of the empire; they might be made governors, viceroys, or ministers. A second class was known as Mansubdars; a third class was known as Ahadis. Mansubdars and Ahadis were military officers.³²

It was impossible for such an aristocracy to be hereditary. As a matter of fact it was less hereditary than the civil and military services of the British empire. In the third generation the complexion became brown. The grandsons of the greatest Amírs were thus ineligible for command; they often served in the ranks as common soldiers.

Every noble and officer of the Moghuls, from the lowest Ahadi to the highest Amír, was entirely dependent upon the Padishah. Their lives and goods were at his disposal. They were his slaves. They could not possess land; all the land was the property of the Padishah. They could not leave their property to their wives and families; the Padishah inherited the property of all his nobles.

³¹ The term Moghul was popularly applied to all foreign Mussulmans with fair complexions. Neither religion nor race was regarded by Akber and his immediate successors. A fair complexion was the main point. It will be seen hereafter that a Christian or an Englishman might take rank amongst the Moghul officers.

³² There is reason to believe that India had been governed by fair-complexioned foreigners from the remotest antiquity. The Vedic conquerors of India were fair. Indra was the protector of the white-skinned Aryans against the black-skinned aborigines. Rajpoots and Bráhmans were a fair or golden-complexioned people; they affected to be descended from the sun. In time they became darker; the tradition of their origin still remained. Rajpoots and Bráhmans maintained their rule by the rigour of the caste system; the force of deeply-rooted superstition; the authority of endless genealogies. But the white-complexioned Mussulmans soon overthrew the suzerainty of Hindú Rajas. The Rajpoots alone maintained a desperate struggle in their mountain fastnesses. The Turk, the Afghan, and the Moghul were in turn the sovereigns of India.

CHAPTER IV. and officers. If the dead man had rendered good service to the Padishah whilst he was alive, a small pension might be given to his family, or a small post might be given to his eldest son. Otherwise the family was reduced to beggary.³³

Rajpoot aristocracy : hereditary and feudal.

The Rajpoot system was radically different from the Moghul system. With the Rajpoots nothing was personal ; everything was hereditary. Every Rajpoot held his lands in return for military service. All commands were hereditary. The vassal served his lord ; the lord served his Raja ; the Raja served his suzerain. Akber did not interfere with this system ; he only became suzerain in the place of the Rana of Chitór. Many Rajpoot princes held out ; but Akber's offers were very tempting. He left the Rajas in full possession of their dominions and revenues. He took the Rajas and their armies into his own pay. He raised the Rajas to the rank of Amírs ; he gave them the pay he gave to Amírs. In return they were at his beck and call ; they paid him homage ; they made him presents. Some attended at court ; others served in the provinces.

Amalgamation
of Moghul and
Rajpoot impos-
sible.

There were thus two rival armies in the state, the Moghul and the Rajpoot. The Moghul army was composed of mercenaries ; the officers were as mercenary as the men. The Rajpoot army was composed of feudal vassals ; men who had obeyed their lords from generation to generation. It was impossible that the two should amalgamate. Their

³³ The origin of the Moghul system of a white-complexioned nobility is a problem. Possibly it may be referred to a remote period in Moghul history. The Moghuls were a royal tribe. Depriving the nobility of all hereditary rights is another problem. Manouchi says that Bâber was the founder of the system ; but Bâber never had the power to carry it out. Possibly it was founded by Akber with the help of the Rajpoot princes.

natures were different ; their instincts were different. That Akber made every effort to amalgamate the two cannot be doubted. The Rajpoots were flattered ; the Moghuls became Hinduized. Within three or four generations the Moghuls became absorbed in the native population. The collision between Moghul and Rajpoot, and the working of the Afghan element, are the main points of interest in the history of the Moghul empire.

In 1575 Akber was about thirty-four years of age. Twenty years had passed away since the boy had been installed as Padishah. He had not as yet conquered Kábul in the north-west, nor Bengal in the south-east ; he had not made any sensible advance into the Dekhan. But he had gained a succession of victories. He had restored order in the Punjab and Hindustan. He had subdued Malwa, Guzerat, and Rajpootana. Many Rajpoots were still in arms against him ; he had nothing to fear from them. He had fixed his capital at Agra ; his favourite residence, however, was at Fathpúr Sikri, about twelve miles from Agra.³⁴

It is easy to individualize Akber. He was haughty, like all the Moghuls ; he was outwardly clement and affable. He was tall and handsome ; broad in the chest, and long in the arms. His complexion was ruddy, a nut-brown. He had a good appetite and a good digestion. His strength was prodigious. His courage very remarkable. Whilst yet a boy he displayed prodigies of valour in the battle against Hemu. He would spring on the backs

³⁴ The distance between Fathpúr and Agra was not of much consequence. The interval was filled up by a bazar. It was also very easy to go by boat from one place to another.

CHAPTER IV.
Political aspect
of the empire,
1575.

Personal char-
acteristics of
Akber.

CHAPTER IV. of elephants, who had killed their keepers ; he would compel them to do his bidding. He kept a herd of dromedaries ; he gained his victories by the rapidity of his marches. He was an admirable marksman. He had a favourite gun which had brought down thousands of game. With that same gun he shot Jeimal the Rajpoot at the siege of Chitór.³⁵

Religion of
Akber; a lax
Mussulman.

Akber, like his father and grandfather, professed to be a Mussulman. His mother was a Persian ; he was a Persian in his thoughts and ways. He was imbued with the old Moghul instinct of toleration. He was lax and indifferent, without the semblance of zeal. He consulted soothsayers who divined with burnt rams' bones. He celebrated the Persian festival of the Nau-roz, or new year, which has no connection with Islam. He reverenced the seven heavenly bodies, by wearing a dress of a different colour on every day in the week. He joined in the Brahmanical worship and sacrifices of his Rajpoot queens. Still he was outwardly a Mussulman. He had no sons ; he vowed that if a son was born to him he would walk on foot to the tomb of a Mussulman saint at Ajmír ; it was more than two hundred miles from Fathpúr. In 1570 his eldest son Selim was born ; Akber walked to Ajmír ; he offered up his prayers at the tomb.³⁶

Persecution of
Shiahs by the
Sunni Ulama.

Meantime the Ulamá were growing troublesome at Agra. The Ulamá, as already seen, comprised

³⁵ See the description of Akber in the Autobiography of Jehangír.

³⁶ The main authority for the religion of Akber is the *Afn-i-Akbari*, translated, with notes, by Mr Blockmann. See especially Mr Blockmann's long note on the religion of Akber. It comprises translations of valuable extracts from Badauni's history. Badauni was an honest Mussulman who hated the innovations of Akber.

the collective body of Mussulman doctors and lawyers who resided at the capital. The Ulamá have always possessed great weight in a Mussulman state. Judges, magistrates, and law officers in general; are chosen from their number. Consequently the opinion of the collective body was generally received as the final authority. The Ulamá at Agra were bigoted Sunnís. They hated and persecuted the Shíahs. Especially they persecuted the teachers of the Súfí heresy, which had grown up in Persia, and was spreading in India. They had grown in power under the Afghan Sultans. They had been quiet in the days of Humáyun and Bairam Khan; both were confessedly Shíahs; the Ulamá were too courtly to offend the power which appointed the law officers. When, however, Abker threw over Bairam Khan, and asserted his own sovereignty, the Ulamá became more active. They were anxious to keep the young Padishah in the right way. They were filled with wrath at a damnable schism which was spreading abroad in India. This schism kept the minds of Mussulmans in a constant ferment. It turned away the hearts of Sunnís towards the Shíah faith. It stirred up the rancour of Mussulmans in general against the Ulamá themselves.

This schism was one of the most remarkable religious movements of the time. It corresponds in a notable manner with similar movements within the pale of Christianity. From an early period in Mussulman history it had been prophesied that the eleventh century of the Hijra would be the millennium of Islam. The coming of the millennium was to be preceded by an important sign. There would be a

Millennium of
Islam.

CHAPTER IV. general decay of real religion ; an absolute necessity for the advent of a prophet. The prophet expected was known as the Imám Mahdi, the Lord of the period. Mahdi was the last of the twelve Imáms.³⁷ He had already lived on earth, but had disappeared. He was expected to re-appear, to convert the world, to usher in the millennium.

Fanaticism of
the Mahdis, or
believers in the
millennium.

The decay of Islam in the sixteenth century was obvious to all orthodox believers. Indeed, the decay of religion is always obvious to zealots. Fanatics are always ready to denounce the wickedness of the times, to proclaim the advent of a prophet, to herald the dawn of a millennium. The multitude are always grateful to know that they are living at an important crisis ; on the eve of some portentous catastrophe which is to aggrandize themselves and chastise everybody else. In the sixteenth century the period of a thousand years was actually drawing to a close. The year 1000 of the Hijra corresponded to the year 1591-92 of the Christian era. Accordingly fanaticism was developing into frenzy. The wickedness of the times was ascribed to the worldliness of the Ulamá. Street-preachers denounced the Ulamá on all sides ;—their pharisaic pride, vain learning, intriguings for office, and general corruption. The oratory was popular with the masses. The Ulamá combined the functions of judges and magistrates, with those of lawyers and divines. Consequently when the fanatics raised the cry, every man with a

³⁷ The twelve Imáms bear no resemblance to the twelve disciples or the twelve apostles of Christianity. They were hereditary representatives of Ali and his two sons. Ali was the first Imám. His two sons, Hasan and Husain, were the second and third. The descent then ran from Ali, the son of Husain, down to Mahdi, the last of the twelve. Mahdi flourished many centuries ago ; he is supposed to be still living. To this day the advent of Mahdi is still expected, by Sunnis as well as by Shíahs.

grievance, every man smarting under injustice, was ready to join in the chorus. Meantime earnest men were preaching that the Lord of the period was about to appear. They formed brotherhoods holding property in common. They abandoned their ordinary avocations, and lived on charity. They met together every day to rant and pray. They devoted themselves, heart and soul, to converting backsliders and preparing the world for Mahdi. The natural result followed. False Mahidis appeared in all directions, surrounded by crack-brained disciples. Disorders broke out which necessitated the interference of the law. Judges and magistrates were only too glad of an excuse for persecuting schismatics and heretics of every kind.

The fanaticism was not confined to the lower orders; neither was the persecution. Many men of distinguished learning caught the infection. Amongst others was a famous Shaikh named Mubarak. Shaikh Mubarak is a type of a class of fanatics; he is also a type of the independent thinkers of the sixteenth century. He was born as far back as 1505, when the Afghan Sultans were reigning at Delhi; he lived down to the year 1593, when the reign of Akber was drawing to a close.

The religious condition of India in the sixteenth century may be easily realized. For centuries the Koran had dominated over the Mussulmans of India. Meantime the Shiah element had risen to the surface; the Mussulmans had become separated into the two hostile camps of Sunni and Shiah. During the sixteenth century three other currents of religious thought were running into India. One was flowing from Persia in the form of Sufism associated with

Shaikh Mubarak.

Sufism, Christianity, and Brahmanism.

CHAPTER IV. sun and fire worship. A second was flowing from the Portuguese at Goa in the form of Roman Catholic Christianity. A third had begun much earlier. It flowed out of the collision between Islam and Brahmanism. Religious teachers, of whom Kabir and Nanuk were types, were teaching a pure morality and pure theism. Practically they enforced the idea that the God of the Mussulmans and the God of the Hindús was one and the same.³⁸

Career of Shaikh
Mubarak.

Shaikh Mubarak was born in 1505. He was brought up as a strict Sunní. Like other students of the time, he spent many years of his early life in travelling through Hindustan, the Punjab, and perhaps Central Asia. He had gone from one famous teacher to another, gathering instruction on his way, until he had acquired an encyclopedic knowledge. He had abandoned the strict tenets of the Sunnís. He had become a Shíah. Finally he had developed into an advanced Súfi. After his wanderings he had settled near Agra, where he obtained one of those grants of land which are given by Mussulman sovereigns for the support of learned men. He married and had two sons, Abul Faiz and Abul Fazl. Subsequently he took an active part in the Mahdi movement. The Ulamá became bitterly hostile to him. They took away his land. They reported to Akber that the Shaikh was damning himself, and leading others into damnation; that death was his fitting punishment. They even ob-

³⁸ The political events which led to these phenomena may be borne in mind. In Persia the Shíah religion had developed into Súfism; it had also survived the old Persian nationality. In 1500 Persia had become independent under the dynasty known as the Súfi Sháhs. About the same time the Portuguese were founding their maritime empire at Goa. The third movement is more obscure. It will suffice to recognize its existence.

tained an order for his arrest. Mubárik was warned CHAPTER IV. in time, and fled for his life; he left his two sons behind at Agra.

The sons of Shaikh Mubárik were destined to exercise a vast influence over their contemporaries. ^{Abul Faiz the Súfi: Abul Fazl the Universalist.} The elder, Abul Faiz, was content to be a Súfi poet, and nothing more. He was a mystic, who borrowed his imagery from flowers and perfumes, from beauty and intoxication. Sometimes he poured forth the yearnings of his soul in intelligible poetry; at others he expressed his aspirations after God in the language of the lover and the wine-bibber. His verses reached the ears of Akber; the young Padishah had no taste for poetry in general; he was sufficiently interested in the new ideas to invite Abul Faiz to court. Henceforth the fortunes of the Mubárik family began to brighten. The Ulamá ceased to persecute; Mubárik returned to Agra.

Abul Fazl, the younger son of the Shaikh, had a ^{Genius and aspirations o}
^{Abul Fazl.} larger genius and higher ambition than his elder brother. Whilst yet a boy he was versed in all the learning of the day; he yearned after more knowledge. To use his own language, he longed to study the great religions of the world at their fountain-heads; to sit at the feet of the Christian padres of Goa, the Buddhist monks of Thibet, the Parsí priests who were learned in the Zendavesta. The rise of his elder brother turned his ambition into another channel. Abul Faiz introduced him to Akber. He made a deep impression on Akber. Gradually he gained a powerful influence over Akber. In the end he became the trusted minister of Akber; the confidential friend of the Padishah.

CHAPTER IV.
Relations between Akber and Abul Fazl.

Akber and Abul Fazl were certainly men of genius. They are still the bright lights of Indian history. They were the foremost men of their time. But each had a characteristic weakness. Akber was a born Moghul. With all his good qualities he was proud, ignorant, inquisitive, and self-sufficient. Abul Fazl was a born courtier. With all his good qualities he was a flatterer, a time-server, and a eulogist ; he made Akber his idol ; he bowed down and worshipped him. They became close friends ; they were indeed necessary to each other. Akber looked to his minister for praise ; Abul Fazl looked to his master for advancement. It is difficult to admire the genius of Akber without seeing that he has been worked upon by Abul Fazl. It is equally difficult to admire the genius of Abul Fazl without seeing that he is pandering to the vanity of Akber.

Akber troubled by the Ulamá.

When Akber made the acquaintance of Abul Fazl he was in sore perplexity. He was determined to rule men of all creeds with even hand. The Ulamá were thwarting him. The Chief Justice at Agra had sentenced men to death for being Shíahs and heretics. The Ulamá were urging the Padishah to do the same. He was reluctant to quarrel with them ; he was still more reluctant to sanction their high-handed proceedings towards men who worshipped the same God but after a different fashion.

Abul Fazl's hatred against the Ulamá.

How far Akber opened his soul to Abul Fazl is unknown. No doubt Abul Fazl read his thoughts. Indeed, he had his own wrongs to avenge. The Ulamá had persecuted his father, and driven him into exile. The Ulamá were ignorant, bigoted, and puffed up with pride and orthodoxy. Their learning was confined to Arabic and the Koran. They

ignored what they did not know and could not understand. Abul Fazl must have hated and despised them. He was far too courtly, too self-constrained, too astute to express his real sentiments. The Ulamá were at variance with the Padishah; they were also at variance amongst themselves. Possibly he foresaw that if they disputed before Akber they might excite his contempt. How far he worked upon Akber can never be ascertained. In the end Akber ordered that the Ulamá should discuss all questions in his presence; he would then decide who was right and who was wrong.

There is no evidence that Abul Fazl suggested this course. It was, however, the kind of incense that a courtier would offer to a sovereign like Akber. The learned men were to lay their opinions before the Padishah; he was to sit and judge. If he needed help Abul Fazl would be at his side. Indeed, Abul Fazl would ask questions and invite opinions. He, the Padishah, would only hear and decide. Accordingly preparations were made for the coming debates.³⁹

The discussions were held on Thursday even-
Thursday even-

³⁹ It is a curious fact that the old sovereigns of India took special pleasure in religious controversy. The Chinese pilgrims and the Hindu legends alike bear evidence to this characteristic. It especially belonged to the age when Brahmanism was struggling against Buddhism; when the religion of gods and priests was fighting against a system of atheism and morality. The old Moghul Khans had a strong taste for it. Whilst recognizing the principle of toleration, they liked to hear Mussulmans, Christians, and Buddhists arguing against each other. The controversy held in the court of Akber originated in a similar spirit; it excited similar feelings in the sovereign and the courtiers.

This love for religious controversy prevails amongst some of the Rajpoot princes of the present day. They delight in hearing disputes between Bráhmáns, Mussulmans, and Christians. For this information I am indebted to the Rev. John Robson, who was a missionary in Rajpootana for twelve years. Mr Robson is the author of "Christianity and Hinduism compared."

CHAPTER IV. ings. They were carried on in a large pavilion ;
 ings' discus- it was built for the purpose in the royal garden
 sions. at Fathpúr Sikri. All the learned men at Agra
 were invited to attend. The Padishah and all the
 grandees of the empire were present. Abul Fazl
 acted as a kind of director. He started questions ;
 he expounded his master's policy of toleration.
 Akber preserved his dignity as Padishah. He list-
 ened with majestic gravity to all that was said.
 Occasionally he bestowed praises and presents upon
 the best speakers.

**Discomfiture of
 the Ulamá.**

For many evenings the proceedings were con-
 ducted with due decorum. As, however, the speakers
 grew accustomed to the presence of the Padishah,
 the spirit of dissent began to work. One evening it
 led to an uproar ; learned men reviled each other
 before the Padishah. No doubt Abul Fazl did his
 best to make the Ulamá uncomfortable. He shifted
 the discussion from one point to another. He started
 dangerous subjects. He placed them in dilemmas.
 If they sought to please the Padishah they sinned
 against the Koran ; if they stuck to the Koran they
 offended the Padishah. A question was started as to
 Akber's marriages. One orthodox magistrate was
 too conscientious to hold his tongue ; he was re-
 moved from his post.⁴⁰ The courtiers saw that the
 Padishah delighted in the discomfiture of the Ulamá.
 They began to charge the Ulama with inconsistency,
 trickery, and cheating. The law officers were un-
 able to defend themselves. Their authority and

⁴⁰ Akber had married more than four wives. The Sunnis are strict upon this point. Akber, however, was anxious that his Rajpoot wives should be on the same footing as his Mussulman wives. The Shias were in his favour. He became a Shiah.

orthodoxy were set at nought. They were fast CHAPTER IV drifting into disgrace and ruin. They had cursed one another in their speech; probably in their hearts they were all agreed in cursing Abul Fazl.

By this time Akber held the Ulamá in small esteem. He was growing sceptical of their religion. He had listened to the history of the Khalifat; he yearned towards Ali and his family; he became in heart a Shíah. Already he may have doubted Muhammad and the Koran. Still he was outwardly a Mussulman. His object now was to overthrow the Ulamá altogether; to become himself the supreme spiritual head; the Pope or Khalif of Islam. Abul Fazl was labouring to invest him with the same authority. He mooted the question one Thursday evening. It raised a storm of opposition; for this he was prepared. He had started the idea; he exerted all his tact and skill to carry it out.

The debates proved that there were differences of opinion among the Ulamá. Abul Fazl urged that there were differences of opinion between the highest Mussulman authorities; between those who were accepted as infallible, and were known as Mujtahids. He thus inserted the thin end of the wedge. He proposed that when the Mujtahids disagreed the decision should be left to the Padishah. Weeks and months passed away in these discussions. Nothing could be said against the measure excepting what would prove offensive to the Padishah.

Meantime a document was drawn up in the names of the chief men amongst the Ulamá. It gave the Padishah the power of deciding between the conflicting authorities. It gave him the still more

Akber a Shíah:
aspire to be
Khalif.

Thin end of the
wedge.

The document
breaking up of
the Ulamá.

CHAPTER IV. dangerous power of issuing fresh decrees, provided they were in accordance with some verse of the Koran, and were manifestly for the benefit of the people. The document was in the handwriting of Shaikh Mubárik; Abul Fazl, Abul Faiz, and probably Akber himself, had each a hand in the composition. The chief men amongst the Ulamá were required to sign it. Perhaps if they had been priests or divines they might have resisted to the last. But they were magistrates and judges; their posts and emoluments were in danger. In the end they signed it in sheer desperation. From that day the power of the Ulamá was gone; they had abdicated their authority to the Padishah; they became mere ciphers in Islam. A worse lot befell their leaders. The head of the Ulamá and the obnoxious Chief Justice were removed from their posts and forced to go to Mecca.

Results.

The breaking up of the Ulamá is an epoch in the history of Mussulman India. The Ulamá may have been ignorant and bigoted; they may have sought to keep religious belief and the government of the empire within the narrow grooves of orthodoxy. Nevertheless they had played an important part throughout Mussulman rule. As exponents of the law of Muhammad they had often proved a salutary check upon the despotism of the sovereign. They had forced every minister, governor, and magistrate to respect the fundamental principles of the Koran. They led and controlled public opinion among the Mussulman population. They formed the only body in the state that ever ventured to oppose the will of the sovereign.

The Thursday evenings had done their work.

Within four years they had broken up the power of CHAPTER IV. the Ulamá. Abul' Fazl had another project in his brain; it combined the audacity of genius with the mendacity of a courtier. He declared that Akber was himself the twelfth Imám, the Lord of the period, who was to reconcile the seventy-two sects of Islam, to regenerate the world, to usher in the millennium. The announcement took the court by surprise. It fitted, however, into current ideas; it paved the way for further assumptions. Akber grasped the notion with eagerness; it fascinated him for the remainder of his life; it bound him in the closest ties of friendship and confidence with Abul Fazl.

The religious life of Akber had undergone a ^{Rejection of Islam.} vast change. He was testing religion by morality and reason. His faith in Islam was fading away. Muhammad had married a girl of ten;⁴¹ he had taken another man's wife; therefore he could not have been a prophet sent by God. Akber disbelieved the story of his night-journey to heaven. Meantime Akber was eagerly learning the mysteries of other religions. He entertained Bráhmans, Súfís, Parsís, and Christian Fathers. He believed in the transmigrations of the soul, in the supreme spirit, in the ecstatic re-union of the soul with God, in the deity of Fire and the Sun. He leaned towards Christianity; he rejected the Trinity and Incarnation.

The gravitations of Akber towards Christianity are invested with singular interest. He had been impressed with what he heard of the Portuguese in India; their large ships, impregnable forts, and big

⁴¹ The marriage of Muhammad with Ayesha, the young daughter of Abu Bakr, is a well-known event of his life. So also was his marriage with Zeinab, the divorced wife of his adopted son Zeid.

CHAPTER IV. guns. He sent a letter to the Portuguese viceroy at Goa inviting Christian Fathers to come to his court at Fathpúr Sikri and instruct him in the sacred books. The religious world at Goa was thrown into a ferment at the prospect of converting the Great Moghul. Every priest in Goa prayed that he might be sent on the mission. Three Fathers were despatched to Fathpúr, which was more than twelve hundred miles away.⁴² Akber awaited their arrival with the utmost impatience. He received them with every mark of favour. They delivered their presents, consisting of a Polyglot Bible in four languages, and images of Jesus and the Virgin Mary. To their unspeakable delight the Great Moghul placed the Bible on his head and kissed the images. So eager was he for instruction that he spent the whole night in conversation with the Fathers. He provided them with lodgings in the precincts of his palace; he permitted them to set up a chapel and altar.

Controversies
between the
Mullahs and the
Fathers : effect
on Akber.

Akber had ceased to be a Mussulman; he still maintained appearances. He set apart Saturday evenings for controversies between the Fathers and the Mullahs. In the end the Fathers convinced Akber of the superiority of Christianity. They contrasted the sensualities of Muhammad with the pure morality of the gospel; the wars of Muhammad and the Khalifs with the preachings and sufferings of the Apostles. The Mussulman historian curses

⁴² The mission consisted of Father Aquaviva, Morserrato, and Enriques. Aquaviva was the superior; he was a man of great learning, tact, and zeal. Enriques however played an important part: he was a Persian by birth, and acted as interpreter. Nothing is known of the détails of their long and laborious journey. Father Catrou furnishes some details which supplement the information supplied by Mr Blockmann.

the Fathers ; he states that Akber became a Christian.⁴³ The Fathers, however, could never induce Akber to be baptized. He gave them his favourite son Murád, a boy of thirteen, to be educated in Christianity and the European sciences.⁴⁴ He directed Abul Fazl to prepare a translation of the gospel. He entered the chapel of the Fathers, and prostrated himself before the image of the Saviour. He permitted the Fathers to preach Christianity in any part of his empire ; to perform their rites in public, in opposition to Mussulman law. A Portuguese was buried at Fathpúr with all the pomp of the Roman Catholic ritual ; the cross was carried through the streets for the first time.. But Akber would not become a Christian ; he waited, he said, for the Divine illumination.⁴⁵

Other men beside Akber were moved by Christianity. . It awakened new ideas and sentiments.

Effect of Christianity.

⁴³ See Badauni's history. Translations will be found in Elliot's History, vol. v. Also in Blockmann's English edition of the *Aín-i-Akbari*. Badauni was employed by Abul Fazl on the translation of the *Maha Bhárata* and *Ramáyana* ; like a true Mussulman he expresses his utter disgust at the task.

⁴⁴ Akber showed his attachment to Christianity in a peculiar way. He married a Christian wife, who is known as Miriam or Mary. The palace of Miriam is still shown at Fathpúr Sikri. It is the only one with a bath-room attached. The chief feature in the ornamentation and architecture is something like a Greek cross. Akber is said to have remarked to the Jesuit Fathers that he had more crosses in one of his palaces than they had in all their churches.—*Communicated by the Rev. John Robson.*

It will be seen hereafter, that Jehangír tried to get Christian wives. Shah Jehan took Portuguese women into his harem after the capture of Hugli.

⁴⁵ A story is told by Father Catrou, that Abul Fazl became a Christian, and brought forward political reasons why Akber should do the same. He represented that the Hindús would never accept Islam, because it was the religion of the conquerors ; that out of their deep veneration for Akber they would readily follow his example and become Christians. Palace influences, however, were too strong for Akber. His mother, who lived to a very advanced age, was a staunch believer in the prophet. His wives were all opposed to Christianity, as it would have forced him to put them all away save one. The Mullahs of the court were equally strong in denouncing Christianity.—Catrou's History of the Moghul Dynasty.

CHAPTER IV. It strongly influenced the religious thought of Abul Fazl and his elder brother Abul Faiz. These two men were representatives of the time. Both were Súfís. Both affected that mystic longing after union with God, which harmonizes with every religion. But there was a marked difference between them ; they represent opposite schools. Abul Fazl was the statesman feeling his way to power. Abul Faiz was the prophet bard yearning after something higher and better.

Creed of Abul Fazl.

The creed of Abul Fazl is set forth in the following lines :—

“ O God, in every temple I see people that seek Thee !
In every language I hear spoken, people praise Thee !
Polytheism and Islam feel after Thee !
Each religion says,—‘ Thou art without equal.’
If it be a mosque, people murmur the holy prayer ;
If it be a Christian church, people ring the bell from love to Thee.
Sometimes I frequent the Christian cloister, and sometimes the mosque ;
It is Thou whom I search from temple to temple.”⁴⁶

Such language is more political than religious. It expresses a grave truth which cannot be ignored, especially by the rulers of India. It is not the outpourings of a fervent man ; it is not the stuff that makes martyrs and crusaders. It is the outcome of the old Moghul policy of toleration, refined by the genius of Abul Fazl.

Aspirations of Abul Faiz.

The religion of Abul Faiz was of a different character. The following lines embody some of his aspirations :—

“ Come let us turn to a pulpit of light ;
Let us lay the foundation of a new Kaaba with stones from Mount Sinai.
The wall of the Kaaba is broken ;
.

⁴⁶ The translation of Abul Fazl's verses is by Mr Blockmann. See his Biography of Abul Fazl in the Introduction to the *Ain-i-Akbari*.

•The basis of the Kiblah is gone ;
Let us build a fortress without fault on a new foundation." ⁴⁷

CHAPTER IV.

Hitherto Akber had made Agra his capital, but established his court at Fathpúr Sikri. The two places were twelve miles apart; the intervening space was covered by a bazar. Fathpúr had long been Akber's favourite dwelling-place. His eldest son Selim had been born there; so had another of his sons. He left his wives and family there when he set out on an expedition. But Fathpúr was unhealthy; a change was also necessary on other grounds. His growing antagonism to Islam was creating disaffection. Numbers of Shaikhs and Fakírs were banished; some were sent to Scinde and Kandahar and exchanged for horses.⁴⁸ The Afghans in Kábul were growing dangerous. Akber had given the kingdom of Kábul to his brother Muhammad Hakim Mirza; but the Mirza often rebelled.

Akber leaves
Fathpúr Sikri:
persecutes the
Mussulmans.

⁴⁷ Here again I am indebted to Mr Blockmann. See *Aín-i-Akbari*, page 557. That Abul Fazl was deeply impressed with Christianity is evident from his own history of the reign of Akber, known as the *Akber Namah*. He there says that Father Aquaviva was unrivalled among Christian doctors for intelligence and wisdom : "Several carping bigots attacked him, but their statements were torn to pieces, and they were nearly put to shame. They attacked the contradictions in the Gospel, but they could not prove their assertions. The Father replied to their arguments, and then offered to walk into a furnace with the Gospel in his hand, if the Mullahs would do the same with the Koran. The Mullahs shrank back from the proposal and answered only with angry words." (*Elliott's History of India*, vol. vi.) The story has been told in a variety of ways; sometimes the offer is said to have come from a Mullah. Possibly Abul Fazl's version is the correct one. Subsequently the Fathers were warned by their superiors not to attempt any such rash experiments, which might be suggested by the devil in order to bring Christianity to shame.

⁴⁸ This statement is peculiar in itself; it is also out of keeping with the popular idea of Akber. The Mussulman historian Badauni charges Akber with sending the refractory divines to Kandahar and exchanging them for horses. (See Badauni, extracted and translated by Blockmann in *Aín-i-Akbari*, page 191.) Possibly this does not mean actual slavery. Possibly the holy men were simply deported to the north-west frontier, where their co-religionists ransomed them with horses. It will, however, be seen hereafter that Akber persecuted Mussulmans and destroyed mosques, especially after his removal to Lahore..

CHAPTER IV. and raided the Punjab. Akber tried to cope with the evil by pitting the Rajpoots against the Afghans. In 1578 he appointed his brother-in-law Raja Bhagwan Dás to be governor of the Punjab; he appointed Raja Mán Singh, a son of Bhagwan Dás, to the command of the districts on the Indus. In 1582 the Mirza again broke out in rebellion.

Akber removes
to Lahore.

Under these circumstances Akber resolved on moving from Fathpúr to Lahore. The Fathers marvelled at the greatness of his army. Five thousand elephants were on the march. Their heads were shielded with iron plates; their trunks were armed with swords; their tusks were bound with daggers. Each elephant carried four archers or four gunners. The elephants marched in the rear of the army.

Rajpoot govern-
ment in Kábul
and Bengal.

In Kábul Akber reduced his brother to submission and then pardoned him. In 1584 the Mirza died. Akber appointed Raja Mán Singh to be governor of Kábul. The history is obscure; could the facts be ascertained they would reveal political workings of the utmost importance. The disaffection of Kábul was doubtless due to the religious innovations of Akber. The appointment of a Rajpoot governor over an Afghan population was the outcome of Akber's policy. It was a daring experiment in Asiatic politics. It may be inferred that the Rajpoots overawed the Afghans. The people of Kábul made complaints to Akber against Mán Singh. Akber sent Mán Singh to be governor of Bihár and Bengal; there also the Afghan element prevailed; there again the Rajpoot is said to have ruled prudently and justly.⁴⁹ Mán Singh

⁴⁹ There is absolutely no evidence as to Mán Singh's administration. Mr Blockmann has collected some interesting notices respecting Mán Singh. They

conquered and annexed Orissa. He continued for CHAPTER IV. many years in the government of Bihár and Bengal. Akber set aside his own rules in order to reward him handsomely. He raised Mán Singh to the command of Seven thousand horse; such high rank had been hitherto reserved for the sons of the Padishah.⁵⁰

At Lahore the religion of Akber underwent ^{Akber founds a new religion.} further change. Muhammad had framed a religion out of Judaism, Christianity, and his own ideas. Akber tried to frame a religion in like manner. He thought to combine circumcision and baptism with the worship of the supreme spirit; to blend polygamy and the worship of Jesus with the belief in the transmigrations of the soul. Accordingly he appeared at Lahore as the enemy of Islam, the destroyer of mosques, the head of a new religion.⁵¹ He never adopted baptism. He became a worshipper of the "Sun; he expected to be worshipped himself as a type or embodiment of deity, a ray of the sun's rays. Before entering into details it may be as well to picture him as he is described by old European travellers.⁵²

imply that it was just and prudent. Such general terms are of no value in dealing with Moghul history at this period. They merely imply that the writer was a partisan of the Rajpoots, and wrote to please Akber.

⁵⁰ Mr Blockmann remarks that by this act Akber placed a Hindú above every Mussulman officer. Shortly afterwards, however, two Mussulman officers were raised to the same rank. See Mr Blockmann's history of the several Amírs and Mansubdars of Akber in his edition of the *Ain-i-Akbari*.

⁵¹ See Father Catrou's history. His statements are corroborated by the European authorities which are summarized by Purchas.

⁵² Akber was the first sovereign of any note in India since the days of Porus, who was known to Europeans. The Portuguese had been acquainted with the little kings of Malabar; they knew something, but very little, of the Rais of Vijayanagar. But Akber was the first great Indian potentate who was interviewed by Europeans. They were curious as regards every trait and detail, for everything was new and strange. Their several accounts have been summed up by the

CHAPTER IV.Old English ac-
counts of Akber.

"The yearly revenue of Akber was many millions; yet other princes have exceeded him in port and magnificence; in apparel, diet, and majesty of court service. He could neither write nor read; but he was endowed with deep judgment, piercing wit, wise forecast, and marvellous memory."

Administration
of justice.

"He was very diligent in the execution of justice. In the city where he dwelt he heard all causes himself. No malefactor was punished without his knowledge. Thieves and pirates were deprived of a hand. Murderers, adulterers, and highwaymen were put to death by hanging or impalement; but no execution took place until the sentence had been pronounced by Akber three times."

Daily appear-
ance in public.

"He held a public audience every day. For this purpose he had two wide halls, or rather open courts, with a royal throne set up in each.⁵³ He did not, however, sit upon the throne, but stood by it. On these occasions he was attended by eight counsellors as well as notaries. He often received exceedingly great presents at these audiences. One prince, who offered to become his vassal, presented him with horses, swords, and gold and jewels of enormous values. Almost every day he received such presents, but especially at the feast of the Naturoz.

History and
engineering.

"At other times Akber sat upon carpets after the Turkish manner. On these occasions twelve learned

old English geographer, Samuel Purchas; the description in the text, with some slight modifications, is given in his very words.

⁵³ These two courts, or halls, will be often brought to notice in dealing with the history of Akber's successors. There was a public audience every afternoon in the public hall of assembly known as the Durbar. There was a private audience every evening to such guests as were specially invited in a kind of drawing-room known as the Ghusal-khana, literally "the bath-room."

men were always with him, who either read or disputed in his presence, or else related histories. He was a curious discourser with all sects. He was both affable and majestic, merciful and severe. He was more gracious to the commonalty than he was to his own grandees. He was skilful in various mechanical arts, such as making guns and casting ordnance. He had workshops within the precincts of the palace.

" He took great delight in a variety of games; ^{Amusements:} in fights between buffaloes, cocks, harts, rams, and elephants; in the performances of wrestlers, fencers, dancers, and actors of comedies; in the dances of trained elephants and camels. He knew the name of every one of his elephants. He gave names to his horses, his wild beasts, his harts, and his pigeons, and knew every one by its name. He often despatched serious business in the midst of these spectacles. He was very fond of hunting. He had no hunting dogs. He kept trained panthers to take other wild beasts. He also kept tame antelopes, with nets fastened to their horns, to entangle wild ones. In his hunting expeditions he surrounded a whole wood with hunters. He then sent beaters into the jungle to drive out the game. If any hunters suffered the beasts to escape they were punished.

" Akber was sparing in his diet. He rarely partook of flesh more than four times in the year. He lived on rice, milk, and sweetmeats. He only slept three hours in the night time.⁵⁴

" He hated the Mussulman religion. He over- ^{Hindus pre-ferred to Mus-sulmans.}

⁵⁴ Akber spent the greater part of the night in his private assemblies. Probably he slept some hours in the day-time, according to Moghul custom.

CHAPTER IV. threw mosques and converted them into stables.⁵⁵ He trusted and employed the Hindús more than the Mussulmans. Many of the Mussulmans rebelled against him; they stirred up his brother, the governor of Kábul, to take arms against him; but Akber defeated the rebels and restored order.

Akber's religion : works
miracles.

"It is uncertain what really was the religion of Akber. Some said that he was a Mussulman; others that he was a Hindú; others that he was a Christian. Some said that he belonged to a fourth sect, which was not connected with either of the three others. He acknowledged one God, who was best content with a variety of sects and worshipings. Early in the morning, and again at noon, evening, and midnight, he worshipped the Sun. He belonged to a new sect, of which the followers regarded him as their prophet. They followed him out of interest and worldly gain. He professed to work miracles; to cure diseases by the water of his feet. Many women made vows to him, either to obtain children, or to recover the health of their children; if they obtained the object of their desires they brought to him whatever they had vowed, and he received it willingly. Every morning he worshipped the Sun; he liked to be worshipped himself by the people. He showed himself to the multitude at a window;⁵⁶ they knelt down, and performed the same worship to him as they did to their own idols. It was thought that he entertained learned men of different sects and re-

⁵⁵ Abul Fazl is discreetly silent as regards Akber's persecution of the Mussulmans. In one place he significantly remarks that "those who are acquainted with the religious knowledge and piety of His Majesty, will not attach any importance to some of his customs." *Aín-i-Akbari*, page 165.

⁵⁶ This was the famous window for inspection, known as the Jharokha window.

ligions in order that he might take something from CHAPTER IV. each for the constitution of a new one."⁵⁷

The pretensions of Akber to be worshipped as a deity reveal the workings of his mind. The Moghul idea of one sovereign and one God had seethed in his brain. He had become impatient of Islam; he yearned to bring all men under one dominion, religious as well as political. He had been intoxicated by the boundless flattery of Abul Fazl.

The stages in the development of Akber are strongly marked. The idea that he was the twelfth Imám, the Lord of the period, may possibly have died a natural death. It could only find expression within the pale of Islam; it would not work upon the Hindú; it was too fascinating to be rejected; it was blended with more spiritual and metaphysical forms of belief. The worship of Fire and the Sun as the manifestations of deity, the types of the supreme spirit, was alike Persian and Brahmanical. The worship of royalty as light emanating from God, a ray of the Sun that illuminated the universe, was due to the genius of Abul Fazl. Probably it originated in ancient times, when imperial power maintained a priesthood and was supported by a priesthood.⁵⁸ Others, however, besides Abul Fazl had the audacity to revive a similar idea in the sixteenth century; hence arose the belief in the divine rights of kings which about the same time began to prevail in England.⁵⁹

One God and
one sovereign.

Stages in
Akber's religi-
ous develop-
ment.

⁵⁷ Purchas's Pilgrimage, reprinted at Calcutta, 1864.

⁵⁸ It is a suggestive fact that the Rajas of Ayodhyá, the ancestors of the present Rajas of Udaipur, are fabled to have descended from the Sun. The remote ancestor of Chenghiz Khan was also begotten by the Sun on a Virgin.

⁵⁹ The fact that Akber suffered himself to be worshipped as deity is undonable.

CHAPTER IV. Besides this popular 'form of worship Akber founded a new religion, known as the "Divine Faith." The members were the elect, who worshipped him as the visible type of deity. The novice placed his turban at the foot of the Padishah. In return he received a symbol bearing the name of God, and the motto "Alláhu Akber."⁶⁰ Meantime all the Mu'ssulman prayers and feasts were abolished at court. A new worship was introduced, which was partly Parsí and partly Hindú. A new era, and new festivals, were established, all of which were Parsí. The members gave feasts on their birthdays, and bestowed alms. They refrained as far as possible from flesh meat. They abstained from intercourse with women who were pregnant, old, or barren, and with girls who were under age. Meantime the Mussulman grandees at court made but little resistance. They hated Abul Fazl. They were jealous of the promotion of Hindús; they were little troubled by the religious novelties. They had learned to sneer at the Ulamá; probably in their hearts they were ready to sneer at the Padishah.

Absence of fanaticism.

Akber was no fanatic. He was not carried away by religious craze. His religion was the outcome of his policy; it was political rather than superstitious; it began with him, and it ended with him. Proba-

Every morning Akber made his prostrations to the Sun, whilst a crowd of wretches made their prayers and vows to him as their deity. The Portuguese saw the people worship Akber. Abul Fazl himself declares, that the people's prayers were answered, that their diseases were healed. He adds, with a sly hit at Christianity and Buddhism, that many sincere inquirers received an awakening from the light of his wisdom, or the holiness of his breath, which other spiritual doctors could not produce by fasting and prayers for forty days. See Aín-i-Akbari, translated by Blochmann.

⁶⁰ There is a double meaning in these words. They signify "God is great." They also signify "Akber is God."

bly the lack of fanaticism caused its failure. Abul CHAPTER IV.
Fazl speaks of the numbers who joined it; the list which he has preserved only contains the names of eighteen courtiers, including himself, his father, and his brother. Only one Hindú is on the list, namely, Bir Bar, the Brahman.⁶¹

Akber tried hard to improve the morals of his ^{Morals of Akber.} subjects, Hindús as well as Mussulmans. He placed restrictions upon prostitution; he severely punished seducers. He permitted the use of wine; he punished intoxication. He prohibited the slaughter of cows. He forbade the marriage of boys before they were sixteen, and of girls before they were fourteen. He permitted the marriage of Hindú widows. He tried to stop Satí amongst the Hindús; and polygamy amongst the Mussulmans.⁶²

There was much practical simplicity in Akber's ^{Practical mind} character. It showed itself in a variety of ways. It was not peculiar to Akber; it was an instinct which shows itself in Moghuls generally. His Amírs cheated him by bringing borrowed horses to muster; he stopped them by branding every horse with the name of the Amír to which it belonged as well as with the imperial mark. He appointed writers to record everything he said or did. He sent

⁶¹ Bir Bar had something to do with Akber's religious culture. Badauni, the Mussulman historian, thus refers to him: "Bir Bar impressed upon the Padishah that the Sun was the primary origin of everything. The ripening of the grain in the fields, of fruits and vegetables, the illumination of the universe, and the lives of men, depended upon the Sun. Hence it was but proper to worship and reverence this luminary; and people in praying should face towards the place where he rises, instead of turning to the quarter where he sits. For similar reasons, said Bir Bar, should men pay regard to fire and water, stones, trees, and other forms of existence, even to cows and their ordure, to the mark on the forehead, and the Brahmanical thread." Blockmann's translation in the *Ain-i-Akbari*.

⁶² See the extracts from Badauni's history, inserted in Mr Blockmann's edition of the *Ain-i-Akbari*. It is impossible to ascertain how far Akber enforced obedience to his laws.

CHAPTER IV. writers into every city and province to report to him everything that was going on.⁶³ He hung up a bell at the palace; any man who had a grievance might ring the bell and obtain a hearing.⁶⁴

Experiment for discovering the primitive language.

Akber was very inquisitive. He sent an expedition to discover the sources of the Ganges. - He made a strange experiment to discover what language was first spoken by mankind. This experiment is typical of the man. The Mussulmans declared that the first language was Arabic; the Jews said it was Hebrew; the Bráhmans said it was Sanskrit. Akber ordered twelve infants to be brought up by dumb nurses; not a word was to be spoken in their presence until they were twelve years of age. When the time arrived the children were brought before Akber. Proficients in the learned tongues were present to catch the first words, to decide upon the language to which it belonged. The children could not say a word; they spoke only by signs. The experiment was an utter failure.⁶⁵

Dark side of Akber: his prisoner..

The character of Akber had its dark side. He was sometimes harsh and cruel. His persecution of Mussulmans was unpardonable. He had another way of getting rid of his enemies which is revolting to civilization. He kept a prisoner in his pay.

⁶³ These writers were of little use in checking injustice or oppression. Bernier says that they were generally in disgraceful collusion with the viceroy or governor.

⁶⁴ Ain-i-Akbari. See also Father Catrou.

⁶⁵ Father Catrou relates this incident on the authority of the Moghul chronicle. According to Herodotus the same experiment was made by one of the Egyptian Pharaohs. There is one curious incident in Akber's experiment. The children were subsequently taught to speak, but it was with the greatest possible difficulty.

Badauni relates the incident in a tone of contempt. He says that a number of sucklings were brought up by dumb nurses until they were four years of age. When the time was up not one could speak a word. Badauni's story is probably the true one. Father Catrou's story is just the exaggeration of the incident which would be recorded in the Moghul chronicles.

He carried a box with three compartments; one for betel; another for digestive pills; a third for poisoned pills. No one dared to refuse to eat what was offered him by the Padishah; the offer was esteemed an honour. How many were poisoned by Akber is unknown. The practice was in full force during the reigns of his successors.

Akber required his Amirs to prostrate themselves before him. This rule gave great offence to Mussulmans; prostration is worship; no strict Mussulman will perform worship except when offering his prayers to God. Abul Fazl says that Akber ordered it to be discontinued. The point is doubtful. It was certainly performed by members of the "Divine Faith." It was also performed during the reign of his son and successor.⁶⁶

The Moghul government was pure despotism. Every governor and viceroy was supreme within his province; the Padishah was supreme throughout his empire. There was nothing to check provincial rulers but fear of the Padishah; there was nothing to check the Padishah but fear of rebellion. All previous Mussulman sovereigns had been checked by the Ulamá and the authority of the Koran. Akber had broken up the Ulamá and set aside the Koran; he governed the empire according to his will; his will was law. The old Moghul Khans had held Diets; no trace of a Diet is to be found in

⁶⁶ Three forms of salutation were known to the Moghuls:—the Kornish, or offering of the head; the Taslim, or offering of the whole body; the Sijdah, or prostration. The Kornish consisted in placing the palm of the right hand upon the forehead, and bending the head downwards. The Taslim consisted in stooping down and placing the back of the right hand upon the ground; then raising it gently and standing erect; finally placing the palm of the hand on the crown of the head. The Sijdah consisted in prostration, and touching the ground with the forehead. See *Afn-i-Akbari*, translated by Blockmann. Book i. Afn 74.

CHAPTER IV. the history of Moghul India prior to the reign of Aurungzeb. There may have been a semblance of a Diet on the accession of a new Padishah; all the Amirs, Rajas, and princes of the empire paid their homage, presented gifts, and received titles and honours. But there was no council or parliament of any sort or kind. The Padishah was one and supreme.

Ministers.

Asiatic ministers play an important part in the administration; they rarely play an important part in the history. They exercised great influence; it was chiefly in matters personal or of passing interest. They might advance a friend or ruin an enemy. Otherwise they were mere slaves in the hands of their master; if they failed to please him they ceased to be ministers. Loss of favour was not a matter of dismissal; it was degradation and ruin; there was always danger of confiscation and death.

Cabinet.

Sometimes the ministers seemed to form a cabinet. It comprised the prime minister, the finance minister, the paymaster-general. The Padishah appointed others at will. Mention is sometimes made of a lord steward of the household, a grand master of the eunuchs, a lord falconer, and other nondescript posts. Sometimes the ministers were realities like Bairam Khan and Abul Fazl; sometimes they were mere puppets who had been honoured with the rank of ministers.

Working of the administration.

The working of the administration during the reign of Akber is far from clear. It is hidden behind a veil of fulsome flattery. It was not until the reigns of his successors that European observers saw the working of Moghul rule with

their own eyes. Three institutions were in full force throughout the reign. They were known as the Jharokha, the Durbar, and the Ghusal-khana. They serve to show the daily life of Akber and his court ; fuller details will appear in the after history.

The Jharokha was a window at the back of the palace ; or rather at the back of the Mahal or harem. It overlooked a plain below. At this window Akber appeared every morning and worshipped the sun ; the multitude thronged the plain below to worship Akber. Later in the morning Akber appeared again at the window. He was entertained with the combats of animals in the plain below. Sometimes he inspected troops, horses, elephants, camels, and animals of all descriptions from this window.

The Durbar was in the front quarter of the palace facing the city. It was a hall of public audience within a large court. Every day Akber sat upon his throne at the back of the Durbar hall. He gave audience to all comers. He disposed of petitions ; he administered justice ; he received Rajas, Amirs, and ambassadors ; he issued orders to his ministers. All the grandees at court were bound to attend him at the Jharokha and Durbar.

The Ghusal-khana was a private assembly. It was held in the evening in a pavilion behind the Durbar court. None were admitted excepting the ministers and such grandees as were invited to attend. Sometimes the gathering resembled a privy council ; at other times it was an assembly of grandees and learned men.

Much stress has been laid upon the employment of Hindús by Akber. The fact is he had no alternative. He had been compelled to call in the Raj-

CHAPTER IV.
Moghul institutions.

CHAPTER IV. poot element to overawe the Afghans ; in like manner he found it necessary to employ Hindús to check the maladministration of his Amírs. He could not trust his Amírs. Those who were lax and indifferent in religious matters were treacherous, grasping, and untrustworthy. Those who were strict Mussulmans were ever ready to rebel against him. He engaged a Hindú named Todar Mal to make a revenue settlement ; to fix the yearly payments to be made by the holders of land. This settlement has been greatly lauded ; it is famous to this day ; it was the one thing to which landholders and cultivators could appeal against the rapacity of collectors. The character of Todar Mal is a mystery. He was praised to the skies by Abul Fazl ; he was denounced as bigoted and superstitious by other contemporaries.⁶⁷

*Khalisa lands
and Jaghir
lands.*

All the lands in the empire were the property of the Padishah.⁶⁸ Some he kept as his own domain ; they were known as Khálisa, or crown lands ; they paid a yearly rent to the crown. The remaining lands were parcelled out as Jaghírs. These Jaghírs were grants given in lieu of salary ; they were sometimes given for the maintenance of a quota or an army. Jaghírs were given to viceroys, governors, ministers, and grandees ; they were also

⁶⁷ See Blockmann's *Aín-i-Akbari* ; No. 39 in Abul Fazl's list of Amírs and Mansubdars. History teaches that unless native administration is kept under European supervision it is accompanied by grave evils. Nothing can have been more productive of tyranny and oppression than the way in which districts and villages in the Dekhan and Peninsula were farmed out to Bráhmans during the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries. It mattered not whether the head of the state was a Mussulman Sultan or a Hindú Raja ; the oppression was the same.

⁶⁸ This fact is the foundation of the Moghul system of administration. An exception proves the rule. Bernier states that sometimes the grandees were permitted to hold small pieces of land as sites for houses and gardens. Such holdings were liable to be confiscated by the Padishah like other property.

given to queens and princesses in the imperial CHAPTER IV.
harem. Every Jaghír paid a fixed yearly rent to
the Padishah ; all that could be collected above this
amount belonged to the Jaghírdar, or holder of the
Jaghír.

Badauni describes the working of the administration under Todar Mal. There was no lack of revenue work. All lands were measured, whether in town or country, dry or irrigated, cultivated or uncultivated. Every piece of land, calculated to yield a yearly income of twenty-five thousand rupees, was placed under the charge of an officer known as a Krori.⁶⁹ The object was to bring uncultivated lands into cultivation within three years. Security was taken from each Krori that such would be done. Regulations were made ; of course they were disregarded. The rapacity of the Kroris laid the country waste ; they sold the wives and children of the ryots ; they threw everything into confusion. Many of the Kroris were brought to account by Raja Todar Mal ; many good men were beaten to death or tortured to death with the rack and pincers.⁷⁰ Many died from long confinement in the prisons of the revenue officers ; there was no need of executioners or swordsmen ; no one cared to find them graves or grave-clothes. They resembled the de-

⁶⁹ This officer was called a Krori because twenty-five thousand rupees are equal to a crore, or million of dams. The term rupee is used in the text as being a more familiar word to European readers. In English money twenty-five thousand rupees would be equivalent to two thousand five hundred pounds. The dam was a copper coin corresponding to the modern pice. Forty dams went to a rupee. The Moghuls liked to talk big. They would not say twenty-five thousand rupees ; they preferred saying a crore of dams.—Ain-i-Akbari, Ain 2. The comparison between the inflated exaggerations of Abul Fazl and the evident truthfulness of Badauni is very amusing.

⁷⁰ By "good men" Badauni probably meant good Mussulmans. It is evident to modern readers that "the good men" were grinding oppressors.

CHAPTER IV. ~~vout~~ Hindús of Kamrup ; they gave themselves up to a year of enjoyment ; they then threw themselves under the wheels of their idol car.⁷¹

Army administration.

Badauni furnishes a graphic picture of the mal-administration of the Moghul army in the reign of Akber. The Amírs were wicked and rebellious ; they spent large sums on stores and work-shops ; they amassed wealth ; they had no leisure to look after the troops ; they took no interest in the people. Regulations were introduced for branding horses and holding frequent musters ; they were of no avail. The Amírs borrowed horses for the musters ; the horses were branded and returned to their owners ; they were never seen again. The Amírs mounted slaves and the dregs of people to serve as soldiers at the musters. Akber was aware of this cheating and chicanery ; he deemed it politic to wink at it. Badauni was a staunch Mussulman ; he hated the innovations of Akber ; he told the plain truth. All that he has stated is more than confirmed by European observers in the reigns of Jehangír and Shah Jehan.⁷²

Lahore.

Akber dwelt many years at Lahore. There he seems to have reached the height of human felicity. A proverb became current, "As happy as Akber." He established his authority in Kábul and Bengal. He added Kashmír to his dominions. His empire was as large as that of Asoka. He further contemplated the conquest of the Dekhan.⁷³

⁷¹ See Badauni's History in Elliot's History of India, vol. v.

⁷² Compare translated extract from Badauni in Blockmann's *Ain-i-Akbari*, page 242. Also Bernier's description of the Moghul administration in chapter vi. of the present volume.

⁷³ In 1585 there was a disastrous campaign against the Yusufzais, in which eight thousand of Akber's soldiers were killed, including Bir Bar the Brahman. See Badauni, quoted by Mr Blockmann.

The Dekhan table land formed a square, with a CHAPTER IV.
 kingdom lying in each of the four angles. On the ^{The Dekhan.} north were Ahmadnagar and Berar; on the south were Bijápur and Golkonda. Akber had conquered Guzerat and Malwa, to the northward of the Nerbudda river. He had also conquered Khandesh. The kingdom of Khandesh occupied an important position. It lay immediately to the south of the Nerbudda river. Geographically it belongs to the Dekhan; politically it was a half-way house between Hindustan and the four kingdoms of the Dekhan. It was, in fact, the key to the Dekhan. It was governed by its own ruler, Bahadur Khan; he owed allegiance to the Padishah; he was far from loyal to his suzerain.

Akber had always kept his eye on the march of events in the Dekhan. In the ninth year of his reign the four Sultans had overthrown the Hindú kingdom of Vijayanagar. Subsequently they had been engaged in wars or intrigues amongst themselves. In 1572 the Sultan of Ahmadnagar had conquered and annexed Berár; he thus set up a strong barrier against the advance of the Moghuls into the south. Akber was angered by this annexation, but he could not interfere.

Subsequently Ahmadnagar drifted into anarchy. ^{Anarchy in Ahmadnagar} Its annals are a mere record of drunkenness, treachery, slaughter, and indescribable crimes; they will serve as a type of the current of affairs in the other Mussulman kingdoms of the Dekhan. In 1586 a Sultan of Ahmadnagar was murdered by his son; he was shut up in a hot bath and suffocated to death. The parricide ascended the throne by the aid of his minister. In one day

CHAPTER IV. the parricide slaughtered fifteen of his nearest male kinsmen. He was nearly always drunk. His chief amusement was to ride through Ahmadnagar with drunken companions, and hunt down all who came in his way. He grew jealous of his minister. In his drunken fits he would threaten to behead the minister, or to have him trampled to death by elephants. The minister knew what was going on; he suddenly arrested the Sultan; he placed a boy of twelve, named Ismail, upon the throne of Ahmadnagar.⁷⁴

Dekhanis and
Foreigners :
Sunnis and
Shiahs.

At this crisis Ahmadnagar was distracted by the quarrels between the Dekhanis and Foreigners. The Dekhanis, including the Abyssinians, were led by a fanatic of the Mahdi sect, an expectant of the millennium.⁷⁵ They demanded the restoration of the imprisoned Sultan. The minister thought to quell the riot by cutting off the head of the Sultan and exposing it on a bastion of the palace. The sight only drove the rioters to madness. They set the palace on fire. They slaughtered every Foreigner they could find. They plundered the houses of the Shiahs. "Virgins who concealed their faces from the sun and moon were dragged by the hair into the assemblies of the drunken." The minister was taken prisoner and paraded through the city on an ass. He was then cut into pieces, which were fixed on different buildings within the city.

Sultan of
Ahmadnagar.

At last things quieted down. The Dekhanis accepted Ismail as their Sultan. He was a nephew of the parricide, and consequently a prince of the blood-

⁷⁴ Ferishta's History of Ahmadnagar.

⁷⁵ The Dekhanis were Sunnis. The Sunnis were as inclined as the Shiahs to believe in the advent of Mahdi, and approved of the millennium.

royal. But Ismail had a father, named Burhan, CHAPTER IV. who was a refugee at the court of Akber. Akber offered to place Burhan on the throne of Ahmadnagar. Burhan replied that if the Moghuls helped him, the people of Ahmadnagar would resist him. Burhan went alone to the Dekhan; he was joined by many of the nobles. In the end the Mahdi fanatic was killed; Ismail was imprisoned; the father succeeded to the throne of his son.

During the reign of Burhan, Akber sent ambassadors to the Sultans of the Dekhan to invite them to accept him as their suzerain. In return he would uphold them on their thrones; he would prevent all internecine wars. One and all refused to pay allegiance to the Moghul. Akber was wroth at the refusal. He sent his son Murad to command in Guzerat; he ordered Murad to seize the first opportunity for interfering in the affairs of Ahmadnagar.

The moment soon arrived. Burhan died in 1594. A war ensued between rival claimants for the throne. The minister was at variance with the queen dowager. The minister invited Murad to interfere. Murad advanced to Ahmadnagar. Meantime the minister and queen came to terms; they united to resist the Moghuls. The queen dowager, known as Chand Bibi, arrayed herself in armour; she veiled her face, and led the troops in person. The Moghuls were driven back. At last a compromise was effected. Berar was ceded to the Padishah; Murad retired from Ahmadnagar.⁷⁶

Akber's policy towards the Dekhan.

⁷⁶ Chānd Bībī was a heroine of Mussulman story. She was the daughter of a Sultan of Ahmadnagar. In 1564 she had been given in marriage to Ali Adil Shah of Bijapur, in order to cement the league against the Rai of Vijayanagar. She was left a widow at an early age, and passed through strange experiences as queen regent of Bijapur. On one occasion she was imprisoned in a fortress. In

CHAPTER IV. - About this time a strange event took place at Lahore. On Easter Sunday, 1597, the Padishah was celebrating the Nau-roz, or feast of the new year, in honour of the Sun. Tented pavilions were set up in a large plain. An image of the Sun, fashioned of gold and jewels, was placed upon a throne. Suddenly a thunderbolt fell from the skies. The throne was overturned. The royal pavilion was set on fire; the flames spread throughout the camp; the whole was burnt to the ground. The fire reached the city and burnt down the palace. Nearly everything was consumed. The imperial treasures were melted down, and molten gold and silver ran through the streets of Lahore.

**Religious
doubts of
Akber.**

This portentous disaster made a deep impression on Akber. He went away to Kashmír; he took one of the Christian Fathers with him. He began to question the propriety of his new religion; he could not bring himself to retract; certainly not to become an open Christian. When the summer was over he returned to Lahore.⁷⁷

1584 her niece was given in marriage to her brother, who had become Sultan of Ahmadnagar. Chánd Bibí accompanied her niece to Ahmadnagar, and henceforth took up her abode there. In 1586 her brother, the husband of her niece, was suffocated by his son in a hot bath-room, as related in the text. "At the time she headed the troops against the Moghuls she must have been nearly fifty years of age. Father Catrou tells a romantic story of her being taken into the harem of Akber; he adds that the fact is not recorded in the Moghul chronicles. It will be seen afterwards that she was murdered by her own soldiers. Akber, as already seen, prohibited all intercourse with women of mature years.

⁷⁷ Kashmír must have seemed like a paradise to the Christian Father. Purchas drew up a description of Kashmír from the Portuguese authorities, which is so quaint and graphic as to be worthy of extract:—"Kashmir yields not to any Indian region in goodliness and wholesomeness. It is encompassed with high mountains, which for most part of the year are covered with snow. It is a delicate valley, diversified with pastures, fields, woods, gardens, parks, springs and rivers, even to admiration. It is cool and more temperate than the kingdom of Thibet, which adjoins it on the east. Three leagues from Kashmír is a deep

In 1598 Akber left Lahore and set out for Agra. He was displeased with the conduct of the war in the Dekhan. His son Murád was a drunkard. The Commander-in-Chief, known as the Khan Khanán, who accompanied Murád, was intriguing and treacherous; he had probably been bribed by the Dekhanis.⁷⁸ Abul Fazl was still the trusted servant and friend; he had been raised to the rank of commander of Two thousand five hundred. Akber had already recalled the Khan Khanán. He now sent Abul Fazl into the Dekhan, to bring away Murád, or to send him away, as should seem most expedient.

Abul Fazl departed on his mission. He arrived at Burhanpur, the capital of Khandesh. He soon discovered the lukewarmness of Bahadur Khan the ruler. He insisted that Bahadur Khan should join him, and help the imperial cause. Bahadur Khan was disinclined to help Akber to conquer the Dekhan. He thought to back out by sending rich presents to Abul Fazl. Abul Fazl was too loyal to be bribed; he returned the presents and went alone towards Ahmadnagar.

Meanwhile Murád was retreating from Ahmadnagar. He encamped in Berár; he drank more deeply than ever; he died suddenly the very day that Abul Fazl came up. The death of Murád re-

lake, beset round with trees, with an island in the midst, on which Akber built a palace. The country had a store of rice and wheat; also vines, which they plant at the foot of the mulberry; the same tree seeming to bear two fruits. Had not the people been at contentions amongst themselves Akber could never have conquered so strong a kingdom. In times past the people were all Hindás; but three hundred years before Akber most of them became Mussulmans."

⁷⁸ This Khan Khanán played an important part during the reign of Jehangir. His name was Mirza Abdurrahim; he was the son of Bairam Khan, the guardian of Akber.

CHAPTER IV. moved one complication ; but it led to the question of advance. The imperial officers urged a retreat. Abul Fazl refused to retreat. He had been bred in a cloister ; he was approaching his fiftieth year ; he had never before been in active service ; but he had the spirit of a soldier ; he refused to retreat from an enemy's country ; he pushed manfully on for Ahmadnagar. His efforts were rewarded with success. The queen regent was assailed by other enemies, and yielded to her fate. She agreed that if Abul Fazl would punish her enemies, she would surrender the fortress of Ahmadnagar.

Akber invades
the Dekhan.

Tidings had now reached Akber that his son Murád was dead. He resolved to go in person to the Dekhan. He left his eldest son Selim in charge of the government. He sent an advance force under his other son Danyál, associated with the Khan Khanán. The advance force reached Burhanpur. There the disloyalty of Bahadur Khan was manifest ; he refused to pay his respects to Danyál.⁷⁹ Akber was encamped at Ujain when the news reached him. He ordered Abul Fazl to join him ; he ordered Danyál to go on to Ahmadnagar ; he then prepared for the subjugation of Bahadur Khan.

Military opera-
tions.

The story of the operations may be told in a few words. Danyál advanced to Ahmadnagar. Chánd Bíbí was slaughtered by her own soldiers. Ahmadnagar was occupied by the Moghuls. Meanwhile Bahadur Khan abandoned Burhanpur and took refuge in the strong fortress of Asírghur. Akber was joined by Abul Fazl and laid siege to Asírghur.

⁷⁹ This is a well-known game with the feudatory princes in India. When inclined to grow disaffected towards the paramount power they begin to show a want of respect. They excuse themselves under the plea of sickness.

The siege lasted six months. At last Bahadur Khan surrendered ; his life was spared ; henceforth he fades away from history.

So far Akber had prospered ; he had conquered the great highway into the Dekhan—Malwa, Khandesh, Berár, and Ahmadnagar. He raised Abul Fazl to the command of Four thousand. He resolved on conquering the Dekhan. He was about to strike when his arm was arrested. His eldest son Selim had broken out in revolt. He had gone to Allahabad and assumed the title of Padishah.

Akber returned alone to Agra ; he was falling on evil days. He effected a reconciliation with Selim ; he saw that Selim was still rebellious at heart ; that his best officers were inclining towards his undutiful son. In his perplexity he sent to the Dekhan for Abul Fazl. The trusted servant hastened to join his imperial master. But Selim had always hated Abul Fazl. He instigated a Rajpoot chief of Bundelkund to way-lay Abul Fazl. This chief was Bir Singh of Urchah. Bir Singh fell upon Abul Fazl near Nawar, killed him, and sent his head to Selim. Bir Singh fled from the wrath of the Padishah ; he led the life of an outlaw in the jungle until he heard of the death of Akber.

Akber was deeply wounded by the murder of Abul Fazl. He thereby lost his chief support, his best and trusted friend. Henceforth he seemed to yield to circumstances rather than to struggle against the world. Other misfortunes befell him. His mother died. His youngest son Danyál killed himself with drink in the Dekhan. His own life was beginning to draw to a close.

The last events in the reign of Akber are ob-

CHAPTER IV.

Murder of Abul Fazl.

Evil days.

CHAPTER IV. *scure.* Outwardly he became reconciled to Selim.
Death of Akber, Outwardly he abandoned scepticism and heresy ;
 1605 : investiture of Selim. he professed himself a Mussulman. At heart he was anxious that Selim should be set aside ; that Khuzru, the eldest son of Selim, should succeed him on the throne. It is impossible to unravel the intrigues that filled the court at Agra. At last Akber was smitten with mortal disease. For some days Selim was refused admittance to his father's chamber. In the end there was a compromise. Selim swore to maintain the Mussulman religion. He also swore to pardon his son Khuzru, and all who had supported Khuzru. He was then brought into the presence of Akber. The old Padishah was past all speech. He made a sign with his hand that Selim should take the imperial diadem, and gird on the imperial sword. Selim obeyed. He prostrated himself upon the ground before the couch of his dying father ; he touched the ground with his head. He then left the chamber. A few hours passed away, and Akber was dead. He died in October, 1605, aged sixty-three.⁸⁰

Burial of Akber. The burial of Akber was performed after a simple fashion. His grave was prepared in a garden at Secundra, about four miles from Agra.

⁸⁰ The disease of which Akber died is a mystery. It should be explained that Selim succeeded Akber on the throne under the name of Jehangir. There is a diffuse account of the sickness and death of Akber in the Autobiography of Jehangir ; it is obscure and unsatisfactory ; there is evidently something which the author of the Autobiography wishes to conceal. Father Catrou reveals the fact ; Akber had taken one of the poisoned pills. This is confirmed by Tavernier. Whether the pill was taken by accident or given to Akber by design can never be positively known. The language of the Autobiography excites dark suspicions. Hakim Ali, the doctor of Akber, was accused of having grossly erred in his prescriptions. "Jehangir refused to have him punished." (See Autobiography, page 71.) It is impossible to avoid the conclusion that the pill was given to Akber by Hakim Ali at the instigation of Jehangir. That Jehangir was capable of such a crime will be proved by the history of his reign.

The body was placed upon a bier. Selim and his CHAPTER IV. three sons carried it out of the fortress. The young princes, assisted by the officers of the imperial household, carried it to Secundra. Seven days were spent in mourning over the grave. Provisions and sweetmeats were distributed amongst the poor every morning and evening throughout the mourning. Twenty readers were appointed to recite the Koran by the grave every night without ceasing. Finally, the foundations were laid of that splendid mausoleum, which is known far and wide as the tomb of Akber.

The death of Akber brings the first act of ^{State of the empire.} Moghul history to a close. The Moghul empire was a thing accomplished; for a century and a half it was held together by the prestige of its name. Meantime the British were beginning to appear in India. Throughout the previous century the Portuguese had held the monopoly of the Indian trade. Before the death of Akber they were in friendly alliance with the Great Moghul. But Dutchmen and Englishmen were already spying out the land. In 1599 the merchants of London subscribed a capital of thirty thousand pounds. In 1600 the East India Company obtained its first charter from Queen Elizabeth. In 1601 the first ships were despatched from England to open up a trade in the Eastern seas. It was not, however, until the year 1608 that an Englishman of any mark reached the court at ~~Agra~~. Meanwhile the Moghul empire moved along. Selim ascended the throne at Agra under the name of Jehangir, "the conqueror of the world." The people filled the air with acclamations. The Amirs and Rajas of the empire prostrated

CHAPTER IV. themselves before the new Padishah. The imperial kettle-drums were beaten for forty days. Every night the palace was illuminated with thousands of lights; to all outward seeming every heart was filled with gaiety and joy.

CHAPTER V.

THE MOGHUL EMPIRE : JEHANGIR.

A. D. 1605 TO 1627.

JEHANGIR was a different man from Akber. CHAPTER V.
He inherited all his father's weaknesses but none of his strength. So far he was a caricature of Akber. ^{Jehangir, a caricature of Akber.} He had vices of his own. He was childish, untruthful, and selfish ; he was cruel, unscrupulous, and besotted.¹

Akber was a good type of a Moghul. He was simple and abstemious ; he cared little for pomp or show. He was proud of his strength of limb, his sporting feats, his mastery over elephants, his hard riding on horses and dromedaries. He was generous and forgiving. He was somewhat spoilt by flattery ; his head was turned by religious disputes. Otherwise he was a Moghul hero ; in an earlier age he might have grown into a demi-god. To this day he is the ideal sovereign of India ; just as Queen Elizabeth is the ideal sovereign of England. Scandal has been busy with the fame of both. Both were occasionally imperious and tyrannical ; both

¹ Jehangir had a Rajpoot mother ; Hindú blood was running in his veins. It may be a question whether he did not inherit some of his vices from his mother rather than from his father.

CHAPTER V. have been charged with illicit amours ; but both have stood high in popular favour. To this day there is no sovereign so renowned in India as Akber ; he was no fanatic ; he dealt even-handed justice to all races and creeds. Even Mussulman bigots, who were furious at his heresies, were slow to condemn him. They said he was the dupe of Abul Fazl.²

Character of Je-hangir.

Jehangir was a Moghul of a far lower type. He liked hunting ; he played at war ; he was greedy of praise ; he had a passion for dress and jewels ; he was fond of eating and drinking ; he had neither self-restraint nor self-respect ; he was governed only by his fears ; he was utterly regardless of his word ; he had no sense of shame. He had feigned a zeal for Islam. He had rebelled against his father in the name of Islam. He had murdered Abul Fazl for the sake of Islam. He had gained the throne by swearing to maintain Islam. He preferred Mussulmans to Rajpoots, because the Mussulmans had helped him to rebel, whilst the Rajpoots were staunch to Akber. Yet, in spite of all this, his whole life was a revolt against the Koran. He had a Rajpoot taste for boar's flesh, strong drink, and

² It has already been seen that Rajpoot traditions accuse Akber of sensuality and adultery. (See *ante*, vol. iii. chap. 7.) The current story of the revolt of Jehangir against Akber shows the dark side of both son and father. When Jehangir revolted he followed the example of Absalom ; he dishonoured a favourite wife of Akber, known as the "Pomegranate." Subsequently Akber pledged himself to pardon Jehangir. The prince relied on his father's promise, and sent in his submission. He was brought into the presence of Akber in the Ghusal-khana. Akber led Jehangir into the Mahal, or harem. There he forgot his promise ; he broke into a violent rage ; he clenched his fist at Jehangir ; he struck his son on the mouth so hard and so often that Jehangir threw himself on the ground. Akber called Jehangir a fool and an ass for having believed in his promise. (See Herbert's Travels. Folio, pages 71, 72 : London, 1638.) Mr Terry confirms the evidence of Herbert as regards the "Pomegranate." Further evidence against Akber is given by Asad Beg. Elliot's History, vol. vi.

pictures of men, women, and animals. He would CHAPTER V. not keep the Mussulman fasts. At a later period he favoured Christianity. His leanings towards Christianity will demand attention hereafter.

The outward life of *Jehangir* was much the same <sup>Outward life of
Jehangir.</sup> as the outward life of Akber. The Jharokha window, the Durbar court, and the Ghusal-khana, were the daily centres of attraction. The Padishah was compelled to show himself constantly to the multitude. Unless the people saw for themselves that he was still alive the country would be in an uproar. Every morning the crowd assembled beneath the Jharokha window to make their saláms to *Jehangir* as they had done to Akber. At noon there were the same parades, sports, games, and fights between animals, as in the days of Akber. Still there was a contrast between Akber and *Jehangir*. Akber was slow to condemn men to death. *Jehangir* condemned hundreds without inquiry; he revelled in seeing them executed; he looked on whilst elephants threw their victims in the air, or broke their bones, or trampled them under foot; he took pleasure in combats between naked men and hungry tigers.³ Akber tried to restrict prostitution; *Jehangir* kept courtesans to sing and dance in Durbar.⁴ Akber was a sober-minded sovereign,

³ See Captain Hawkins's Narrative in Kerr's Collection of Voyages, vol. viii. Hawkins tells horrible stories, in which brave men were forced to wrestle with tigers without weapons of any kind. Numbers were killed. Wounded men were put to death lest they should live to curse the Padishah.

⁴ Bernier relates a story which illustrates the coarseness of *Jehangir* and his court. A French physician named Bernard was in great favour with *Jehangir*. He fell in love with a dancing-girl of the palace; her mother refused all overtures. He went to the Durbar and asked *Jehangir* to give him the girl. *Jehangir* assented with a laugh. He told Bernard to carry her away on his shoulders. The Frenchman had no shame, and obeyed. Such a proceeding would not have been countenanced by Akber.

CHAPTER V. who surrounded himself with sages and philosophers. Jehangír was a drunken prince, who stooped to gossip with boon companions. Akber sat talking with learned men until early morning. Jehangír stupefied himself with wine and opium, gabbled till he was maudlin, and slumbered where he fell.

*Revolt of
Khuzru : hor-
rible cruelties.*

Six months after the accession of Jehangír, his eldest son Khuzru broke out in revolt. Khuzru had been nominated by Akber to succeed him on the throne. He had been supported by the Rajpoot party who opposed the succession of Jehangír. He was inclined to Christianity.⁵ He was in mortal fear of his father. He was afraid that some day he would be deprived of his eyes, or perhaps strangled.⁶ He fled from Agra towards the Punjab. Numbers joined him. He besieged Lahore; he failed to capture the fortress. Jehangír pursued Khuzru with a large army; he sent on men to scare the rebels with rumours of his coming. The rebellion was soon broken up. Khuzru tried to escape to Persia as Humáyun had done. He was betrayed in Kábúl, and sent in fetters to his father. Jehangír wreaked his wrath upon the rebels. Hundreds were flayed alive, made over to the elephants, or dragged through rivers. Hundreds were impaled on sharp stakes.⁷ Khuzru was led past the lines of stakes;

⁵ Roe says that Khuzru was a great friend to Christians. Catrou says that he was married to one wife and refused to marry a second. These points will be reviewed hereafter. Khuzru appears to have headed the anti-Mussulman party, whilst Jehangír sided with the Mussulmans.

⁶ Khuzru had good reasons for his fears. Shah Abbas, the sovereign of Persia, the contemporary of Akber and Johangír, had put his eldest son to death, and blinded two younger sons, on the bare suspicion that they might rebel. Jehangír plainly indicates in his Memoirs of himself (page 68), that he would be quite justified in putting his sons to death under like circumstances.

⁷ Jehangír relates these sickening details in his Memoirs (see pages 84—88). He evidently gloated over the sufferings of the rebels.

he was forced to hear the shrieks of his followers, CHAPTER V.
to witness their last agonies. His life was spared ;
he was kept a close prisoner. With rare exceptions
he lingered in captivity for the rest of his days.

Outwardly Jehangír was more inclined to Christianity than his father Akber. • Like him, he allowed the Portuguese to establish churches and schools, to preach where they pleased, to convert whom they pleased. He sent two nephews, the sons of his brother Danyál, to be instructed in Christianity. He listened to the Fathers until they thought they had converted him. He passed the line which Akber never passed. His two nephews became open Christians. They were conducted on elephants through the streets of Agra, and publicly baptized by the Fathers.

Every one was mystified at this action. It was easy to understand why Jehangír favoured Christianity ; it did not oblige him to fast ; it allowed him to eat pork and drink wine. The public baptism was a riddle ; it was unexpectedly solved. The princes asked the Fathers for Portuguese wives ; they wanted to be married like Christians, and to live like Christians. The Fathers were aghast at the request ; they chid the princes for making it. The princes returned their crosses and breviaries ; they relapsed into Islam. It turned out that Jehangír had commanded them to ask for wives ; he wanted Portuguese women for his own harem.⁸

A profound lesson underlies this incident. The ^{The lesson.} intrigue of Jehangír may be dismissed ; it only be-

⁸ See Sir Thomas Roe's letter to the Archbishop of Canterbury, dated 30th October, 1616. Pinkerton's Collection of Travels, vol. viii. Father Catrou tells a similar story.

CHAPTER V. trays the depraved working of his mind. The alleged conversion of the two princes opens up a new field of inquiry. It reveals a bar which shuts the people of India out of Christianity. It furnishes one reason why Hindús can become Musulmans but cannot easily become Christians.

Marriage difficulties in conversion.

If the two Moghul princes had been sincere Christians they could not have remained so without Christian wives. A Hindú or Mussulman wife would have played havoc with the new faith. Akber's Hindú wives weaned him from Islam ; his Mussulman wives kept him from becoming an open Christian. No Portuguese of pure blood would have given a daughter in marriage to a Moghul ; there was no guarantee that the Moghul would not relapse, marry other wives, and force his Christian wife to accept Islam. No Moghul would have married a Portuguese half-caste ; the Moghul princes wanted white-complexioned wives. No young Moghuls would lead a life of celibacy ; by giving up Christianity they obtained as many wives as they pleased.

Hindús barred against Christianity.

The conversion of a young Hindú to Christianity is attended with graver evils. Every Hindú boy is married whilst still a child. His conversion stops the completion of the marriage. He has become an out-caste. Christianity cannot give him a wife without breaking the law of marriage.⁹ Whether he marries or whether he refrains, the girl to whom he is bound for life is the sufferer. She cannot

⁹ By the law of marriage is meant the law which prevents a Christian from putting away his wife excepting for adultery. Protestant missionaries urge that they do not recognize child-marriages ; they deny that such marriages are binding unless they have been completed at the age of maturity. The parents, however, on either side consider that the marriage is binding upon the children ; if the boy-husband becomes a Christian the girl-wife becomes a widow. According to Hindú law widows never marry.

marry the Christian ; she can marry no one else ; henceforth she is doomed to a life of joyless widowhood.¹⁰

When a Hindú becomes a Mussulman he makes no such sacrifices. He breaks no law by taking other wives. Some Hindús may have become Mussulmans in order to obtain more wives. At this moment there are many millions of Mussulmans in India ; there are few native Christians. How far this result is due to the marriage difficulty must be a matter of opinion.

From the beginning of the reign of Jehangir the English element was at work in India. It struggled hard against the Portuguese element. The Portuguese had traded in India for more than a century. They had been friendly with Akber ; they were friends with Jehangir. At first the English avoided the Indian continent ; they traded with the islands of the Indian Archipelago. But the collision was inevitable. The English were bent on opening a trade at Surat, a port which had been a centre of trade for ages. Surat is on the western coast ; it is a hundred and eighty miles to the north of Bombay ; it is twenty miles up the

¹⁰ As a matter of fact, whenever a young Hindú is converted two persons are condemned to celibacy, two families are plunged in misery. The suffering of Protestant families at the conversion of one of its members to Roman Catholicism is small in comparison with the suffering of Hindú families at the conversion of a son to Christianity.

The author has been assured that there are conversions which entail no such misery. It may be so as far as the convert is concerned. The young girl-wife, however, is doomed to be a widow all her days. She may be given to another man. No respectable Hindú will regard her as a wife.

Some years ago the British legislature sought to relieve the converted husband. If the girl after due probation declared that she would not live with him the marriage was treated as null and void. It thus provided a relief for the husband ; it could not possibly relieve the widow.

Easy converts
to Islam.

CHAPTER V. river Taptí. In 1608 Captain Hawkins went to Surat in the ship "Hector;" he carried a letter from James the First to Jehangír. The Moghuls were afraid of the guns of the "Hector;" they were civil to Hawkins. Mukarrab Khan, viceroy of Guzerat, came to Surat and bought many things of Hawkins. The Portuguese at Surat thwarted Hawkins in every possible way. They bribed Mukarrab Khan; they jeered at James the First as a King of fishermen; they scoffed at Great Britain as a contemptible island. They captured an English boat; they did not dare attack the "Hector." In the end Hawkins loaded his ship and sent her back to England. When the "Hector" had gone, Mukarrab Khan refused to pay for the goods he had purchased. At last Hawkins secured an escort to protect him against robbers, and found his way to Agra.

Mission of Captain Hawkins.

Jehangír took a great fancy to Hawkins. He granted every request at once. He would permit the English to set up a factory at Surat; he would protect them against oppressions and exactions. He promoted Hawkins to the rank or command of Four hundred horse. He offered a wife to Hawkins; a "white maiden" of the palace, who was to be baptized for the purpose. Hawkins declined the "white maiden;" he married an Armenian lady; he settled at Agra to promote the interest of the English Company. For two years Hawkins was in daily attendance at the palace. He drank with Jehangír in the Ghusal-khana.¹¹ He answered a thousand questions about Europe and her princes.¹²

¹¹ It is a strange feature in Moghul life that the sovereign should hold his evening assemblies in his Ghusal-khana, or bath-room. Some one describes the bath itself; it was made of gold and studded with rubies and emeralds. The reference has been mislaid.

¹² Father Catrou states that during the reign of Jehangír all the Franks in

Hawkins complained to Jehangir of the oppressions of Mukarrab Khan. A host of charges were soon brought against the Guzerat viceroy. He had extorted money; he had committed outrages. He had seized a Hindú girl under pretence of sending her to the Padishah; he had kept her himself. Mukarrab Khan was summoned to Agra; he was "squeezed" in Moghul fashion; all his goods were confiscated. Still Mukarrab Khan bribed freely. In the end he was restored to his government; he revenged himself upon Hawkins. He promised to bring rubies from Goa if Jehangir would prohibit the English from trading. Other Amirs joined in the outcry against the English. One declared that if the English got a footing in India they would soon become masters.¹³ Jehangir got alarmed; he withdrew all his promises; he forbade the English to trade in India. In 1611 Hawkins and his wife went away from Agra; the labour of two years had been thrown away.¹⁴

Hawkins sent home wonderful stories of the Great Moghul. Jehangir had a yearly revenue of Hawkins's account of Jehangir.

Agra had access to the palace. The name of Franks includes all Europeans, whatever may be their nation. Jehangir drank all night with the Franks; he delighted in doing so when Mussulmans were obliged to fast. If any Mussulmans were present they were compelled to drink likewise.

¹³ This prophecy will appear extraordinary to those who are not familiar with the current of thought in India. Europeans have always been respected so long as they continue to be Europeans. The ambition of all educated natives is to appear in public as much as possible like Europeans. These sentiments were just as strong when the Moghuls were in the zenith of their power, as they are in the present day. The Amir in Jehangir's court saw that the Englishman was strong and white-complexioned; his fears were shared by his countrymen.

¹⁴ Hawkins has no further place in history. He joined another merchant adventurer at Cambay. He undertook trading voyages to the Indian Archipelago. He returned to his native land, but died off the coast of Ireland. His Armenian wife married again in England. The best account of Hawkins's career is to be found in Kerr's Voyages, vol. viii. Further particulars will be found in Purchas's Pilgrims.

CHAPTER V. fifty millions sterling.¹⁵ He spent eight thousand pounds a day on himself and women. He had more than twenty millions of treasure at all his great fortresses ;—Agra, Delhi, Lahore, and Ajmír. He had thousands of elephants, horses, camels, mules, antelopes, hawks, pigeons, and singing-birds. He had hundreds of lions, buffaloes, hunting-dogs, and ounces. He could arm twenty-five thousand men at an hour's notice. His nobles could furnish three hundred thousand horsemen at a week's warning. The officers of his court and camp numbered thirty-six thousand. He inherited the wealth of all his nobles. He took a present from every one who came before him. At every new year and at every imperial birthday the nobles strove to outdo each other in the richness of their presents. The vice-roys of provinces “squeezed” their subjects to purchase court favour. They were often called to court and “squeezed” in their turn. The Padishah was the sovereign lord of all. His will was law. He was absolute master of all the land in the empire. He could give what he pleased ; he could take what he pleased.

Jehangir removes to Ajmir.

After Hawkins's departure Jehangír left Agra. He removed to Ajmír in Rajpootana, the half-way house between Delhi and Ujain. His daily life was the same round of court routine ; the Jharókha window at day-break and noon ; the Durbar court in the afternoon ; the Ghusal-khana in the evening. Jehangír was at this time a stout man of forty-

* This income must have appeared incredible in Europe. The revenue of England and Scotland was about a million ; that of Louis the Fourteenth was about five millions. Further particulars will be found in Mr Thomas's *Essay on the Revenue Resources of the Moghul Empire*. London : 1871.

five.¹⁶ He was the sovereign lord of Hindustan; he CHAPTER V.
was the willing slave of a vicious and vindictive
woman named Núr Mahal.¹⁷

¹⁶ Hawkins was at Agra about 1608—11. Coryat, who was at Agra about 1615, says that Jehangir was fifty-three. There are always contradictory accounts as to the age of a Moghul sovereign.

¹⁷ See Hawkins in Kerr, vol. viii. Núr Mahal is a heroine in *Lalla Rookh*. She appears as the Light of the Harem. Moore's poetry is pretty, his oriental characters are Europeans in fancy costume. Núr Mahal signifies the "Light of the Harem." Jehangir afterwards changed her name to Núr Jehan, i.e. the "Light of the World."

Hawkins' description of Jehangir is worth extracting. "Concerning the king's religion and behaviour it is thus. In the morning about break of day, he is at his beads, his face to the westward [i. e. towards Mecca] in a private fair room upon a fair jet stone, having only a Persian lambskin under him. He hath eight chains of beads, every one of which contains four hundred ; they are of pearls, diamonds, rubies, emeralds, lignum aloes, eshen [?] and coral. At the upper end of this jet stone are placed the images of Christ and our Lady, graven in stone. He turneth over his beads, and saith so many words, to wit, three thousand two hundred words. [Jehangir refers to these beads in his Autobiography : the words he repeated were different names of God.] He then presenteth himself to the people to receive their saláms or good-morrow, for which purpose multitudes resort thither every morning. This done, he sleepeth two hours more, then dineth and passeth his time with his women. At noon he sheweth himself again to the people, sitting till three or four o'clock to view his pastimes by men and beasts, every day sundry kinds. At three o'clock all the nobles in Agra, whom sickness detaineth not, resort to the court ; and the king comes forth in open audience, sitting in his seat royal, every man standing in his degree before him : the chief within a red rail, the rest without. This red rail is three steps higher than the place where the rest stand. Men are placed by officers ; there are others to keep men in order. In the midst, right before the king, standeth an officer, with his master hang-man, accompanied with forty others of the same profession with hatchets on their shoulders, and others with whips. Here the king heareth causes some hours every day ; he then departs to his house of prayer ; which ended, four or five sorts of well-dressed meats are brought him, whereof he eats what he likes to stay his stomach, drinking once of his strong drink. After this he comes forth into a private room where none may come, but such as himself nominates. In this place he drinks other five cups, which is the portion that the physicians allow him, and then lays him down to sleep, every man departing home. When he hath slept two hours, they awake him, and bring his supper to him, thrusting it into his mouth, not being able to feed himself. This is about one o'clock at night ; and so he sleepeth the rest of the night. In this cup-space he doth many idle things ; but nothing without writing be he drunken or sober. For he hath writers by course which write all, not omitting what he doth with his women ; to the end that when he dieth, those writings may be brought forth, and thence what is thought fit may be inserted in their chronicles. When any poor men come to demand justice of the king, they go to a certain rope fastened to two pillars, near where the king sits ; this rope is full of bells plated

CHAPTER V.

Story of Núr
Mahal.

The story of Núr Mahal is an oriental romance ; it begins in the reign of Akber. She had been betrothed very early to a Persian. Her mother had taken her to the palace to visit one of Akber's ladies. Jehangír saw her ; he fell in love with her. The mother was exasperated ; the matter reached the ear of Akber. Few things exasperated Akber more than the lawless amours to which the Moghuls were prone. Núr Mahal was sent to Bengal and married to her betrothed.

Marries
Jehangír.

Time passed, and Akber died. Jehangír came to the throne ; he ordered the viceroy of Bengal to send Núr Mahal to the palace. The viceroy mooted the matter to her husband ; the husband stabbed him to the heart, and was then cut to pieces by the guards. Amidst the ferment Núr Mahal was sent to the palace ; she refused to see Jehangír. Various stories are told of what followed. The most probable one is that she became one of the slaves to Jehangír's Rajpoot mother. At last ambition began to stir in her heart. She became the wife of Jehangír ; henceforth her influence was paramount. Her father was made prime minister ; her brother Asof Khan was raised to a high post.¹⁸ Within a year after her marriage five favourite queens of Jehangír perished in the harem ; it was whispered at court that they had been poisoned by Núr Mahal.¹⁹ In one direction her influence was bene-

with gold, and with shaking the rope, the king, hearing the sound, sends to know the cause, and doth justice accordingly." Purchas's Pilgrimage, reprinted at Calcutta, 1864.

¹⁸ Asof Khan is not a name but a title. The brother of Núr Mahal is always known as Asof Khan.

¹⁹ See Memoir of Jehangír in Father Catrou's History of the Moghuls. Núr Mahal was chief wife in the imperial harem. Her authority was paramount

ficial ; she prevented Jehangír from drinking in the CHAPTER V. day-time ; she induced him to moderate his evening potations.²⁰

Jehangír had no children by Núr Mahal. He ^{Jehangir's four sons.} had four sons by other wives, who all played a part in history. Their names were Khuzru, Parwíz, Khurram, and Shahryár.

Khuzru, the eldest, was the rebel. He ~~was~~ still Khuzru in confinement ; he was in the charge of a faithful Rajpoot named Anna Rai ; he was vainly hoping for a day when he might be reconciled to his father.

Parwíz was a drunkard. Drunkenness was the ^{Parwiz.} curse of the family ; his two uncles, Murád and Danyál, had died of drunkenness ; his father Jehangír was a drunkard. Parwíz was vain and arrogant, like all Moghuls ; he had small capacity. He was in nominal command of the army of the Dekhan ; he was a mere tool in the hands of the Khan Khanán, who held the real command.

Khurram, afterwards known as Shah Jehan, was ^{Khurram, afterwards Shah Jehan.} the sharpest of the family. He was haughty, aspiring, false, and subtle. He was no drunkard like Parwíz ; he was much given to women. Ambition was his master passion ; he saw the throne in the distance ; his life was a daily intrigue. He had married the niece of Núr Mahal, the daughter of Asof Khan ;²¹ he had thus secured the support of

paramount in the harem. The chief wife exercised the same authority in the households of the Moghul Khans.

²⁰ Jehangir, in his Autobiography, says that he was accustomed to drink twenty cups of wine each day. Each cup was about six ounces ; this would amount to some eight or ten bottles. Jehangir always exaggerated ; he never told the truth in anything. He says that he reduced his allowance to five cups ; Hawkins, who knew him well, says that he drank one cup in private with his evening meal ; and five cups afterwards in the Ghusal-khana. Jehangir, in his Autobiography, ignores the private cup.

²¹ This lady became famous in after years. Her name was Muntáz Mahal.

CHAPTER V. the favourite and her brother. He had already distinguished himself in the field; he had defeated the Rana of Chítór, now known as the Rana of Udaipur; he had induced the Rana to make a show of submission. He was straining every point to induce his father to recall Parwíz and the Khan Khanán from the Dekhan, and to give him the sole command in their room.

Shahryár.

Shahryár was a young man of no capacity. He only played a subordinate part in the latter years of the reign.

War in the Dekhan : treachery of the Khan Khanán.

The all-engrossing event of the time was the war in the Dekhan. Ahmadnagar was still the bone of contention between the Great Moghul and the Sultans of the Dekhan. An Abyssinian, named Malik Amber, had become the master spirit at Ahmadnagar. Malik Amber had set up a prince of the fallen dynasty; he ruled as minister; he secured some help from Bíjápur and Golkonda; he recovered possession of Ahmadnagar; he drove the Moghuls northward to Burhanpur. The Khan Khanán commanded the Moghul army in the Dekhan; he was taking bribes from the Sultans of the Dekhan; he was listless and indifferent. At times he made a convulsive effort to recover Ahmadnagar; it was only for a show. Years passed away and nothing was done.²²

Aggressions of the English.

The English were as yet of no account at the Moghul court. After the departure of Hawkins they made some stir at Surat. They had grown

She was also known as the Taj Bibí. She was the favourite wife of Shah Jehan. When she died he built the mausoleum for her at Agra, which is known as the Taj Mahal.

²² See Blockmann's notices of the Khan Khanán, No. 29 on Abul Fazl's list of Amirs and Mansubdars. Also life of Abul Fazl.²³

impatient of the insolence of the Moghuls ; they CHAPTER V. had taken the law into their own hands ; they had cut up the Moghul trade between Surat and Mocha. An English captain, named Sir Henry Middleton, was prevented from trading at Surat. He sailed to the Red Sea ; he stopped every Moghul ship that was going to Mocha or coming from Mocha ; he made the Moghuls on board sell him all their merchandise, and take English merchandise in exchange, at the market rates which prevailed at Surat. The Moghul merchants at Surat were horribly frightened. They began to give in ; they permitted the English to trade at Surat. The Portuguese interfered ; they threatened the Moghuls ; they captured Moghul ships by way of reprisals. Piratical wars were carried on between the English and the Portuguese. The Moghuls saw the English beating the Portuguese ; they began to respect the English.²³

In 1615, four years after the departure of Hawkins, another Englishman appeared upon the scene. This was Sir Thomas Roe. He was a far ^{Mission of Sir Thomas Roe, 1615—18.} grander man than Hawkins ; he was lord ambassador from King James ; he had a secretary, a chaplain, and a retinue. His journal is a reflex of the Moghul court ; it portrays the real life of Moghul despots ; it brings the actors upon the stage as living characters.

Sir Thomas Roe landed at Surat with some show of state.²⁴ The English ships in the river were

^{Landing of Roe : rudeness of Moghul officials.}

²³ Kerr's Collection of Travels, vol. viii.

²⁴ Sir Thomas Roe was a shrewd Englishman of the Elizabethan era. He was born in 1568 ; consequently he was about forty-eight years of age. He had been a commoner of Magdalen College at Oxford. He had afterwards read for the bar. He died in 1644, aged seventy-six. He was buried at Woodford, near Kent. See Introduction by Samuel Richardson to Roe's Negotiations with the Ottoman Porte from 1621 to 1628. Folio : London, 1740.

CHAPTER V. decked with flags and streamers ; they fired a salute of forty-eight guns. A guard of honour was formed of captains, merchants, and eighty men under arms. The Moghul officials received Roe in an open tent. They soon disgusted him by their rudeness. They wanted to search his servants ; they broke open his boxes. He told them the boxes contained presents for Jehangír ; they cared not a whit. They gave him lodgings in the town of Surat. A whole month passed away before he could get carriage and escort for carrying the presents as far as Burhanpur.²⁵

Journey from
Surat to Bur-
hanpur.

Jehangír was not at Agra ; he had gone south to Ajmír ; he made Ajmír his head-quarters. The road from Surat runs due east to Burhanpur ; it then runs due north to Ajmír. Roe was fifteen days going from Surat to Burhanpur. The country was desolate. The towns and villages were built of mud ; there was not a house fit to lodge in. At one place he was guarded with thirty horsemen and twenty musketeers because of the robbers on the mountains. At Burhanpur the Kotwál came out to meet him with sixteen horsemen carrying streamers. He was conducted to a house with a showy stone fronting ; the rooms were like ovens ; he therefore slept in his tent.²⁶

Roe's interview
with Parwiz.

Burhanpur was the head-quarters of the Moghul army of the Dekhan. Roe paid a visit to Parwíz. The prince affected the same state as his father. A body of horsemen were waiting outside the house

Roe's Journal is published more or less abridged in the different collections of Travels by Purchas, Pinkerton, and Kerr. It is the best authority for the history of the reign of Jehangír from 1615 to 1618. It brings out the true character of Jehangír and the nature of Moghul rule.

²⁵ Roe's Journal, 26th September to the 30th October, 1615.

²⁶ Roe's Journal, 1st November to the 14th, 1615.

to salám him on his coming out. Roe entered the CHAPTER V. court. Parwíz was sitting in a gallery with a canopy over his head. Below the gallery was a platform railed in for his great men.²⁷ Roe refused to prostrate before him ; " he was an ambassador," he said, " not a servant." He went up three steps to the platform ; the great men around him were standing with their hands before them like slaves. Roe made his bow to the prince ; Parwíz bowed in return. Roe explained his embassy from the King of England. Parwíz asked questions. Roe would have stepped up to the gallery to answer them ; he was stopped by a secretary. He was told that neither the Shah of Persia nor the Great Turk would be admitted to the gallery. All this was Moghul arrogance. Parwíz was otherwise good-natured ; he granted every request. The English might establish a factory at Burhanpur. He would supply carriage and escort to enable Roe to get on to Agra. He accepted Roe's presents graciously ; he was softened by the sight of a case of liquors ; he talked of speaking to Roe in a private chamber ; he left the gallery for the purpose. Roe waited in vain for a summons. At last he was told that he might leave the palace. Parwíz had got so drunk that he could see nobody.²⁸

Roe was a month going from Burhanpur to Ajmír. He journeyed to Mandu, the great fortress of Malwa ; thence to Chítór, the ancient capital of Rajpootana, the ruined stronghold of the Rana. He suffered from fever all the way. He reached

²⁷ This was known as the red rail. In the Durbar hall of Jehangir there was an outer rail, to separate the body of the nobles from the commonalty. At each ascent there were three steps. Three steps led to the platform ; three more to the gallery.

²⁸ Roe's Journal, 14th November to the 27th, 1615.

CHAPTER V. Ajmír on the twenty-third of December, 1615. . On the tenth of January, 1616, he had his first audience with Jehangír.²⁹

Roe attends the Durbar.

Roe's visit to the Durbar was a great event in Indian history. He saw Jehangír sitting upon a throne in a raised gallery at the back of the Durbar hall. He refused to prostrate himself, and the point was waived. He went up to the first rail which separated the commonalty from the nobility ; there he made his first reverence. He was led through the nobility to the red rail ; there he made a second reverence. He ascended three steps to the platform ; there he made a third reverence. He found himself amongst princes and ministers. He likened the scene to a London theatre. The King was sitting in his gallery. The great men

²⁹ Roe's Journal, 27th November, 1615, to 10th January, 1616.

Near Chítór Sir Thomas Roe fell in with an eccentric personage named Thomas Coryat. This man had a mania for travelling and a passion for notoriety. He had wandered on foot over Turkey and Greece. He had walked from Jerusalem to Ágra and Ajmír. Altogether he must have walked several thousands of miles. He was called the world's foot-post. He was poor, but honest and truthful. He says that he often lived on a penny a day. He only spent two pounds ten shillings between Jerusalem and Ajmír. His ordinary drink was water. He went to Surat, where the English gave him some sack. The sack killed him. He died at Surat in December, 1617. See Terry's Voyage to the East Indies.

In 1616 Coryat sent letters from the court of Jehangír at Ajmír to different personages in England. His description of Jehangír is striking :—"Jehangír is fifty-three years of age. His complexion is neither white nor black ; it is olive. His revenues are forty millions of crowns, of the value of six shillings each. It is said that he is uncircumcised. He speaketh very reverently of our Saviour, calling him the great prophet Jesus. He presenteth himself thrice every day without fail to his nobles ; at the rising of the sun, which he adoreth by the elevation of his hands ; at noon, and at five o'clock in the evening. Twice every week elephants fight before him." Coryat boasted that at Ajmír he had ridden upon an elephant. "I have determined," he says, "to have my picture expressed in my next book sitting upon an elephant." His wish was gratified. A barbarous wood-cut of Coryat sitting upon an elephant was duly published. His pamphlet was entitled,—"Thomas Coryat, traveller for the English wits : Greeting. From the Court of the Great Mogul at Asmère." London : 1618.

were lifted on the stage as actors. The vulgar were CHAPTER V. the audience who looked on.

Jehangir received the English ambassador with courtly condescension. He referred to the King of England as his royal brother. He looked curiously at the letter from King James; it was accompanied by a translation in Persian. He received the presents with much affability. They consisted of virginals, knives, an embroidered scarf, a rich sword, and an English coach. A musician in the ambassador's train was ordered to play upon the virginals. The coach remained in the outer court; Jehangir sent persons to look at it. He asked many questions. He was anxious about Roe's health. He offered to send his own physicians. He advised Roe to keep within the house until he was quite strong. He told the ambassador to ask freely for all he wanted. He then dismissed the Englishman. Roe went away charmed with his reception. He was told that no ambassador had been received with such favour before.³⁰

Audience with
Jehangir.

³⁰ Roe's Journal, 10th January, 1616. The entry of this date is worth extracting; many of the details correspond to those related by Captain Hawkins; they are repeated because the two accounts confirm each other. "January the 10th, I went," says Sir Thomas Roe, "to court at four in the afternoon to the Durbar, where the Moghul daily sits to entertain strangers, receive petitions and presents, give out orders, and to see and be seen. And here it will be proper to give some account of his court. None but eunuchs come within that king's private lodgings, and his [Tartar] women who guard him with warlike weapons. These punish one another for any offence committed. The Moghul every morning shows himself to the common people at a window [the Jharokha], that looks into a plain before his gate. At noon he is there again to see elephants and wild beasts fight, the men of rank being under him within a rail. Hence he retires to sleep among his women. After noon he comes to the Durbar. After supper at eight o'clock he comes down to the Ghusal-khana, a fair court, in the midst whereof is a throne of free stone, on which he sits, or sometimes below in a chair, where none are admitted but of the first quality, and few of them without leave. Here he discourses of indifferent things very affably. No business of state is done anywhere but at these two last places, where it is publicly discussed, and so registered; which register might be seen for two shillings, and the common people know as

CHAPTER V.

Childishness of
Jehangir.

When the Durbar was over Jehangír ceased to be a great sovereign ; he became an inquisitive Moghul. He went out and examined the coach ; he got into it and made his servants draw him about. He made Roe's English servant array him in the scarf and sword in English fashion. He strutted about ; he drew his sword and brandished it. He complained to the Portuguese priests that the presents were very poor. He thought that the King of England ought to have sent him jewels.³¹

Difficulties in
negotiating a
treaty.

For many months Roe thought that his negotiations were progressing. He was well received by Khurram, who promised to redress all grievances.³² He was well received by Jehangír, who issued firmáns abolishing all land transit duties. But the firmáns were only orders ; they might be broken with impunity. Roe wanted a solemn treaty signed by the Padishah. He ignored the fact that a treaty would bind the Moghul nobles and officials to certain fixed conditions ; that the English could offer no equivalent in return beyond a few presents and a promised increase of trade ; that not a minister or governor in the empire would agree to a treaty which set aside his own authority.³³

much as the council ; so that every day the King's resolutions are public news, and exposed to the censure of every scoundrel. This method is never altered unless sickness or drink obstruct it ; and this must be known, for if he be unseen one day without a reason assigned, the people would mutiny ; and for two days no excuse would serve, but the doors must be opened, and some admitted to see him to satisfy others. On Tuesday he sits in judgment at the Jharokha, and hears the meanest person's complaints, examines both parties, and often sees execution done by his elephants."

³¹ Roe's Letter to the East India Company, dated at Ajmír, 25th January, 1616.

³² Khurram was lord of Surat ; that is, he drew the revenues of Surat whilst living at court. He was expecting the command of the army in the Dekhan. He was the rising man in the Moghul court.

³³ Roe's Journal, *passim*.

There was another feature in the negotiations CHAPTER V.
 which annoyed the English ambassador. Every-
 thing that occurred at court, every act and word of
 the Padishah, was written down by the writers and
 kept as records of the reign. No secrecy was pro-
 served. Any one by paying a rupee might read the
 record of the most private and delicate transaction.
 When the sovereign died the chronicles of the reign
 were drawn up from these records.³⁴

In March the Nau-roz, or feast of the New Year, was celebrated at the Moghul court. It was not a Mussulman feast; it had been kept in Persia for ages before Muhammad was born. Jehangir appeared at the Durbar in all his glory. His throne was of mother-of-pearl. He sat upon cushions which were beset with pearls and precious stones. Over his head was a canopy of cloth and gold; it was fringed with pearls; it was hung with apples, pears, and pomegranates of gold.³⁵ In the court behind the Durbar hall there was a large pavilion railed in, nearly square, covering an area of fifty-six paces in length, and forty-three paces in breadth. It was covered with Persian carpets. Overhead were canopies of silk, velvet, and cloth of gold, supported by bamboos covered with like material. Within the square were a number of little houses; one of them was made of silver; there were also other curiosities.

³⁴ The appointment of Wakiahnawis, or court writers, has already been noticed. The passion for writing chronicles of everything that took place has been a characteristic of Moghuls from the remotest antiquity. It finds expression in the book of Esther; the chronicles of the empire were read to King Ahasuerus. The same practice is noticed by Sir John Mandeville and Marco Polo. Similar chronicles are preserved to this day in the palace of the King of Burma.

³⁵ The throne and the canopy over it seems to have been shaped like a four-post bedstead of the old-fashioned kind.

All records open
to the public.

CHAPTER V. Round about the court were the pavilions of the nobles, stored with the rarities that were to be presented to the Padishah.³⁶

Incongruous display.

The next day Roe saw the display of wealth in the great pavilion. It was more patched than glorious. The things were incongruous. It was like a show of plate and embroidered slippers in the same cupboard. At one end were some pictures that the ambassador had brought from England ; portraits of James the First, Queen Anne, the Lady Elizabeth, the Countess of Somerset and Salisbury, and Sir Thomas Smith, first governor of the East India Company.³⁷

Roe snubbed.

The English ambassador soon began to weary of the Moghul court. The novelty wore off ; the officials snubbed him. One day the red rail was closed against him ; he complained to Jehangir ; he was never shut out afterwards. Possibly the occasion was exceptional. The son of the Rana of Udaipur paid his homage that day ; three times the Rajpoot prince prostrated himself before the Padishah. Jehangir then received him in his own gallery and embraced his head. Roe was soured by the ceremonial. A curt entry appears in his journal :— “ Elephants were paraded ; courtesans sang and danced ; *sic transit gloria mundi.*”³⁸

Opposition to the treaty.

About this time Roe asked Jehangir for a treaty. The request created some confusion. The grandees at court were resolved that the English ambassador

³⁶ Roe's Journal, 11th March, 1616. Hawkins also describes the feast of the Nau-roz. He says that the great pavilion covered two acres ; that other pavilions were set up with lattice-work for the queens to look through. He adds that the entire area covered six acres.

³⁷ Roe's Journal, 12th March.

³⁸ Roe's Journal, 12th March to 23rd.

should not have a treaty ; they were afraid lest CHAPTER V. Jehangír should agree to a treaty. Khurram and Asof Khan tried to hustle away the interpreter. Asof Khan winked and nodded at the interpreter. Roe, however, would be heard. Jehangír said that his firmans were sufficient. Roe pressed him for a treaty. Jehangír asked if the English would give him jewels. Roe replied that jewels came from India, where Jehangír was King ; how then could the English bring back his own jewels ? Jehangír was silent but not convinced. One grandee stuck up for the Portuguese. "The English," he said, "bring nothing but swords, knives, and cloth ; the Portuguese bring rubies, emeralds, and diamonds."³⁹

The English ambassador worried Jehangír ; he also worried Khurram and Asof Khan. Khurram was afraid that his father would turn against him. At last Roe was told to draft a treaty. This was work after the Englishman's heart. The treaty was drafted with all speed ; it was creditable to Roe's diplomatic genius. There was to be perpetual peace between the King of Great Britain and the Emperor of Hindustan. The English were to trade wherever they pleased ; their presents to the Padishah were to pass unopened ; their goods were not to be seized under pretence of the Padishah's use ; they were to pay no transit duties except an *ad valorem* duty of three-and-a-half per cent. at the port where the goods were shipped, or landed ; the Padishah was not to inherit the goods of deceased Englishmen ;⁴⁰ governors or officers break-

³⁹ Roe's Journal, 26th March.

⁴⁰ The Padishah inherited the property of all those who died in his service. He also inherited the goods of all foreigners who died within his dominions.

CHAPTER V. ing the treaty were to be punished. In return the English were to furnish the Padishah with everything he wanted at reasonable rates; they were to help him against all his enemies. Such a treaty appeared unexceptional to Roe; he expected to get it sealed at once; he failed to see that its conditions were obnoxious to every viceroy and governor throughout the empire. Jehangír might seal the treaty for the sake of the presents. Khurram and Asaf Khan were resolved to prevent him at all hazards.⁴¹

Factions at court.

At this period the Moghul court was divided into factions. No ideas were involved; no principles were at stake. Khurram was only striving to get the better of his brother Parwíz. Jehangír had been persuaded to recall Parwíz, and to give Khurram the command of the army of the Dekhan. In June, 1616, the Bráhmans were consulted; an early day was fixed for the departure of Khurram. Things, however, drifted on till November before he began his journey.⁴²

Jehangir's love of gossip.

Throughout this interval Roe effected nothing. He frequently attended the Durbar and the Ghusalkhana. Jehangír was always ready for a gossip. He was eager to see Roe's pictures, to have copies made, to brag about his own artists. He wanted a horse from England; if six were put on board a ship, one might survive the passage; if it was lean, it might be fattened after it landed. He asked how often Roe drank in the day, how much he drank, what he drank in India, what he drank in England,

⁴¹ Roe's Journal, 26th March to 31st.

⁴² Roe's Journal, June to November. Had Jehangír been a Mussulman he never would have consulted Bráhmans.

what beer was, how it was made, could Roe CHAPTER V. make it? ⁴³

The news at the Moghul court was of the oriental type. Two eunuchs quarrelled about one of Nur Harem atrocity. Mahal's ladies; one killed the other. The survivor was put to death by the elephants. The lady was tied to a stake and buried alive up to the arm-pits. She was to be exposed to the Indian sun for three days without sustenance; she died after twenty-four hours. Her cash and jewels were valued at a hundred and sixty thousand pounds sterling.⁴⁴

A hundred thieves were brought before Jehangir; ^{Execution of} ^{thieves.} they were condemned to death without further parley. The head thief was torn to pieces by dogs in front of Roe's house. Thirteen others had their throats cut; they were left naked and bleeding at the same place. The remainder were divided into companies; they were butchered and exposed in different streets of the city of Ajmír.⁴⁵

One event took place which gave Roe some insight into the administration of the provinces. Jamál-ud-dín Husain, the viceroy of Bihár, paid a visit to the court of Ajmír. He was an old man of seventy; he had served under Humáyun and Akber. He struck up a friendship with the English ambassador; probably he was eager to propitiate any one who had the ear of Jehangir. To use Roe's words, "he praised the good prophet Jesus and his laws, and was full of very delightful and fruitful discourse."⁴⁶ He talked about the slavery of the

⁴³ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁴⁴ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁴⁵ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁴⁶ Mr Terry, who went out to India as chaplain to the embassy, makes the following significant remark:—"There is not a man amongst the Mussulmans, but those of the baser sort, that mentions the name of our Saviour, whom they call the Lord Christ, without reverence and respect. They say he was a good

CHAPTER V. people, the want of laws, the great increase in the Moghul empire. He enlarged upon the revenue of the empire; how it was raised; how it was swelled by presents, confiscations, and fines. Every province paid a yearly rent to the Padishah. He himself paid eleven lakhs yearly, or a hundred and ten thousand pounds sterling. All beyond that he kept for himself; he took whatever he liked. He had the rank of Five thousand horse. He drew two hundred rupees a year for each horse; he only kept fifteen hundred horsemen; the surplus was dead pay. He also drew a pension from the Padishah of a thousand rupees a day.⁴⁷ He said that twenty other nobles received the same pay; some received double.⁴⁸

man and just, lived without sin, and did greater miracles than any before or since. They even call him "the breath of God," but cannot conceive how he should be the Son of God, and therefore will not believe. Notwithstanding this, the Mussulmans in general think Christians so unclean, that they will not eat with us nor yet of anything that is dressed in our vessels." See Terry's Voyage to the East Indies.

⁴⁷ There is perhaps some exaggeration here. Jamál-ud-dín Húsain appears in Abul Fazl's list of Mansubdars. (See Mr Blockmann's translation of the *Ain-i-Akbari*, No. 164.) His command of Five thousand horse was only brevet rank. Five years after his meeting with Roe, he was pensioned off on four thousand rupees a month on account of his advanced age. Roe calls him viceroy of Patna. Bihár was the real name of his province; Patna was the capital of Bihár.

⁴⁸ Roe's Journal, 12th August to the 19th. Jamál-ud-dín Húsain gave an entertainment to Roe at a garden-house about a mile from Ajmir. A collation was served in the middle of the day; it comprised dishes of raisins, almonds, pistachios, and fruit of all kinds. In the evening there was a substantial meal; it comprised dishes of meat, roast, boiled, and fried; also rice and salads.

The servants were diligent, respectful, and orderly. At both meals the company took their seats on the carpet. At the collation Jamál-ud-dín sat with his English guests; at the evening meal he sat apart with his Moghul guests. When the entertainment was over he gave Roe a present according to custom; it consisted of five cases of sugar-candy dressed with musk, and a loaf of refined white sugar weighing fifty pounds. He also pressed Roe to accept a hundred loaves more of the white sugar; he said that it came from his government, and cost him nothing. After a few days he dined at Roe's house on some banqueting stuff prepared by a Mussulman cook. He would not touch the meats which had been dressed in the English fashion; he begged that three or four dishes might be sent to his house, as he wished to taste them privately.

The second of September was Jehangir's birth- CHAPTER V.
Birthday of
Jehangir :
weighing cere-
mony: day. The Padishah was weighed six times with great ceremony in large golden scales. Jehangir sat in one scale cross-legged like a tailor. The other scale was piled up with parcels, which were changed each time. He was weighed against gold and silver, silks and stuffs, grains and butter. The things weighed were given away to the poor.

In the afternoon there was a grand show of elephants before the Durbar. All the larger elephants, known as lord elephants, were paraded before Jehangir. Every lord elephant was provided with chains, bells, and furniture, of gold and silver; he had a harem of four female elephants; he was attended with gilt banners; he was waited on by eight or ten other elephants clothed in gold, silk, and silver. Twelve companies of these elephants marched past Jehangir, and made their salams. The first lord elephant was a magnificent beast of wonderful stature and beauty; the plates on his head and breast were set with rubies and emeralds. Roe declared that he had never seen such a sight before.⁴⁹

On the evening of the birth-day Jehangir was Carouse in the
Ghusal-khana. drinking with his nobles. According to the law no man was admitted to the Ghusal-khana whose breath smelt of wine. If Jehangir heard of any departure from the law he would order the offender to be whipped in his presence. On state occasions he commanded the nobles to drink; then every man was bound to obey. At ten o'clock at night Jehangir sent for Roe. The ambassador was in bed; he went to the palace in all haste. Jehangir was

⁴⁹ Roe's Journal, 2nd September. See also Terry.

CHAPTER V. sitting cross-legged on a little throne. He was decked with jewels. His nobles around him were in their best array. Vessels of gold were lying about; flagons of wine were standing by. All were ordered to drink. Every one got drunk except Khurram, Asof Khan, and the English ambassador. Jehangir scattered dishes full of rupees to the multitude below. He threw about gold and silver almonds for his nobles to scramble for. At last Jehangir dropped off to sleep. The lights were put out; and the party groped their way out of the Ghusal-khana.⁵⁰

^{A viceroy in disgrace.} Another incident at court brings out a picture of Moghul times. A viceroy of Guzerat had fallen into disgrace; he had disobeyed orders; he came to make his submission before the Jharokha window. His feet were bare; his ankles were chained; his turban was pulled over his eyes so that he might see no one before he beheld Jehangir. He made his reverence, answered a few questions, and was forgiven. His chain was taken off; he was clothed

⁵⁰ Roe's Journal, *ib.* These almonds were exceedingly thin and of small value. Roe discovered that the pears, apples, and pomegranates that hung before the Moghul's throne were equally hollow. He had been told that they were all solid.

An amusing incident is connected with Roe's visit to the palace on this particular evening. Everything that transpired in Roe's private lodgings reached the ears of Jehangir. Roe had a portrait of a "dear friend," which Jehangir had never seen. Roe was told to bring the portrait; it was that of a lady who had been dead for some years. Roe was resolved not to part with the portrait. He took a French picture as well, which he hoped would satisfy the Padishah. But all to no purpose. Jehangir was enchanted with the portrait. He would not look at the French picture. If Roe would only give him the portrait he would value it more than his best jewels. Roe was fairly wheedled out of the portrait; his disgust is sufficiently manifest in his journal. It was a hard fate which compelled the English ambassador to make over the portrait of his dead lady-love to the Great Moghul.

in a new vest, turban, and girdle, according to CHAPTER V. custom.⁵¹

Roe could not dwell long at court without hearing something of palace scandals. Parwíz had been recalled from the Dekhan and sent to Bengal. Jehangír hesitated about recalling the Khan Khanán. The Khan Khanán was very powerful; if recalled he might rebel. Jehangír resolved to send him the dress of forgiveness. He told his intention to a kinswoman of the Khan Khanán, who was living in his own harem. She replied that the Khan Khanán would never wear the dress; he would think it was poisoned. "Twice," she said, "you have given him poison; each time he put it in his breast instead of eating it; each time he found it was poison." Jehangír made no denial; he offered to wear the dress for an hour to prove that it was not poisoned. The woman replied that the Khan Khanán would trust neither of them. So Jehangír resolved to go himself to the Dekhan. Khurrám was to go on to Burhanpur; Jehangír would follow as far as Mándú.⁵²

Another intrigue exploded. Khuzru, the eldest son of Jehangír, had been placed in the charge of a Rajpoot prince named Anna Rai. Núr Mahál and Asóf Khan were plotting the murder of Khuzru; they were still anxious to secure the succession for Khurram. One night when Jehangír was drunk, they persuaded him that Asóf Khan would be a more suitable guardian for Khuzru than Anna Rai.

⁵¹ In political phraseology he received a khillut, or dress of honour, in token of forgiveness. Roe's Journal, 9th and 10th October.

⁵² This suggestive incident is recorded in Roe's Journal of the 10th October. It is omitted by Pinkerton. It will be found in Purchas and Kerr.

Poisoning at court.

Intrigues against Khuzru.

CHAPTER V. That same night Asof Khan called upon Anna Rai in the name of the Padishah to surrender Khuzru. Anna Rai refused ; he was warmly attached to Khuzru ; he declared that Jehangír had placed Khuzru in his charge ; he would surrender Khuzru to no one but Jehangír.

*Weakness of
Jehangir.*

Next morning Anna Rai told Jehangír all that had occurred ; he added that he would rather die than surrender Khuzru to his enemies. Jehangír praised the fidelity of Anna Rai to the skies ; he told Anna Rai that he had done well ; that Anna Rai was always to do as he had done. Within seven days afterwards Jchangír was again talked over by Núr Mahal. He commanded Anna Rai to make over Khuzru to Asof Khan. Probably the fidelity of Anna Rai to the cause of Khuzru had awakened suspicions in the mind of Jehangír.

*Outcry in the
harem.*

Every one at court expected that Khuzru would be murdered to make room for Khurram. The sister of Khuzru, with other ladies in the harem, made a terrible outcry. They refused to eat ; they threatened to burn themselves if Khuzru died. .Jehangír protested that he meant no harm ; no one believed him. He sent Núr Mahal to quiet them ; the ladies cursed, threatened, and refused to see her.⁵³

*Roe's warning
to the English
Company.*

Roe reported these facts as a warning. The East India Company was to beware of pushing its trade too far into the interior. A time was coming when all Hindustan would be in a ferment. If Khuzru prevailed the English would be gainers ; the empire would become a sanctuary for Christians, whom he loved and honoured. If Khurram pre-

vailed the English would be the losers ; he hated CHAPTER V. Christians ; he was proud, subtle, false, and tyrannical. How far Roe was correct in his surmises will be seen in the sequel.⁵⁴

A Persian ambassador made a public entry into Ajmír. His name was Muhammad Riza Beg. Some pretended that he came to mediate a peace between Jehangir and the Sultans of the Dekhan. Others thought that he came to ask for help against the Great Turk. His retinue consisted of fifty horsemen, equipped in cloth of gold, armed with bows, quivers, and targets, richly garnished. There were also forty musketeers and two hundred foot-soldiers. In the afternoon Muhammad Riza Beg was received at the Durbar. He flattered Jehangir beyond all bounds. He made three prostrations before him ; he knocked his head against the ground as though he would enter it. His presents, however, put Roe to shame. They comprised three times nine Arabian and Persian horses, nine large mules, seven camel loads of velvet, two suits of European hangings, one rich cabinet, forty muskets, five clocks, one camel loaded with Persian cloth of gold, eight carpets of silk, two rubies, twenty-one camel loads of grape wine, fourteen camel loads of rose-water, seven jewelled daggers, five jewelled swords, and seven Venetian looking-glasses.⁵⁵

A few days afterwards there was a terrible scene at Durbar. Jehangir had given a feast to the

Cruel scene at Durbar.

⁵⁴ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁵⁵ Roe's Journal, 19th and 20th October. The Persian ambassador came to negotiate for the surrender of Kandahar to Persia. Kandahar was for many years a bone of contention between Persia and the Moghul. The Shah of Persia is said to have helped Hugáyun to recover his throne, on the condition that Kandahar was transferred to Persia.

CHAPTER V. Persian ambassador. He had commanded all present to drink wine. On these occasions the Bakhshi, or paymaster-general, officiated. Every man received his cup of wine from the Bakhshi; he then drank to the health of the Padishah; every name was taken down by the court writers, and entered in the register, according to the custom. Jehangir was so drunk that he forgot he had given the order. Next day some one alluded to the drinking. He asked who gave the order; he was told that the Bakhshi had given it. This was always the answer when Jehangir thought proper to forget his own orders. Jehangir was filled with wrath. He called for the register; he began to punish the offenders. Some were fined heavily. Others were flogged in the Durbar court. The flogging was most severe; some were left for dead. Jehangir ordered them to be kicked and battered. One died on the spot. Others were carried out bruised and mangled. The Persian ambassador got off scot-free. Not a man dared to speak a word in behalf of the sufferers.⁵⁶

Preparations for camp : Khurram's adieu.

At last all things were prepared for going into camp. Khurram took leave of his father in the Durbar. He was dressed in cloth of silver embroidered with pearls and diamonds. His camp was four miles off. He was driven there in a coach which had been built like the English one. His chief men walked beside him on foot. All the way he scattered quarter rupees amongst the people.⁵⁷

Jehangir at the Jharokha window.

Next morning Jehangir was to go into camp. Roe went to the palace very early. He saw Jehangir at the Jharokha window. Two eunuchs were fan-

⁵⁶ Roe's Journal, 25th October.

⁵⁷ Roe's Journal, 1st November.

ning him ; he was giving and receiving favours. CHAPTER V.
 What he gave he let down with a string ; what he received was pulled up by an old woman decked out with gimcracks like an idol. Two of his queens were sitting at a window behind a matting of reeds ; they peeped at Roe between the reeds. Roe saw their fingers ; then their faces ; sometimes their whole figure. They were indifferently white ; their black hair was smoothed up ; they glittered with diamonds. They were both very merry at the sight of Roe. Presently Jehangir went away from the window followed by the queens.⁵⁸

The nobles were now assembling in the Durbar court to await the coming of Jehangir. Roe joined them ; he sat with them upon the carpet. Presently Jehangir appeared ; he sat upon the throne for half-an-hour. Meanwhile the ladies of the harem were mounting their elephants. Fifty elephants were drawn up for their conveyance all richly adorned. Three had square towers on their backs, enclosed with curtains of gold wire ; they were surmounted by canopies of cloth of silver.⁵⁹

At length Jehangir left the throne ; he descended the stairs of the Durbar court. The acclamations were deafening ; they outroared cannon. At the foot of the stairs one man brought a large carp ; another brought a dish of white stuff like starch. Jehangir put his finger into the white stuff ; touched the fish with it, and rubbed his forehead. This was a ceremony presaging good fortune.⁶⁰

⁵⁸ Roe's Journal, 2nd November.

⁵⁹ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁶⁰ Roe's Journal, *ib.* It may have been a Hindú ceremony. The stuff like starch was probably the ashes of burnt cow-dung. The fish, however, is one of the insignia of the Great Mogul. The figure of a fish is sculptured above some of the buildings at Ajmír.

CHAPTER V.

Royal dress and arms.

Jehangír was arrayed in all his bravery. His coat was of cloth of gold without sleeves, worn over a shirt as fine as lawn. His buskins were embroidered with pearls. His turban was plumed with herons' feathers ;⁶¹ on one side was a ruby as big as a walnut; on the other side was a large diamond; in the centre was a large emerald, shaped like a heart. His sash was wreathed with a chain of pearls, rubies, and diamonds. His neck-chain consisted of three double strings of pearls. He wore armlets set with diamonds on his elbows; he had three rows of diamonds on his wrists; he had rings on nearly every finger. One man hung on his sword and buckler; both were beset with diamonds and rubies. Another man hung on his bow and quiver with thirty arrows.⁶²

Procession to camp.

Thus accoutred Jehangír got into his coach. It was drawn by four horses with harness and trappings of gold velvets. It was made like the English coach, but covered with gold velvet. He had an English coachman as gaudy as a play-actor. Jehangír sat at one end of the coach. On each side were two eunuchs carrying gold maces set with rubies; also bunches of white horse tails to sweep away the flies. Before him went drums, trumpets, and other loud music, together with canopies, umbrellas, and other strange insignia. There were nine led horses; the furniture was studded with rubies, pearls, and emeralds. Three palanquins followed.

⁶¹ Herons' feathers are held in great esteem by Turks as well as Moghuls. The Ottoman Porte wears, or used to wear, three plumes of black herons' feathers in his turban. When he made the Grand Vizier general of his army, he took one plume out of his own turban and placed it in the turban of the Grand Vizier. After this ceremony the army salutes the Grand Vizier, and acknowledges him for their general. Tavernier's Relation of the Grand Seignor's Seraglio, folio, page 3: London, 1677.

⁶² Roe's Journal, 2nd November.

One was plated with gold set with pearls; it was CHAPTER V. covered with crimson velvet embroidered with pearls; a fringe of pearls hung in ropes a foot deep, with a border of rubies and emeralds. A footman carried a golden footstool set with precious stones. The two other palanquins were covered with cloth of gold. Then followed the coach, which came from England; the English lining had been taken away; the coach was covered with gold velvet and decorations. Jehangír had given it to Núr Mahal, and Núr Mahal was riding inside it. The two younger sons of Jehangír followed in a country-built coach.⁶³ After them went twenty royal elephants, richly caparisoned. Every elephant carried flags of silver cloth, gilt satin, and taffaty. The nobles walked on foot. The ladies were carried on their elephants half-a-mile behind like parroquets in gilded cages.⁶⁴

This was the first day's march from the palace to the camp. All the way there was a guard of six hundred elephants.⁶⁵ of elephants. All the way there was a guard of six hundred elephants, six hundred in number, covered with velvet or cloth of gold. Each elephant carried a gun and gunner in a square tower, with a flag at each corner. The road was watered to lay the dust. No man was allowed to come within a furlong of Jehangír's coach unless he walked on foot.⁶⁶

At setting out there was a notable incident. ^{Appearance of} Khuzru. Jehangír stopped at the door where his eldest son Khuzru was kept a prisoner; he called for him to come out. Khuzru appeared and made his reverence. He had a sword and buckler in his hand; his beard hung down to his waist, a sign of dis-

⁶³ The three elder sons of Jehangír were Khuzru, Parwíz, and Khurrám. The two younger were Shahryár and Jahandar. Jahandar died young.

⁶⁴ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁶⁵ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

CHAPTER V. favour. Jehangír commanded him to mount one of the spare elephants and ride beside him. He also gave Khuzru a thousand rupees to scatter amongst the people. Meantime Asof Khan, and all the other enemies of Khuzru, were obliged to walk on foot.⁶⁶

Imperial pavilions.

Roe walked as far as the palace gate; he then mounted his horse and rode to the camp. The imperial pavilions were marvels of magnificence. They were enclosed by screens or walls of arras, half-a-mile in compass. The walls were shaped like a fortress with coignes and bulwarks; they were stretched between posts tipped with brass. The walls were bright red on the outside; inside they were painted with figures in panes. The gate at the entrance was very handsome. Roe was admitted into the first court. In the centre was the imperial throne of mother-of-pearl, set up in a lofty pavilion. Underfoot were carpets; overhead were canopies of cloth of gold.⁶⁷

Jehangír bows to Roe.

Jehangír was driven in his coach to the gate-house; his ladies entered the harem by some back way. The nobles formed a lane at the gate-house. Jehangír walked between them. He cast his eye on Roe; the English ambassador made a reverence. Jehangír laid his hand upon his heart and bowed to Roe. He mounted the steps of the pavilion, called for water, washed his hands, and departed.⁶⁸

The imperial camp.

The plan of the imperial camp corresponded generally to that of the imperial palace. It con-

⁶⁶ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁶⁷ Roe's Journal, *ib.* Roe says that the imperial enclosure was separated into thirty divisions, each having tents of its own. "They included guard-rooms, stables, kitchens, servants'-rooms, store-rooms, work-shops, and a number of similar apartments.

⁶⁸ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

sisted of at least three square courts or quadrangles opening one into the other. The first was the Durbar court; the second comprised the Ghusal-khana and other pavilions; the third comprised the harem, and was called the Mahal. Akber and Jehangir slept in a two-storied apartment at one end of the harem; on the second story was the Jharokha window which looked out upon an open plain. The Padishah was served by women; his guards were Tartar women. Indeed, no one, save women and eunuchs, or sometimes the imperial princes, were permitted to proceed further into the palace than the Ghusal-khana.⁶⁹

The nobles retired to their own pavilions. Roe began to look about him. The scene was magnificent. A beautiful city had sprung up in the valley; it covered an area of twenty miles; it was radiant with many colours. The imperial pavilions were red; those of the nobles were white, green, and mixed. All were encompassed by screens, and were as orderly as houses. There were also long streets of shops, like the bazaar of a metropolis. There was no confusion of any kind. Every day the vast camp was moved some miles further towards the south. There were double sets of pavilions; one camp was set up, whilst another was sent forward; the entire camp could be set up within four hours. The people of Ajmír had delayed joining it. Jehangir burnt down their houses, and forced them to take the field.⁷⁰

Pavilions of the
grandees.

⁶⁹ These arrangements bear a strange resemblance to those of Hindú courts in mythical times. The Hindú palaces consisted of a succession of quadrangles. The Hindú Rajas were guarded by amazons. Raja Dusshyanta appears in the drama of Sakuntalá surrounded by a retinue of Yavana women. See ante, vol. iii. chap. 6.

⁷⁰ Roe's Journal, 2nd November and 9th December. *This burning of huts

CHAPTER V.

Roe's interview
with Khurram.

About this time Roe paid two visits to Khurram. At the first Khurram appeared distracted ; Roe thought he had left his heart with Núr Mahal, or with one of her ladies. At the second visit Khurram gave him a cloak of cloth of gold. Roe was disgusted at being obliged to put it on. He says that it would have better become a play-actor in the part of Timúr the Tartar.⁷¹

Camp life.

Camp experiences, however, were not always pleasant. At one place a hundred thieves were executed in the fields. At another place Roe met some camels loaded with the heads of three hundred rebels who had been slaughtered in Kandahar. The life of the Moghul sovereign was not so public in camp as in the city. No one was allowed to come within pistol-shot of the imperial quarters. Jehangír sat every morning at the Jharokha window ; no one was allowed to speak to him. The Dürbar was no longer held ; the time was spent in hunting and hawking. The Ghusal-khana was held in the evenings ; it was only open to those who were specially named. Jehangír was often too drunk at the Ghusal-khana to do anything. One day Roe visited Jehangír. He found him talking to a Hindú mendicant, or Yogi. The holy man was clothed in rags, crowned with feathers, and covered with ashes. Jehangír embraced the Yogi, made him sit in his presence, gave him a hundred rupees, and called him father.⁷²

was not so cruel as it appears. The huts were probably of small value. Such huts were always abandoned when the court went into camp. The so-called people of Ajmír were nothing more than the host of servants and camp followers of every description, who depended for their subsistence upon the court, and yet were reluctant to leave their huts.

⁷¹ Roe's Journal, 5th November.

⁷² Roe's Journal, 18th to 23rd December. The little incident of the Yogi suffices to show the Hindú proclivities of Jehangir.

The regularity and order of camp arrangements soon disappeared. The camp moved through Rajpootana, which was only half conquered. The country was full of robbers. The road sometimes lay through forests and mountains. Thousands of camels were left in the jungle without food or water. Thousands of coaches and carts were lost in the woods. Many of the ladies of the harem were left behind without provisions. Jchangír made his way on a small elephant, which climbed over rocks where no other beast could follow. At one town the inhabitants had fled to the mountains; Jchangír burnt it down. In revenge the Rajpoots robbed and murdered a body of stragglers. At another place the encampment was laid out on the top of a hill where there was no water. In general Jchangír and his nobles were well supplied. The soldiers and poor people were often in want of the commonest necessities.⁷³

Before Jchangír went into camp, he had been assured by Núr Mahal and Asof Khan that the Sultans of the Dekhan would submit at his approach. The Sultans did nothing of the kind. Shíahs united with Sunnis to resist the Moghul. They marched an army towards the frontier; they prepared to do battle. Núr Mahal was frightened; she implored Jchangír to turn the movement into a hunting expedition, and to go back to Agra. Jchangír refused; his honour was at stake. He kept sending on reinforcements to Khurram. At last, in February, 1617, nearly four months after leaving Ajmír, Jchangír encamped near the city of Ujain.⁷⁴

*Robberies,
murders, and
privations.*

*March to Ujain:
alarm of the
court.*

⁷³ Roe's Journal, 23rd to 26th December.

⁷⁴ Roe's Journal, January and February, 1617.

CHAPTER V.

**Departure of
the Persian am-
bassador : his
sorrows.**

Roe's adventures at this period are of some interest. He paid a visit to the Persian ambassador; the Persian won his sympathies by railing at the Moghul court and all the officials. Shortly afterwards the ambassador returned to Persia in high dudgeon. His negotiations had failed. The return presents were wretchedly mean. He had presented Jehangir with thirty-five horses; in return he had received only three thousand rupees. Jehangir tried to justify himself. He caused two lists to be made. On one list the Persian presents were entered and undervalued; on the other list the Moghul presents were entered and overvalued. The meanest things were written down in the Moghul list, such as melons, pine-apples, and plantains. Still there was a balance in favour of Persia; it was offered the ambassador in money. Muhammad Riza Beg went away utterly disgusted; he feigned sickness rather than take leave of Asaf Khan.⁷⁵

**Roe meets
Khuzru.**

Another day Roe fell in with Khuzru. The prince was mounted on an elephant; he passed by whilst Roe was sitting under a tree. He asked Roe some civil questions, and then went away. He knew nothing of what was going on at court. To Roe's great surprise he had never heard of the English, or of their ambassador.⁷⁶

**Wrath about
the presents.**

Meanwhile Roe was much angered by the Moghul authorities. Jehangir had solemnly promised that the new presents coming out from England should neither be stopped nor opened. Khurram had stopped them. Jehangir had sent for the boxes. Khurram despatched them to Ujain. Jehangir then

⁷⁵ Roe's Journal, 1st January and 30th April.

⁷⁶ Roe's Journal, 3rd February.

opened them himself; he helped himself to every- CHAPTER V.
thing he liked, including many things not intended
for him. Roe went to the Ghusal-khana to com-
plain. Jehangir said that everything should be
made good; he would make it all right with the
King of England. Roe got no redress. Jehangir
became very drunk. He kept on saying that he
was the protector of Christians, Mussulmans, and
Jews. Then he wept and fell into various passions.
He kept them up in the Ghusal-khana until mid-
night.⁷⁷

In March the imperial camp reached the famous fortress of Mandu. Another intrigue came to light. Núr Mahal
intrigues
against Khur-
ram. Núr Mahal had a daughter by her first husband. She was ambitious for this daughter; she ceased to care for her niece, Mumtaz Mahal, who had married Khurram. A suggestive event filled her with wrath. Khurram had become reconciled to the Khan Khanán; he had married a granddaughter of the Khan Khanán. Núr Mahal was furious at the marriage. She plotted the downfall of Khurram; she reconciled Jehangir to Khuzru; she resolved to marry her daughter to Khuzru.⁷⁸

Khurram was still the favourite of fortune. • He Triumph of
Khurram. was triumphant in the Dekhan. His success was due to intrigues rather than to fighting. The Sultans of Bijápur and Golconda grew jealous of Malik Amber; they were Shíahs and he was a Sunní; they naturally deserted his cause. Khurram defeated Malik Amber and captured Ahmadnagar. He went back to Mandu flushed with victory; he was warmly welcomed by Jehangir. He received the title of

⁷⁷ Roe's Journal, 11th March, 1617.

⁷⁸ Roe's Journal, *passim*.

CHAPTER V. Shah ; henceforth he is known as Shah Khurram or Shah Jehan. Meanwhile Núr Mahal's intrigue proved a failure ; Khuzru refused to marry her daughter.⁷⁹

Mystery and romance.

There is mystery and romance about Khuzru. There is a mystery as to the part he played in the history of the time. To all appearance he had been the pet of Akber, the idol of the Rajpoots. His attachment to Christianity and Christians is very remarkable. His marriage is a romance. He was married to one wife. She was the daughter of a Mussulman of high standing, a foster-brother of Akber ; he was named Khan-i-Azam. This man was a type of a class. He had been so strict a Mussulman that he went to Mecca to escape from the innovations of Akber. Mecca shook his faith in Islam, just as Rome has sometimes shaken the faith of a Catholic. He returned to India and became a member of the Divine Faith.⁸⁰ It may be inferred that his daughter inherited his nature. Nothing is known beyond the fact that Khuzru was devoted to her ; for her sake he refused to marry the daughter of Núr Mahal. By doing so he might have saved his life and gained the throne. It is said that his wife entreated him to marry Núr Mahal's daughter ; but he was firm in his devotion to her.⁸¹

Roe hated as an informer.

About this period Roe was losing ground. He could get no treaty. He was growing unpopular. His complaints against provincial governors raised

⁷⁹ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁸⁰ Khan-i-Azam was one of Akber's Amirs. He is No. 21 on the list of Abul Fazl. Mr Blockmann has furnished full particulars respecting him. See *Ain-i-Akbari*, page 325, et seq.

⁸¹ See Catrou's history of the Moghul Dynasty. Other grounds for Khuzru's refusal are stated ; they were of less weight ; they involve contradictions which cannot easily be reconciled.

up enemies. Roe was conscious of this ; he explains CHAPTER V. the causes. The viceroys and governors dreaded lest Jehangir should discover their oppressions and exactions. They farmed out the revenues of the empire. They were tyrannical towards the Hindús. They hanged men up by the heels until they paid fine or ransom.⁸² Accordingly they regarded Roe as an informer.⁸³

Strange to say, the English at this early period were alarming the Moghuls. They displayed that contempt for Asiatics which is an instinct of the race. Some sailor musketeers were landed near Surat. The jolly mariners declared that they were going to take the fortress. The threat was absurd ; but the Moghuls were terribly frightened.⁸⁴ It was reported to court ; the fortress was strengthened. Flying rumours went abroad that the English had taken Goa ; that a great fleet was coming out from England. Jehangir was afraid that Roe

⁸² The statements of Roe are confirmed by every succeeding traveller. They show the character of Moghul rule. Above all, they show the vast difference between Europeans and Hindús. If an Englishman is oppressed, a hundred of his fellow-countrymen will step out to protect him. If a Hindú is oppressed, other Hindús look listlessly on ; not a man will move.

⁸³ Roe's Journal, *ib.*

⁸⁴ Differences of race are important elements in the history of India. The fact cannot be denied that the European is far stronger than the Asiatic in mind and body. It was obvious to the Moghuls from the day that Englishmen first landed in India. No statesmanship can imbue the natives of India with the instincts of Englishmen ; no statesmanship can imbue the Bengalee with the instincts of Rajpoots. In time the Hindús may become stronger ; but the climate is against them. The Europeans are strong so long as they are recruited from Europe, and are in frequent intercourse with Europe. If they remain too long in India, they become effeminate and Hinduised. The natives of India can only become strong by frequent intercourse with Europe. One fact, however, cannot be repeated too often. So long as the natives of India are married as children to girls who are shut up from their childhood, their descendants will be little better than children. They would be worn out by the political life which is as necessary to Europeans as the air they breathe. No education will prepare them for the exercise of political power ; it may enable Hindús to talk like men ; it will not prevent them from thinking and acting like children.

Moghuls frightened by the English.

CHAPTER V. wanted to steal away. Gradually the alarm died out ; matters returned to their old footing.⁸⁵

^{English restored to favour.} Suddenly the English were in great favour.

The queen mother was returning from a pilgrimage to Mecca ; her ship was captured by English pirates ; she was rescued by the East India Company's fleet. The grandees at court complimented Roe ; they also wondered that the King of England should permit his subjects to turn pirates.⁸⁶

^{Roe bribes Asof Khan : leaves India, 1618.} About the same time Roe managed to bribe Asof Khan with a large pearl. It worked like magic.

Asof Khan stirred himself to befriend the English. All debts due to the English were paid up without difficulty. All the nobles were eager to buy English goods. The whole investment was sold at once ; treble the stock might have been sold. In time the zeal of Asof Khan cooled down ; still the Moghuls and English were better friends. Things were thus drifting on when the career of Roe drew to a close. In 1618 Roe left India for Persia ; henceforth he disappears from the history of India.⁸⁷

^{Moghul administration.}

It is possible to get some glimpses of the state of Hindustan during the reign of Jehangir. Roe denounced the Moghul administration in strong

⁸⁵ This anecdote is omitted by Kerr and Pinkerton. It is preserved by Purchas. See chapter viii., Calcutta reprint.

⁸⁶ Roe's Journal, 5th October, 1617.

⁸⁷ Roe's Journal, *ib.* Roe became famous a few years later as ambassador to the Sultan of Turkey.

It is curious to note from Roe's Journal that even at this early period the East India Company was harassed by projectors. One set wanted to promote the sale of English lead by laying down water-works at Agra. Another set wanted to divert the trade between India and Persia from the land route via Kabul to the sea route via the Indus and Indian Ocean to the Persian Gulf. Roe observes that such schemes were likely to prove more profitable to the projectors than to the East India Company.

language ; he was so bitter that some may consider CHAPTER V.
he was prejudiced. The evidence of Jehangir as regards his own administration may be accepted as undeniable. After Roe left India Jehangir went to Guzerat ; subsequently he visited Ujain and Agra ; he then returned to Delhi. His observations on the country and people may be summed up in a few words :—

“ Guzerat,” says Jehangir, “ is infested with ^{Confessions of} ~~Jehangir.~~ thieves and vagabonds. I have occasionally executed two or three hundred in one day ; I could not suppress the brigandage. The province is hemmed round with forests. Twenty thousand pioneers cut a way through with saws and hatchets. On my return from Guzerat I visited Ujain. A Moghul at Ujain had been convicted of inviting females to his gardens, making them drunk, strangling them, and stripping them of their jewels. His house was searched ; seven hundred sets of female ornaments were discovered there ; I ordered him to be torn piece-meal with hot pincers. From Ujain I went to Agra. Here I became reconciled to Khuzru through the intervention of my son Parwiz. I left Agra for Delhi. At Delhi I heard of a rebellion in Kanouj. I sent a force to put it down. Thirty thousand rebels were slain ; ten thousand heads were sent to Delhi ; ten thousand bodies were hung on trees with their heads downwards along the several highways. Notwithstanding frequent massacres there are almost constant rebellions in Hindustan. There is not a province in the empire in which half a million of people have not been slaughtered during my own reign and that of my father. Ever and apon some accursed miscreant springs up to unfurl the standard

CHAPTER V. of rebellion. In Hindustan there never has existed a period of complete repose.”⁸⁸

Moghul wars
against Hindú
peasantry.

This horrible state of things was not an episode in the reign of Jehangír ; it began in the reign of Akber ; it lasted for a century longer. Manouchi confirms the testimony of Jehangír. He wrote at the latter end of the seventeenth century. His account is based partly on the Moghul chronicles ; partly on his personal experience during a life of forty-eight years in India. His evidence is to the following effect :—“ The war against the rebellious peasants gave more trouble to Akber than all his wars against the Rajas. The peasants were entrenched in inaccessible forests ; they were familiar with the paths ; they burst forth in bands to burn and pillage villages. When taken by surprise, they fortified themselves amidst ruined habitations. They fought with carbines. When attacked they discharged their carbines at the distance of half a musket-shot. Their wives reloaded their carbines. When their ammunition was exhausted, they fought with bows and javelins. The war against the peasants began in the reign of Akber ; it is not yet over ; to this day the wretches are beheaded whenever they are found in the villages carrying arms. Nothing is more common than for travellers to find heads hung upon the trees, or fixed upon poles, along the great roads. These robbers are to be known by their shaven chins ; their long mustachios which reach to the ears. They are dispersed amongst all the villages between Agra and Delhi.”⁸⁹

⁸⁸ Jehangír’s Memoirs of Himself ; translated by Major Price, pages 117 to 128 : London, 1829. The language of Jehangir is a reflex of his detestable character.

⁸⁹ Cafrou’s History of the Moghul Dynasty in India, founded on the Memoirs of Manouchi, page 97 : London, 1826.

Jehangír reigned nine years after Roe's departure. His further movements are of little moment in history. After some wanderings he proceeded to Lahore. He made Lahore his head quarters; he spent the hot months of every year amongst the cool mountains of Kashmír. The history of his reign is a record of intrigue, treachery, and murder. It has no parallel except in oriental annals. Horrible as it will appear, it is confirmed by the fact that the current of affairs in Persia was equally marked by perfidy and blood.

The chief actors in the tragedy are easily realized. Jehangír was the indolent and self-indulgent sovereign. Núr Mahal was the jealous and vindictive queen. Khuzru was the heir-apparent; he was heir to nothing but misfortune; he was helpless and out of favour. Parwíz was a drunkard; he played a small part in the drama; he died before it was over. Shah Jehan was still in favour with Jehangír; he was hated by Núr Mahal; he was ready to commit any crime that would clear his way to the throne.

Núr Mahal had betrothed her daughter to Shahryár, the fourth and youngest son of Jehangír. She had thus become the natural enemy of Khuzru, Parwíz, and Shah Jehan. Henceforth she plotted their destruction; they stood between Shahryár and the throne. Doubtless she anticipated the death of Jehangír; she aspired to reign after him in the name of Shahryár.

There was a breach between Núr Mahal and her brother Asof Khan; they were plotting for different ends. Núr Mahal was working for her son-in-law Shahryár. Asof Khan was working for his son-in-law Shah Jehan.

CHAPTER V.
Summer and
winter migra-
tions : reign
ends in tragedy.

Actors in the
tragedy.

Núr Mahal's
daughter.

Breach between
Núr Mahal and
Asof Khan.

CHAPTER V.The Khan
Khanán.

Two men appear upon the stage as types of classes. They were known as the 'Khan Khanán' and Mahábat Khan. The Khan Khanán was a Moghul.⁹⁰ He had long been notorious for treachery and corruption whilst commanding the army in the Dekhan. He had made his peace with Shah Jehan by giving him a daughter in marriage. He had become the staunch ally of Shah Jehan; but he was false and treacherous like all Moghuls; it was easy to foresee that he would desert his own son-in-law if it served his ends.

Mahábat Khan,
the Rajpoot.

Mahábat Khan was a Rajpoot; he commanded Rajpoots; he showed himself on all occasions to be a Rajpoot. His loyalty to Jehangír under the strongest provocations was an instinct in his Rajpoot nature. It shows the marked superiority of the Rajpoot to the Moghul.⁹¹

War in the
Dekhan.

The first tragedy was the murder of Khuzru. The war in the Dekhan broke out afresh. Shah Jehan was ordered to return to Burhanpur; he still had reason to fear Khuzru; he refused to leave the court unless he took Khuzru with him. Núr Mahal raised no objection; if Khuzru was murdered, Shahryár would be rid of another rival. Shah Jehan proceeded to the Dekhan accompanied by

⁹⁰ This is the same man who has already appeared in history in the reigns of Jehangír and Akber. He was a son of Bairam Khan. Khan Khanán is not a name. It is the title of the commander-in-chief.

⁹¹ Herbert says that Mahábat Khan was a Rajpoot. Jehangír, in his Autobiography, says that he was an Afghan. He must refer to some other Mahábat Khan. Mahábat Khan commanded Rajpoots; the Rajpoots would obey no one but their own Raja. Mahábat Khan was viceroy of Kábúl; no Afghan would be appointed viceroy of Kábúl. Jehangír was likely to follow the example of Akber; to appoint Mahábat Khan to be viceroy of Kábúl, and to keep down the Afghans by an army of Rajpoots. Tod clears up the difficulty. Mahábat Khan was a Rajpoot of the family of the Rana of Chítór. He had been converted to the Mussulman religion. Tod's *Rajasthan*, vol. ii. page 42 note.

his eldest brother under guard. He was also accompanied by his father-in-law the Khan Khanán.

The details of the war in the Dekhan are of small importance. Shah Jehan fixed his headquarters at Burhanpur; he soon reduced Malik Amber to submission. Suddenly the news reached Burhanpur that Jehangir was dying. Tidings that the Padishah was dead or dying always created a ferment. If Jehangir died, Khuzru would have succeeded to the throne. Shah Jehan had thus the strongest motives for getting rid of Khuzru. He feigned sickness; he left Burhanpur; in his absence Khuzru was strangled in the night by one of the officers of the Khan Khanán. Next morning the wife of Khuzru entered the chamber; she saw that her husband had been strangled; she shrieked, tore her hair, and proclaimed the murder. Shah Jehan returned to Burhanpur; he affected deep sorrow. Every one in Burhanpur suspected him of the murder; they all cursed him as the prime mover in the crime.⁹²

Jehangir had by this time recovered of his sickness. He guessed at once that Khuzru had been murdered by Shah Jehan. He sent for the widow and her son Buláki. He gave Buláki the rank of Ten thousand horse. He declared Buláki to be his successor to the empire. The crime that was to have placed Shah Jehan upon the throne only led to the elevation of Buláki.

Núr Mahal must have been confounded by the

Núr Mahal checkmated.

⁹². See Heybert's Travels, folio, pages 79 et seq. London, 1635. Herbert travelled in India in 1626; he was thus a contemporary of the events he describes. He was an English gentleman of good family. His statements are confirmed by Father Catrou. He is the main authority for the remainder of the history of the reign of Jehangir.

Murder of
Khuzru.

Jehangir sus-
pects Shah
Jehan; appoints
Buláki to be
crown prince.

CHAPTER V. nomination of Buláki. He was only a child ; possibly she purposed to get rid of him on a future day. Meanwhile she was bent on the ruin of Shah Jehan. She plotted to get Shah Jehan out of the Dekhan. The Persians had taken possession of Kandahar. Shah Jehan was ordered to proceed to the north-west and drive the Persians out of Kandahar. He pretended that he could not leave the Dekhan. He was soon out-maneuvred. The command of the expedition to Kandahar was given to Shahryár. Shah Jehan was ordered to send the greater part of his army to Shahryár. The leading officers in his army were ordered to leave him and join the camp of Shahryár.

Plot of Asaf Khan and Shah Jehan.

Shah Jehan's affairs were desperate ; there was no fighting against Núr Mahal. He had some hope of Asof Khan ; he had married Asof Khan's daughter. Asof Khan was secretly working in his favour. A plot was hatched of startling audacity. Asof Khan formed a plan for getting possession of the vast treasures at Agra. Had it been successful Shah Jehan could have bought over all the officers in Jehangír's army. They would have rushed to his standard directly they heard that he had got the gold. The plot very nearly succeeded. Asof Khan persuaded Jehangír to move the treasures from Agra to Lahore. Shah Jehan was to capture the treasure on the road. He was ambitious, greedy, and revengeful ; he had no scruple about robbing his father ; the plot suited every passion in his nature. He at once prepared to play his part in the scheme.

Failure.

Asof Khan carried Jehangír's order to Agra. The treasurer at Agra was suspicious of the order ;

he objected to the cost and danger of carriage ; he was overruled by Asof Khan. The camels were loaded ; they were about to leave the fortress. Suddenly the treasurer heard that Shah Jehan was coming up from the Dekhan by forced marches. He saw through the plot in a moment. He unloaded the camels ; he reported the coming of Shah Jehan to Jehangír. When Shah Jehan came up, the treasure was safely lodged in the fortress. He tried in vain to capture the fortress. He wasted three weeks in the attempt. Then he heard that Jehangír had left Lahore and was marching towards Delhi. He had no alternative but to fight against his father.

Jehangír had been roused from his lethargy. <sup>Indignation of
Jehangír.</sup> The plot to rob him of his treasures fell upon him like a thunderbolt. He summoned forces from the extremities of his empire ; from Mahábat Khan, viceroy of Kábúl ; from Parwíz, viceroy of Bengal. He marched from Lahoro to Delhi to fight against his son. The two armies met near Delhi. The battle raged after the manner of Asiatic battles. For some time the victory was with Shah Jehan. A rebel Raja in his army cut his way to Jehangír's camp ; he seized Jehangír as his prisoner ; he was beaten down by a battle-axe ; he died with a curse upon his lips. The Rajpoots round him were seized with a panic. Shah Jehan shouted and threatened in vain ; Rajpoots obey no one but their Raja. They rushed from the field ; the whole of the rebel army followed. All was lost. Shah Jehan galloped off to the south ; he escaped with a few horsemen to the mountains of Mewát.⁹³

⁹³ The plot of Asof Khan and Shah Jehan to seize the treasure at Agra is

CHAPTER V.

Vacillation of
Shah Jehan.

Asiatic movements are often a riddle. They defy all calculation; they are a series of startling surprises. Within a few weeks of the battle Shah Jehan was reconciled to Jehangír. Shah Jehan humbled himself to the dust; implored forgiveness; took a solemn oath never to rebel again. In the end Jehangír forgave him; within a few months he broke out in another rebellion.

Rebellion.

Jealousy was at the bottom of the second rebellion. Jehangír had treated Parwíz with great favour; he had appointed Mahábat Khan the Rajpoot to the command of the army.⁹⁴ Shah Jehan revolted out of jealousy of Parwíz; the Khan Khanán joined him out of jealousy of Mahábat Khan. Parwíz and Mahábat Khan marched against the rebels. Shah Jehan and the Khan Khanán retreated southward towards Burhanpur. The Khan Khanán played a new game of treachery; he tried to save himself by betraying Shah Jehan. The plot was discovered; the Khan Khanán openly deserted to the army of Parwíz and Mahábat Khan; Shah Jehan was forced to fly out of the empire.

Shah Jehan
ravages Bengal.

The disappearance of Shah Jehan was a mystery. Nothing was heard of him for months. Suddenly he turned up in Bengal. He had gone across India from Burhanpur eastward to the Telinga country; he had then pushed northwards

one of the most suggestive events in the history of Moghul India. Strange to say, it has been ignored by modern historians. Few accounts, however, can be better authenticated. The story is told by Herbert, who was in India very shortly afterwards. It was also told in the Moghul chronicle on which Manouchi based his memoirs. Its historical significance is undoubtedly. Nothing could better show the lawlessness of men's minds under Moghul rule.

⁹⁴ Mahábat Khan is said to have been appointed to the post of Khan Khanán. The statement is perplexing. The Rajpoot could only command Rajpoots; the Moghul could only command Moghuls. Possibly a Rajpoot army was sent to take the place of the Moghul army.

through Orissa into Bengal. His march resembled CHAPTER V. the flying raids of Ala-ud-dín and Malik Kafúr. He appeared before Dacca, the new capital of Bengal. The viceroy of Bengal was taken by surprise ; he was seized with a panic ; he fled in hot haste from Dacca to Benares. Shah Jehan ravaged all Bengal ; he pillaged towns and villages ; he robbed the inhabitants of their money and jewels ; he committed outrages which rendered his army a terror.

The imperial army under Parwíz and Mahábat Khan was soon on the move. It advanced from the Dekhan in a northerly direction towards Allahabad ; it then moved in an easterly direction towards Benares. A battle was fought near Benares. The old antagonism was working mischief in both armies. The Mussulmans were jealous of the Rajpoots. Shah Jehan very nearly routed his enemies. His Rajpoots had gained the victory ; but his Mussulmans hung back. The Rajpoots were unsupported ; they were soon beaten. The whole of the rebel army turned tail and fled. Shah Jehan saw that fate was still against him. He struck the ground with his lance ; he left his camp to be plundered ; he galloped off to the south with four thousand horsemen, to seek once more for refuge in the Dekhan.

The antagonism between Mussulman and Rajpoot was beginning to rend the empire. Akber had kept the peace between the two ; he had played one against the other ; he had maintained a balance of power in the body politic. Before he died signs of a rupture were already manifest. The Mussulman party supported the revolt of Jehangír ; the Rajpoot party favoured the succession of Khuzru.

Antagonism
between Mus-
sulman and
Rajpoot.

CHAPTER V. Jehangír had no policy ; he was driven along by his temper or by Núr Mahal. Before his accession the Rajpoots had angered him by fighting against him. After his accession he had favoured the Mussulmans. After the revolt of Khuzru he leaned somewhat towards the Rajpoots. He wavered to and fro ; he trimmed between the two ; his trimming saved the empire.

Division in the imperial army. The imperial army was divided like the rebel army. Mahábat Khan was a Rajpoqt. Parwíz was a Mussulman. There was a traitor in the camp ; the Khan Khanán was playing his old game of treachery ; like a true Moghul he plotted against the Rajpoot. Mahábat Khan discovered his intrigues ; he placed the Khan Khanán under arrest. The Khan Khanán was still at work. He kindled the jealousy of Parwíz against Mahábat Khan. Meantime Núr Mahal and Asof Khan were plotting against Mahábat Khan. The storm soon burst upon the Rajpoot general. Jehangír ordered the Khan Khanán to be sent to Lahore. Shortly afterwards he deprived Mahábat Khan of his command ; he appointed an Afghan named Khan Jehan to command in the room of Mahábat Khan. The appointment is the key to Jehangír's policy. His father Akber had gained his ends by pitting the Rajpoots against the Afghans. Jehangír adopted the dangerous idea of pitting the Afghans against the Rajpoots. The outcome of this policy will be seen in the next reign.

Mahábat Khan appeals to Jehangír. Mahábat Khan was well-nigh broken-hearted. He knew that Jehangír was an old dotard ; he knew that Núr Mahal and the Khan Khanán had worked his ruin. He retired to a fortress of his own ; he would wait until time proved his innocence. But

Núr Mahal stung him with further insults ; she CHAPTER V. ordered him to quit his fortress and go to Orissa. In desperation he raised a force of five thousand Rajpoots. He resolved to go to Lahore and make his own defence to Jehangír.

Núr Mahal and Asof Khan were kept informed of every movement. They feared the Rajpoots ; they feared that Mahábat Khan would ingratiate himself with Jehangír. They induced Jehangír to order Mahábat Khan to come alone and answer for his infamy. Mahábat Khan saw through their craft. He had married his daughter to a young noble ; he sent the bridegroom to make his excuse and treat on surer terms. Núr Mahal kept the matter secret from Jehangír. She issued her own orders ; they were the expression of a vindictiveness at once feminine and oriental. When Mahábat Khan's son-in-law entered the imperial camp, he was forced to dismount from his elephants, to disrobe himself of his bravery, to clothe himself in filthy rags. He was then cruelly beaten with rattans, set backwards on a lean horse, and conducted bare-headed through the imperial army.

Mahábat Khan was furious at the insult ; still ^{Revenge of} _{Mahábat Khan.} he retained his self-constraint. He knew that Núr Mahal was alone to blame ; indeed, the whole country was incensed at her. He took measures accordingly. The imperial army had left Lahore and was proceeding to Kábul. It was crossing the river Jhelum by a bridge of boats. At daybreak most of the troops had gone over : Jehangír was still sleeping. Suddenly Mahábat Khan surrounded his tents, with Rajpoots and carried him off prisoner.

The confusion that followed beggars description.

CHAPTER V.**Jehangir a
prisoner.**

Jehangír was helpless ; he was mounted on an elephant and guarded with Rajpoots ; otherwise he was treated with the respect due to the Padishah. At heart he was glad to be rid of Núr Mahal and Asof Khan ; he said as much to Mahábat Khan ; what sorrows he had he drowned in wine and opium. Núr Mahal was like a tigress robbed of her prey. She had crossed the river, but re-crossed it. She made a desperate effort to recover Jehangír ; there was no standing against the Rajpoots. In the end she was taken prisoner with her brother Asof Khan.

**Mahábat Khan
deluded.**

Meantime the authority of Mahábat Khan was supreme ; the whole army obeyed him. He was no rebel ; he meant no harm to Jehangír ; he sought to clear his honour and be revenged on Núr Mahal. The death of Núr Mahal was becoming a state necessity ; she had engulfed the empire. The monster multitude exclaimed against her ; Mahábat Khan and many of the nobles assented to her execution. She had one resource left ; she craved permission to take farewell of Jehangír. She was reluctantly admitted ; she won over Jehangír ; he implored Mahábat Khan to release her. Mahábat Khan could not disobey. He had been gulled into the belief that Jehangír would never leave him. Probably he hesitated to take the life of a woman.

**Escape of Núr
Mahal and
Jehangir.**

Núr Mahal regained her liberty ; she found intrigues ready to her hand. The antagonism between Mussulman and Rajpoot was growing fiercer day by day. It led to treacheries, brawls, and murders. She emptied the coffers of Jehangír ; she raised an army to fight against the Rajpoots ; she formed a strong league of Moghuls and Afghans against the

Rajpoots. The history is very obscure ; the action CHAPTER V. of the Moghuls is uncertain ; to all appearance Núr Mahal was working the Afghans against the Rajpoots. At this crisis Jehangír fled from Mahábat Khan and joined the army of Núr Mahal.

Mahábat Khan was taken aback. He had been ^{Mahábat Khan joins Shah Jehan.} befooled by Jehangír ; he soon found that Jehangír was still the slave of Núr Mahal. He received a peremptory order from Jehangír to release Asof Khan. He obeyed, but obedience availed him nothing. Núr Mahal set all his enemies against him. Parwíz died at this time, or he would have joined Parwíz. He fled to the Rana of Udaipur ; Jehangír demanded his surrender. In this extremity Mahábat Khan baffled all his enemies ; he marched off to the Dekhan ; he joined his forces to those of Shah Jehan.

Amidst this round of intrigues and treacheries ^{Death of Jehangír, 1627.} Jehangír was sinking to his grave. He was sixty years of age. He had gone to Kashmír in the hot months of 1627 ; asthma forced him to return. Death overtook him on the way. He again nominated Buláki to succeed him on the throne. He died on the twelfth of October, 1627.

The power of Núr Mahal was gone in a moment. It was based upon the doting fondness of Jehangír ; it vanished with his last breath. She had no genius, no policy. She was guided only by a vindictive temper which shut her eyes to consequences. She blindly espoused the cause of Shahryár. She blindly drove Mahábat Khan into the arms of Shah Jehan. Possibly there were springs of action in her feminine nature which are hidden from the historian. Roe hints at an early amour between Núr Mahal and

^{Fall of Núr Mahal : coronation of Buláki.}

CHAPTER V. Shah Jehan. Herbert says more distinctly that she would have had an amour with the son of Mahábat Khan, but for her hatred towards the father. Shahryár was a fool; possibly she had a passion for Shahryár. She was suspected of having poisoned Parwíz and Jehangír. On the death of Jehangír, she sent Shahryár with a body of horse to secure Lahore. Meantime she was suspected of plotting against the lives of Buláki, and her own brother Asof Khan. The result was that the army turned against her. Buláki was enthroned at Delhi; Asof Khan carried him in triumph to Lahore. Shahryár hazarded a battle; he was betrayed by his own captains; he was taken prisoner and confined in the fortress of Lahore. He was deprived of his eyes, and would have been deprived of his life, but for the intercession of Buláki.

*Short reign of
Buláki, 1627-8.*

For a brief period Buláki was emperor of Hindustan. An army was sent against Núr Mahal. There was treachery in her camp; her troubles had crushed her spirit. She dismissed her guard and threw herself on the mercy of Buláki. The young Padishah assured her of safety and protection. Throughout his short reign of three months she was treated with every respect and consideration. Buláki moved his court to Agra; he was accompanied by Asof Khan; the object was to be nearer Shah Jehan; to compel Shah Jehan to tender his submission.

*Pretended
funeral of Shah
Jehan, 1628.*

Meantime there was an under current of intrigue in favour of Shah Jehan. Asof Khan had been forced to place Buláki upon the throne; no other measure would have pacified the army and checkmated Núr Mahal. A plot was laid which could only occur to an oriental. It was given out

that Shah Jehan was dangerously ill ; next that he CHAPTER V.
was dead. Buláki was requested to permit Shah
Jehan to be buried in the tomb of Akber. Nothing
could have been more gratifying to Buláki than the
burial of his rival. Mahábat Khan conducted an
empty bier in sad procession to Agra. He was
accompanied by a thousand of Shah Jehan's best
officers. He was followed by Shah Jehan in dis-
guise. He was joined on the way by squadrons of
Rajpoots, as if to do honour to the ceremony.
Buláki was persuaded to go out with a small escort
to conduct his uncle's remains to the tomb of Akber.
When he saw the vast procession he was frightened ;
he suspected a plot ; he stole away to Lahore.
The trumpets were sounded ; Shah Jehan was pro-
claimed Padishah. He entered the fortress in tri-
umph, amidst the acclamations of the people and
army. In a moment Buláki was forgotten ; in the
same moment Shah Jehan began to reign.⁹⁵

There was no one left to oppose Shah Jehan
excepting the princes who had taken refuge in the
fortress at Lahore. The same villain that murdered
Khuzru at Burhanpur was employed to murder the
princes at Lahore. The tale of slaughter is hideous.
Buláki and Shahryár were strangled.⁹⁶ Two sons of
Danyál, two sons of Murád, and two sons of Parwíz,

Shah Jehan
gains the
throne :
massacre.

⁹⁵ The story of the pretended funeral of Shah Jehan is told by Tavernier. It is confirmed by Catrou.

⁹⁶ Herbert's Travels. Catrou tells the story differently. The death of Buláki is a mystery. Some authorities say he was killed ; others, that he escaped into Persia. A man, calling himself Buláki, certainly escaped into Persia ; the Duke of Holstein's ambassadors saw him there in 1637. At that time ambassadors from Shah Jahan to the Shah of Persia were demanding the surrender of the exile. The Shah refused to surrender him. To this day it is a question whether the fugitive was the real Buláki or an impostor ; either way he would be dangerous to Shah Jehan. See "Voyages and Travels of the Ambassadors," by Adam Olearius, Secretary to the Embassy. Folio : London, 1669.

CHAPTER V. were murdered in like manner. Their bodies were buried in a garden at Lahore ; their heads were sent to the new Padishah. In this manner Shah Jehan waded through a sea of blood to the throne of Hindustan.⁹⁷

⁹⁷ The main authorities for the history of the closing years of the reign of Jehangir are Sir Thomas Herbert's Travels in India and Father Catrou's work on the Moghul sovereigns. The chronology is somewhat loose ; there are conflicting statements as regards some of the dates. This difficulty is still greater in dealing with the reign of Shah Jehan. Fortunately no question of importance is involved. It is therefore considered unnecessary to trouble the reader with dates ; they do not help the story ; they only involve long disquisitions.

CHAPTER VI.

THE MOGHUL EMPIRE : SHAH JEHAN.

A. D. 1628 to 1658.

SHAH JEHAN was thirty-seven years of age when CHAPTER VI.
The character of
Shah Jehan,
his political
situation. he was proclaimed Padishah. He had been scheming for the throne from his boyhood. He had no political genius, no manly ambition, no administrative capacity. He wanted to be sovereign ; to be courted, flattered, and admired ; to gratify every whim and passion. He was intriguing and unscrupulous ; his character was a hindrance to his success ; no one trusted him. He gained the throne by sheer force of circumstances.¹ Every one hated Núr Mahal. There was no one but Shah Jehan who could suppress Núr Mahal. Buláki would have been ruined by her ; Shahryár would have been a puppet in her hands. She had made a deadly enemy of Shah Jehan ; he could keep her encaged for life. From the moment Shah Jehan obtained the throne, nothing further is known of Núr Mahal.

Shah Jehan had no more religion than Jéhangír. At first he leaned towards the Mussulmans ; he made

¹ Asiatics ascribe the good fortune of Shah Jehan to the influence of the stars. He is known as the lord of the happy conjunction of Jupiter and Venus. In modern times there have only been three lords of this conjunction :—Timúr, Shah Jehan, and Nadir Shah.

CHAPTER VI. some concessions to Mussulman prejudices. : He
 Leans to Islam : abolished the solar year which had been introduced
 hates Christianity.

by Akber; he restored the lunar year of Islam. He forbade the prostrations before the throne which had scandalized Mussulmans in the reigns of Akber and Jehangír.² He spit his hatred against Christians and Christianity. He made war upon the Portuguese at Hugli. He soon returned to the old Moghul groove. His Hindú blood began to show itself. In the end he became more Hinduized than Akber.

Influence of
Mumtaz Mahal.

The Mussulman proclivities of Shah Jehan were due to the influence of his wife Mumtaz Mahal. This lady was of the same type as her aunt Núr Mahal. She fascinated Shah Jehan as Núr Mahal had fascinated Jehangír.³ She had reasons of her own for hating the Portuguese. In the lax reign of Jehangír two of her daughters had been converted by the Christian Fathers; they had found an asylum amongst the Portuguese.⁴ Nothing further is known of these conversions. Young Moghul ladies would incline to a religion which delivered them from the harem, probably gave them husbands, and prohibited the husbands from taking other wives.

Punishment of
the Portuguese.

Shah Jehan had his own wrongs to revenge. The Portuguese had refused to help him in his rebellion against his father; they had joined the army of Parwíz and fought against him. The capture of

² This fact is doubtful. It is given on oriental authorities which are unreliable. It is contradicted by the story of Shah Jehan's treatment of the Persian ambassador, which will be related hereafter.

³ This fascination was doubtless due to the dazzling white complexions of the two ladies. Jehangír had an olive complexion; Shah Jehan was probably browner. See the description of the Taj Mahal further on.

⁴ Catrou's History of the Moghul Dynasty.

Hugli was not a difficult matter. Five or six hundred Portuguese were taken prisoners and sent to Agra. Some became Mussulmans ; others suffered martyrdom. Had Mumtaz Mahal been alive they would all have suffered a cruel death ; she had vowed to have them cut to pieces. By this time she was dead. Shah Jehan placed some of the Portuguese women in his own harem ; he distributed others among his dissolute Amírs.⁵

Meantime the affairs of the Dekhan called for the interference of Shah Jehan. Intrigues of
Khan Jehan,
the Afghan
Sunní. Jehangír had recalled Mahábat Khan the Rajpoot from the command of the army of the Dekhan ; he had appointed an Afghan, named Khan Jehan, to command the army in the room of Mahábat Khan.⁶ The idea was to pit the Afghans against the Rajpoots. A worse appointment could not have been made. Khan Jehan was an Afghan and a Sunní ; so was Malik Amber the Abyssinian. Khan Jehan made no attempt to carry on the war against Ahmadnagar. On the contrary, he gave back to Malik Amber all the territory which had been conquered by Shah Jehan. Possibly he was plotting to upset Moghul rule ; to resuscitate the Sunní religion ; to found

⁵ The story of Shah Jehan's operations against the Portuguese has already been related. See *ante*, vol. iii. chap. 9. It is there stated, on the authority of Bernier, that Shah Jehan's object was to punish the Portuguese for dealing in slaves. Possibly this was one reason why Mumtaz Mahal urged on the war ; it would have had no force for a prince like Shah Jehan.

Shah Jehan's fancy for Portuguese women is suggestive. Akber married a Christian wife ; Jehangír wanted Portuguese women. Such unions are not peculiar to Moghul history ; they characterize the history of the Ottoman Turks. Mahomet the Great was the son of Amurath by a Christian wife. His celebrated concubine Irene was of Christian parentage. Other instances are related by Knolles.

⁶ The point is not quite clear. The change of command was probably accompanied by a change of armies. Mahábat Khan would only command Rajpoots ; Khan Jehan would only command Afghans.

CHAPTER VI. another Afghan dynasty. When Shah Jehan was marching to Agra to seize the throne, Khan Jehan refused to join him ; it was impossible for Afghans to co-operate with Rajpoots in behalf of a bad Sháh like Shah Jehan.⁷

Submission of Khan Jehan.

When Shah Jehan had gained the throne, Khan Jehan made his submission. Things had gone against him in Ahmadnagar. Malik Amber was dead ; his son Fath Khan succeeded to the post of minister. Fath Khan quarrelled with the Sultan ; Sháhís and Mahrattas sided with the Sultan against the Abyssinian Sunnís. The Sunnís were losing ground ; Khan Jehan was thus forced to submit to Shah Jehan.

Antagonism between Shah Jehan and Khan Jehan.

Shah Jehan accepted the submission of Khan Jehan ; he invited Khan Jchan to court ; he received him at Agra with great favour. Treachery was at work, probably on both sides. One night there was an uproar. Khan Jchan was marching out of Agra with two thousand Afghans ; his drums were beaten as if to arouse others. He went due south towards the river Chambal. Within two hours the imperial forces were in hot pursuit. A battle came off on the bank of the Chambal. The Rajpoots fought the Afghans with the greatest fury ; they got down from their horses and charged the Afghans with pikes. The Moghuls were languid or disaffected ; they would not fight at all. Khan Jchan escaped to the opposite bank ; the imperial forces would not follow him ; they turned back to Agra.

Khan Jchan was in open rebellion. The Mus-

⁷ Father Catrou is silent as regards the revolt of Khan Jchan. The story is told by Kháfi Khan ; it is quoted by Elphinstone ; it is noticed by Mandelslo ; it throws light upon the antagonism between Afghans and Rajpoots.

sultans in the imperial army would not fight the Afghans. The Moghul court was in the utmost alarm. Shah Jehan took the field in person; at least one strong division was entirely composed of Rajpoots.⁸ He resolved to strike at Ahmadnagar; he sent a strong force in pursuit of Khan Jehan.

Ahmadnagar was doomed. The Sultan had imprisoned his minister. When threatened by Shah Jehan he released the minister. The minister strangled the Sultan; he placed the son of the Sultan on the throne as a puppet; he then sent his submission to Shah Jehan. In the end the Moghul annexed Ahmadnagar and Berár. The minister was pensioned. The infant Sultan was imprisoned for life in the fortress of Gwalior. Further south Bijápur and Golkonda remained independent; they promised to pay yearly tribute; they rarely or ever paid it.⁹

Khan Jehan's fate is soon told. He reached Ahmadnagar; he found that Shah Jehan was too strong for him. He tried to return to Hindustan. The Rajpoots surrounded him; he was killed with a pike; his head was sent to Shah Jehan.

The Rajpoots fought bravely against the Afghans; they were not loyal at heart towards Shah Jehan. They had never been loyal to Jehangír and Shah Jehan as they had been to Akber. They feared Akber and they were devoted to him. When Jehangír rebelled against Akber not a Rajpoot would join him. When Shah Jehan rebelled against Jehangír he was helped by Rajpoots. The Rajpoot princes drew large allowances from the Moghul;

See the description of the army in Mendelslo's Travels, page 39.

⁹ See Grant Duff's History of the Mahrattas, vol. i. chap. 27.

CHAPTER VI. they paid him homage ; they mounted guard in their turn. All the time they were disaffected towards the Padishah and his ministers ; they were ready to make common cause with any movement against the court. Neither Jehangír nor Shah Jehan could inspire them with respect or fear.

Wars of the tributary Rajas.

The Rajpoot princes outside the Moghul service were more hostile and refractory. They were called tributary Rajas ; it is doubtful whether they ever paid any tribute. They were protected by inaccessible mountains and vast forests. They helped the enemies of the Moghul, desolated his dominions, harassed his subjects, hindered trade, and plundered caravans. They were a constant terror to the Moghuls. Had they combined they might have driven the Moghuls out of Hindustan ; their wars and feuds amongst themselves rendered confederation impossible. The policy of the Moghuls was to foment dissensions amongst the Rajpoots ; to set them against one another. Whilst the Rajpoots were at war against each other the Moghul empire staggered on.¹⁰

Rajpoot contempt for Shah Jehan : death of Umra Singh.

The Rajpoots began to hold Shah Jehan in contempt. Umra Singh, prince of Marwar, entered the Moghul's service with all his retainers. He was refractory about mounting guard. He went away for a fortnight without leave. When he returned Shah Jehan rebuked him ; he replied that he had

¹⁰ India was certainly open to invasion throughout the reign of Shah Jehan. There was, however, no invader. Neither Persia, Turkestan, nor China were strong enough to conquer the rude tribes that separated each country from India. Had the Portuguese been the men they were a century earlier they might have conquered India. But they had orientalized themselves ; they had sunk into effeminacy ; they had been weakened by their frequent wars with Dutch and English.

been hunting. Shah Jehan sent the Bakhshi to levy CHAPTER VI. a fine upon the Rajpoot; Umra Singh ordered the Bakhshi to leave his quarters. Shah Jehan summoned the Rajpoot to the Durbar. Umra Singh obeyed. He carried a dagger in his sleeve. He entered the hall whilst the Bakhshi was speaking to Shah Jehan. He pushed his way through the crowd of Amírs and Rajas as if to speak to the Padishah. Suddenly he stabbed the minister to the heart; he began to strike at those around him. Shah Jehan was in a panic of fear. He left the throne and ran into the harem. At last Umra Singh was overpowered and slain. Meantime his retainers heard the tidings. They put on their saffron clothes; they rushed off to the palace; they murdered all they met; they threatened to plunder Agra unless the dead body of their prince was given them. Shah Jehan was forced to comply; he dared not punish the Rajpoots. A great Sátí was performed for Umra Singh; thirteen women perished on the burning pile.¹¹

Shah Jehan was becoming despicable. He marched an army into Bundelkund to compel a Raja named Champat to pay tribute. Champat held a strong position. Shah Jehan was afraid to attack him. He offered to pardon Champat, to give him more territory, if he would only retire without fighting. Champat agreed; he retired from the position. Shah Jehan broke his word and attacked him. The attack failed. Shah Jehan retreated in

Shah Jehan's
treachery and
cowardice.

¹¹ Tavernier's Travels in India, Book iii. chap. 8. Catrou's History of the Moghul Dynasty, page 194. Tod's Rajasthan, vol. ii. page 45. The Rajpoots were sometimes uncontrollable. When Tavernier was at Surat a Rajpoot stabbed the governor to death for demanding custom off some calicoes.

CHAPTER VI. disgrace. Champat ravaged the Moghul's dominions; there was no one to oppose him.¹²

Childish behaviour to the Persian ambassador.

Shah Jchan had lost all manliness of character. He received an ambassador from Persia; he made childish efforts to induce the Persian to prostrate himself. At last he shut the grand entrance to the Durbar court; he left nothing but a low gateway which no one could pass without stooping. The Persian saw the trick; he went through the gateway backwards. Shah Jehan boiled over with rage. "What," he exclaimed, "do you think you are entering a stable of asses?" "Most assuredly I do!" replied the Persian; "no one could enter such a wicket without thinking he was visiting asses." The retort nearly cost the Persian his life. Shah Jehan was a coward. The ambassador returned through a narrow street which led from the Durbar court to the entrance of the fortress. On the way a vicious elephant was let loose upon him. The Persian and his followers drew their bows; their arrows scared away the elephant; but for their gallantry they would have been trampled to death.¹³

Aigurd flattery. The flatterers of Shah Jehan praised him for his administration of justice. Such flattery is common

¹² Father Catrou's History of the Moghul Dynasty: reign of Shah Jehan. The other wars of Shah Jehan were of small importance. They throw some light upon the state of the frontiers; they reveal nothing whatever of the court and administration. On the north-west Kabul was a bone of contention with the Uzbegs. Farther south Kandahar was a bone of contention with Persia. In the end Kabul remained with the Moghuls; Kandahar remained with Persia. There were other petty wars against Thibet and Assam; they teach nothing; they illustrate nothing.

¹³ Bernier's Travels in the Moghul Empire. Another story told by Bernier is suggestive. An ambassador from Golkonda was equally contemptuous towards the Moghul. During the audience Shah Jehan was fanned by an ugly slave. "Is your master as tall as this slave?" he asked the ambassador. "I think not," replied the envoy; "my master is only a head taller than your Majesty."

in Asiatic courts ; the justice is nearly always wanting. Strangely enough the flattery has crept into history ; even European writers have been beguiled into the belief that Shah Jehan was an able administrator. Two samples of his judgments were recorded in the Moghul chronicles ; they suffice to refute the errors of history ; they prove his imbecility ; they exhibit the falsehood of the flattery.

The instance of Shah Jehan's equity brings out ^{Equity of Shah Jehan.} his character. A court writer complained that a soldier had stolen away his female slave. The girl was tired of the writer ; she swore that she belonged to the soldier. The case was suited to the capacity of Shah Jehan. He gave his pen for the girl to fill. She dipped the pen with dexterity ; she handed it to him with grace. She was evidently accustomed to the duty. Shah Jehan decided that she belonged to the writer. "The wisdom of the monarch was the admiration of the whole empire."¹⁴

An instance of Shah Jehan's supervision of his ^{Supervision of justice.} magistrates is equally suggestive. He was told that the Kótwal of Delhi had taken a bribe. He sent a cobra to the offender. The Kótwal allowed himself to be bitten ; he died in a few hours. Such is the Moghul idea of an able sovereign.

One great measure is attributed to Shah Jehan. ^{Highway robbers.} He is said to have exterminated all the robbers in the empire. The flattery is shameless falsehood. It is contradicted by Manouchi. It is contradicted by every European traveller who visited India during the reign of Shah Jahan. It was impossible to

¹⁴ The sentence in inverted commas is taken from Father Catrou's History. Neither Catrou, nor Manouchi, nor any other European, would have written such nonsense. It is the language of an Asiatic ; it was no doubt copied from the Moghul chronicle.

CHAPTER VI. travel anywhere without a guard of twenty or thirty soldiers.

Shah Jehan, the slave of the harem.

The cause of Shah Jehan's imbecility is obvious. He had lost every sense of manliness by his unbounded sensualities. To use the language of a Rajpoot bard, he was the slave of the harem.¹⁵ A general description of the harem will serve to indicate the character of his reign.¹⁶

Mahal or harem : guard of Tartar women.

The harem quarter of the palace was called the Mahal. It covered an immense area between the Ghusal-khana and the Jharokha window. It comprised numerous chambers opening into gardens and fountains. Two thousand women dwelt in the harem; nothing was known of them save what was told by eunuchs and lady visitors. No man was allowed to enter except the Padishah. There to all appearance he reigned supreme in a paradise of houris. The realities will be gathered from the history. There was constant intrigue; no life was safe. The Padishah was guarded by a hundred Tartar women. This force of Amazons was commanded by a woman; she had the rank and pay of an Amír of the empire.

Queens, princesses, and concubines.

The ladies of the harem were ranked as queens, princesses, and concubines. Each lady had quarters of her own, and a monthly salary according to her rank. The queens and princesses were served from the royal kitchens; hence they were called Begums, that is, "free from care." The concubines provided their own food out of their monthly salaries.

Queens, princesses, and concubines were all

¹⁵ See Tod's Rajasthan, vol. ii. p. 47.

¹⁶ The account of the harem is given on the authority of Manouchi's description. It corresponds to what is known of the harem of the king of Burma.

arrayed in the same fashion.. They formed their CHAPTER VI.
hair in tresses.¹⁷ They wore a new dress of a dif- ^{Dress.}ferent colour every day. They were adorned with numerous jewels. Each one wore a mirror on her thumb ; it was fastened on a ring. They were ever looking at their mirrors.

Every lady had her own band of damsels. The <sup>Dancing girls
and slave girls.</sup> damsels sang, danced, played on musical instruments, acted parts in dramas and spectacles. Sometimes all the bands performed in concert before the Padishah. Any girl who pleased him might become a concubine or queen ; from the day of her promotion she had a chamber and a salary of her own. Every lady had her own slaves ; they did the menial work of the harem ; they played no part in history.

The ruling powers in the Mahal might be likened to <sup>Female admin-
istration.</sup> duennas and governesses. Their authority was supreme in the Mahal ; their influence was often felt to the extremities of the empire. They filled offices in the harem corresponding to those of the chief ministers of state ; they went by similar names, such as vizier, treasurer, and paymaster. They carried on a correspondence with the ministers ; they sent couriers to any city or province they pleased ; they formed the harem council of the Padishah. They received presents from ministers, viceroys, and governors ; they procured presents for the favourites of the Padishah. The power of these duennas was immense. The Mahal was a network of intrigue. Every Amír was anxious to place a daughter in the Mahal. If she gained favour she furthered the advancement of her father ; on the other hand, she was expected to reveal all the secrets of her family.¹⁷

¹⁷ Such depraved subserviency is in strict accordance with Moghul ideas.

CHAPTER VI.

Antiquity of
female rule.

This system of female rule has been at work in Moghul empires from a remote antiquity. It was secret and searching. It is in full force to this day in the palace of the king of Burma. The expenditure of the imperial harem was beyond all computation; its pressure was felt throughout the administration and throughout the empire.

Fancy fairs.

Some monarchs might have been content to reign after the manner of Ahasuerus. Shah Jehan was not of this sort. He was depraved and selfish beyond all his predecessors. He was not content with the daughters of his Amírs; he hankered after their wives. He held a fancy fair in his palace at every festival. The wives of the Amírs attended and played at keeping shops; they brought their daughters with them. Shah Jehan and his ladies played the part of purchasers. He often broke the old Moghul law against adultery. The fact was notorious; he had no sense of shame; he gave deadly offence to the Amírs. They were his slaves; they could not resist him. When the hour of trouble came they deserted him to a man.¹⁸

The Taj Mahal.

Shah Jehan built the famous Taj Mahal at Agra. It has handed down his name to posterity. It must have cost millions sterling. Twenty thousand men are said to have laboured at it for twenty years.

Significance of
the Taj Mahal.

The Taj Mahal is a monument of historical significance. It is typical of Shah Jehan. Mumtaz

The so-called "Arabian Nights" are more Moghul than Arab. In the introduction there is a story of a Sultan of the Indies who married a daughter of one of his courtiers every evening and strangled her every morning. No objection was raised to the marriages; the murders were regarded with horror; no one dared to revolt. The daughter of the Vizier begged to be a bride of the Sultan; she beguiled him out of his murderous ways by telling him interminable stories. No Europeans, none but Asiatics, would have submitted to such tyranny.

¹⁸ Compare Bernier's Travels and Father Catrou's History.

Mahal was the name of his first wife. She was the CHAPTER VI. daughter of Asof Khan; the niece of Núr Mahal. He loved her for her beauty; his love did not prevent his marrying another wife whilst she was still alive. He built a mausoleum for her remains; he named it the Taj Mahal. The tomb is a lofty dome of white marble. It is supported by four arches of white marble; they are inlaid with precious stones of different colours in a variety of designs. Some of the gates are white marble slabs; they are exquisitely perforated. The tomb is in the midst of gardens and terraces. Round about are lofty pavilions with galleries and arched ways.

The spirit of the place is feminine. There is ^{Feminine character.} nothing stately or masculine in the buildings; nothing to recall the architecture of Greece or Rome. It is lovely beyond description; the loveliness is feminine. It is not the tomb of a wife; it is the shrine of a mistress. It awakens ideas of fair-complexioned beauty; the soul is dead; the form, the charm, the grace of beauty are lingering there. The walls are like muslin dresses radiant with flowers and jewels. The perforated marble gates are like lace veils. The pavilions with their galleries and arched ways are retreats where a sovereign might dallily with fair damsels. The Taj Mahal is the outcome of the imagination of Shah Jehan. He loved women as drunkards love wine. When they were alive he sported with them in arcades and gardens. When they were dead he enshrined them in a marble tomb and decked it with jewels.

There is a horrible scandal connected with Taj

CHAPTER VI. Mahal. It cannot be dropped in oblivion ; it finds expression in the history. Shah Jehan had a daughter by Taj Mahal ; she was known as the Begum Sahib ; he made the Begum Sahib his mistress. The influence of the Begum Sahib on Shah Jehan was known and felt to the extremities of the empire.¹⁹ She drew enormous allowances from the imperial treasury ; she received costly presents from all quarters.²⁰

General administration.

The working of the administration under these foul conditions may be gathered from an anecdote told by Tavernier. Whilst Tavernier was travelling in India an Amír was appointed viceroy of Scinde. From the first year of his administration the people complained of his tyranny and extortion. Nothing was done ; he remained four years at Scinde ; he was then recalled to Agra. The people expected he would be put to death. They were disappointed. He was received with great favour by Shah Jehan ; he was appointed viceroy of the richer province of Allahabad. The cause was soon known. Before going to Agra he sent fifty thousand gold mohurs to Shah Jehan ; he also sent twenty thousand gold

¹⁹ The relations between Shah Jehan and the Begum Sahib are too notorious to be denied ; they are mentioned by all contemporary writers ; the fact is broadly stated by Herbert, Bernier, Tavernier, and the author of the *Siyar-ul-Mutakherin*. Manouchi tries to discredit it, probably on the authority of the Moghul chronicle which would take some pains to contradict the charge. The fact, however, is too apparent. It not only finds expression in the history ; it is the key to the history.

Bernier relates two suggestive anecdotes ; they are typical of the Moghul court. On two occasions Shah Jehan discovered that the Begum Sahib had a lover. He paid her a visit when the lover was with her. The man escaped to a cauldron used for the baths. Shah Jehan affected to be unconscious ; he ordered the fire to be lit ; he would not move until he knew that the man was dead. He got rid of the second lover by giving him poisoned betel in the presence of the court ; the youth accepted it as a mark of favour ; he left the palace with gladness ; he died in his palanquin before he reached home.

²⁰ Bernier's Travels in the Moghul Empire.

mohurs to the Begum Sahib. His presents secured CHAPTER VI. him pardon and reward.²¹

The so-called history of the reign of Shah Jehan may be told in a few words. It lasted thirty years. It began in wars for the establishment of his authority. It ended in wars for the subversion of his authority. The interval is a blank; it was doubtless filled up with revolts and treacheries, such as those already recorded, such as those which were at work throughout the reign of Jehangir. The only authentic narrative that has been preserved is Catrou's history of the reign of Shah Jehan based upon the memoirs of Manouchi. Probably there was nothing worth preserving. Catrou's history chiefly refers to the great war which broke out between the four sons of Shah Jehan during the last years of the reign.

Shah Jehan spent the cool months at Agra, the hot months at Kashmir. His life in both cities was the same. To all appearance it was frittered away in public shows and private debaucheries. He had no taste for literature; he cared not for learned men. He delighted in the bloodiest combats, the coarsest farces, the grossest obscenities.²²

²¹ Tavernier's Travels in India, Book i. chap. 2. Tavernier speaks of gold rupees; he values them at sixteen rupees each; he is evidently referring to gold mohurs. The two bribes aggregated more than a hundred thousand pounds sterling. Tavernier was as much smitten with the mania for flattery as later historians. He tells the tale of tyranny and bribery from his own experience; in another place he says that Shah Jehan was the father of his people. It is easy to account for this base flattery. Tavernier was a jeweller; he complains bitterly of the obstructions of Aurungzeb; he had found no difficulties to his trade in the reign of Shah Jehan. After all, Shah Jehan is not the first bad sovereign who has been called the father of his people. Strangely enough, Elphinstone quotes the flattery and seems to ignore the testimony. ••

²² Details may be found in the works of some of the old travellers, notably in Mandelslo. (See Travels, pages 30, 43.) The following remarks in Father

CHAPTER VI.

Poisonings.

Amidst all these gratifications Shah Jehan led a life of terror. He poisoned others without scruple ; he was always afraid of being poisoned himself. He would eat nothing that had not been prepared under the eye of the Begum Sahib. It will be seen in the after history that he was a prey to fears of every kind.

Greediness and prodigality.

Shah Jehan was quite as greedy as Jehangir. During the earlier years of his reign he squandered his treasures in pomp and show. As already stated, he built the Taj Mahal at Agra. He built a new city near Delhi ; he called it Shah Jehanabad, or the city of Shah Jehan ; it goes by the old name of Delhi. He constructed the peacock throne at Delhi ; it was one of the wonders of the world. He constructed new pavilions for his camp ; they were more magnificent than those of Jehangir. He lavished enormous sums in the celebration of festivals. Later on his character underwent a change. He grew avaricious. He stored up treasures against an evil day. The evil day came ; it scattered his treasures to the winds.

European traveller.

Notwithstanding the absence of authentic history, it is easy to realize the surroundings of Shah Jehan. In 1638,—the tenth year of the reign,—a young gentleman, named Mandelslo, travelled to

Catrou's History will suffice ; they are apparently based on the authority of Manouchi, not on that of the Moghul chronicle :—

"In the delicious retreats of the harem Shah Jehan forgot the warlike inclinations of his youth, and gave himself up to a voluptuous life. Poetry, music, the dance, the theatre, had each their prescribed hours ; the entire day was nearly engrossed by these amusements. No one enjoyed greater favour with the monarch than a poet of the country, whose fertile imagination was continually inventing new entertainments for the harem, and gave a varied form to the pleasures of the emperor. The grossest farces were the most to his taste. He retained his inclinations for the sanguinary exhibition of the gladiators, who were compelled to combat in his presence armed with poniards."

Agra. Seventeen years later, about 1655, a CHAPTER VI.
French physician, named Bernier, travelled through Hindustan and the Dekhan ; he resided twelve years at Delhi.

Jolin Albert de Mandelslo was only twenty-four <sup>Mandelslo,
1638-1640.</sup> years of age. He had served as a page to the Duke of Holstein. He had travelled much in Persia in the retinue of an embassy that the Duke had sent to the Shah. His travels present a graphic picture of India, as it was in the tenth year of the reign of Shah Jehan.²³

Mandelslo landed at Surat, in April, 1638. The <sup>Landing at
Surat.</sup> custom-house officials received him much as they received Roe. They opened chests and portmanteaus ; they searched clothes and pockets. The governor was present in person. He took an amber bracelet and a diamond ; he wanted to buy them. Mandelslo said that he was no merchant ; he refused to sell. The governor was touched ; he restored the articles.²⁴

Mandelslo proceeded to the English house in the ^{English factory.} President's coach drawn by two white oxen. He was entertained from April to September. He was struck by the order which reigned in the English factory. Every man had his regular duties. There were prayers twice a day ; three times on Sundays. On Friday evenings they met to drink to the health

²³ The Voyages and Travels of J. Albert de Mandelslo into the East Indies, begun in 1638 and finished in 1640. Rendered into English by John Davies of Kidwelly. Folio. London : 1669.

²⁴ Mandelslo's Travels, page 12. Mandelslo was a quick-witted young man ; he had been bred at a court ; he was diplomatic in his speech. He made his way everywhere. The English merchants at Ispahan were charmed with him ; they gave him a free passage to Surat. The captain of the ship was equally charmed ; he gave up his cabin to Mandelslo ; he supplied him with fresh meat, excellent sack, English beer, and French wines. Wherever Mandelslo went he was treated with the like hospitality.

CHAPTER VI. of their wives whom they had left in England. On Sundays, after sermon, they went to a garden-house in the suburbs and shot at butts. By this time the English and Moghuls had become good friends.²⁵

Journey to
Ahmadabad.

In September an English Kafila, or caravan, of thirty waggons was going to Ahmadabad, the capital of Guzerat. It was accompanied by four English merchants and nine native merchants known as Banians. The road was infested by Rajpoots; consequently the Kafila was guarded by twelve English soldiers and as many Indian ones. Mandelslo went with the merchants; without such protection he could not have travelled in India. He still wore European costume; the English and Dutch were dressed as natives. The party passed through Baroche and Baroda. They often halted on the way. They shot game, which was very plentiful; they had skirmishes with Rajpoots. They had battles over transit duties or black mail. Sometimes they were amused with the performances of dancing-girls.²⁶

Court of Areb
Khan.

At Ahmadabad Mandelslo paid two visits to Areb Khan, the governor. Areb Khan was sixty years of age; he had the title of Raja.²⁷ He was reported very wealthy. His daughter was married to the second son of Shah Jehan. He commanded a force of twelve thousand horse and fifty elephants; it was maintained out of the revenues of the Moghul. His court consisted of five hundred persons; of these four hundred were slaves.²⁸

²⁵ Mandelslo's Travels, pages 12, 13, 16, *et seq.*

²⁶ Mandelslo, page 19, *et seq.*

²⁷ It seems to have been the custom in Shah Jehan's reign to confer the Hindoo title of Raja on Moghul Amirs. This was one sign of the Hinduizing of the Moghul administration. Further signs will appear hereafter.

²⁸ Mandelslo, page 28, *et seq.*

On each occasion Mandelslo found Areb Khan seated in a tent or pavilion, looking out upon a garden. Areb Khan was much taken with Mandelslo; advised him to wear native costume; kept him to dinner. At the second visit Mandelslo dressed as a native. Areb Khan was busy; he told Mandelslo to stay. He despatched orders; sometimes he wrote himself. Now and then he smoked tobacco; a servant stood by, holding the pipe with one hand and lighting it with the other. At intervals Areb Khan went out to inspect some troops. He examined their arms; made them shoot at a mark; increased the pay of some; reduced the pay of others.²⁹ He also took opium and gave some to Mandelslo.³⁰

Areb Khan was a type of a Moghul governor. ^{Horrible atrocity.} He was a man of judgment and capacity. Under this fair surface he could be brutally cruel. On one occasion, when the English and Dutch Presidents were present, he ordered eight dancing-girls to be beheaded. They had not come when ordered. The women shrieked and screamed. Areb Khan was inflexible; the orders were obeyed. The two Europeans were horrified. Areb Khan only laughed; he said,—“ Unless I am obeyed, gentlemen, I should soon cease to be governor.”³¹

Mandelslo went with another Kafila from Ahma-^{Journey to Agra.} dabad to Agra. Nothing occurred on the way beyond encounters with Rajpoots. Agra was a beautiful city; it was the favourite residence of Shah Jehan. It stood on the bank of the Jumna. Every nation in the east carried on a trade at Agra.

²⁹ Those who know Asiatics will perceive that Areb Khan was showing off before the European stranger.

³⁰ Mandelslo, page 29.

³¹ Mandelslo, page 30.

CHAPTER VI. All merchandise paid a duty of ten per cent. on the value, whether the goods were going out or coming in. The streets were broad; they were lined with shops which stood in vaults or arcades. There were eighty caravanserais for travellers; they were three stories high, with lodgings, stables, and cellars. One man was in charge of every caravanserai; he saw that everything was locked up. He also acted as sutler; he supplied provisions, forage, wood, and water to all the lodgers.³²

Palace at Agra.

The palace of Shah Jehan stood between the city and the river Jumna. It was surrounded by walls of red sandstone. It comprised three areas:—

1. The Bazar street leading from the grand entrance to the Durbar court.³³
2. The Durbar court, Ghusal-khana, and pavilions of various kinds.
3. The Mahal, or harem.

Bazar street :
Mahal :
Jharokha
window.

The Bazar street faced the city. The Mahal, or harem, looked out upon a sandy plain which stretched to the Jumna. The Jharokha window overlooked the plain. Every morning Shah Jehan came to this window to offer his prayers to the rising sun. All the grandees at court attended to

³² Mandelslo, page 34. Thevenot, who travelled in India twenty or thirty years later, counted only sixty caravanserais. He says that some of them comprised six courts. (*Travels*, Part III. chap. 19.) Bernier, who lived much longer in India than Mandelslo, was by no means charmed with the caravanserais. "They resemble," he says, "large barns, raised and paved all round. Hundreds of human beings are seen in them, mingled with their horses, mules, and camels. In summer these buildings are hot and suffocating; in winter nothing but the breath of many animals prevents the inmates from dying of cold."—*Letter to Colbert*.

³³ The grand entrance to the Bazar street faced the city. Thevenot says that there was a great square between the grand entrance and city. This would correspond to the great square at Delhi. The Amirs mounted guard in the Bazar street. The Rajpoot princes, who had an invincible dislike to entering a fortress without their retainers, mounted guard in the great square outside.

pay him homage ; they stood at distances according CHAPTER VI.
to their respective rank. At noon he came again
to see the combats. At sunset he came again. He
retired for the night amid the acclamations of the
people and the deafening noise of drums and haut-
boys.³⁴

Mandelslo describes the administration of the country as tyrannical and corrupt. The Padishah was absolute ; his word was law and above all law. At his command the greatest lords were dragged to execution. The lives and fortunes of all his subjects were in his hands. The Amirs approached him as men approach deity. They declared that they were his slaves ; that they were but dust and ashes in comparison with the Padishah.³⁵

The viceroys and governors were often changed ^{Exortion.} lest they should grow too powerful. They had no bowels of compassion ; they hastened to become rich ; they took bribes from all sides. They trumped up false charges against the richest merchants only to squeeze them. The viceroy was the supreme judge within his province ; those who could not satisfy his greed were doomed to destruction.³⁶

The Kótwal was the judge in smaller matters. ^{The Kótwal.} He also executed all capital sentences pronounced by governors. The corruption was universal. Any offender could escape provided only that he had money. The gibbet was only for the unfortunate.³⁷

Mandelslo's description of the administration of justice in the reign of Shah Jehan is suggestive ; it reveals more than it tells. Akber prohibited all executions until he had confirmed the sentence. In

³⁴ Mandelslo, page 30, *et seq.*

³⁵ Mandelslo, page 48.

³⁶ Mandelslo, pages 38, 41.

³⁷ Mandelslo, page 49.

Despotism of
viceroys and
governors.

CHAPTER VI. In the reign of Shah Jehan this wholesome rule had been set aside; viceroys and governors executed as they pleased. Each viceroy was an irresponsible tyrant within his own province; he might torture, plunder, and murder at will.³⁸

Bells of justice.

Against all this wickedness and corruption there was no appeal. Akber hung up bells, or a chain of bells, in his palace; all might ring them who wanted justice. Jehangir boasted that he had done the same.³⁹ Mandelslo describes the bells; he adds that any one who rings them does so at the hazard of his life. Under such a sovereign as Shah Jehan no man could have rung the bells; bribery and perjury would have condemned the complainant to die.⁴⁰

Moghul army.

Mandelslo describes the Moghul army. The officers knew nothing of van-guard, main-battle, or rear-guard. They understood neither rank nor file. They made no battalion; they fought confusedly without order. The cavalry were armed with the bow, the javelin, the scimitar, and the poniard; they carried bucklers hanging from their necks. Some of the infantry were expert with the musket.

³⁸ Mandelslo, *ibid.* The statement of Mandelslo is confirmed by facts. As already seen, Areb Khan beheaded eight women for not obeying his orders. Tavernier tells the story of the bribery of Shah Jehan and the Begum Sahib by the tyrannical viceroy of Scinde. Father Catrou is equally explicit. He says that when Shah Jehan was growing old his avarice surpassed all his other vices. He rewarded his officers by permitting them to plunder the people with impunity; he then seized on their wealth and appropriated the spoil.

Of course a flatterer may be found, who takes a different view. Khafi Khan, a Mussulman historian who flourished long after the death of Shah Jehan, asserts that he was a better administrator than Akber. The assertion is fulsome and false. Khafi Khan was not a contemporary of Shah Jehan; he was a Shiah partisan; he bitterly hated Aurungzeb; no doubt he praised Shah Jehan out of spite against Aurungzeb.

Strange to say, Elphinstone quotes the loose and prejudiced statement of this party writer; he ignores the impartial testimony of Europeans and contemporaries. This is one specimen of the way in which the history of India has been falsified.

³⁹ Jehangir's Memoirs, page 5.

⁴⁰ Mandelslo, pages 36, 37.

They had no fire-arms with wheels, nor yet fire-locks. CHAPTER VI.
 Those of the infantry who had no muskets carried bows and arrows. They also carried pikes ten or twelve feet long; not, as in Europe, to oppose a cavalry charge, but to begin the battle. The elephants served as a trench to oppose the first charge; they were often driven back by fire-works. The Moghuls had abundance of artillery.⁴¹

Mandelslo was obliged to fly from Agra. Whilst ^{Mandelslo leaves India.} at Ispahan he had killed a man in a fray. At Agra he met a kinsman of the man. He had reason to fear that his life was in danger; he went away to Delhi. His further travels are mere personal adventure.⁴²

After Mandelslo left India Shah Jehan left Agra. ^{New Delhi founded by Shah Jehan.} He fixed his capital at his new city of Shah Jehanabad; it still goes by the name of Delhi. The Moghul emperors often changed the capital. Akber moved it from Delhi to Agra; Jehangir moved it from Agra to Lahore; Shah Jehan returned to Agra; the heat of Agra drove him to Delhi. The nomadic instinct of the Moghul worked these changes. The Moghul kings of Burma move about in like manner from Ava to Amarapura, from Amarapura to Mandalay.

Francis Bernier travelled in India when the court was at Delhi. He was thirty years of age when he went to India. He was a different man from Mandelslo. He had more political insight.

⁴¹ Mandelslo, page 40.

⁴² Mandelslo, pages 44, 45. Mandelslo went from Surat to England in 1640. He was well entertained by the East India Company. He returned to Holstein, but could not find suitable employment. He went to Germany; he obtained a command of a troop of horse. He paid a visit to Paris, and died there of small-pox.

CHAPTER VI. He was twelve years in India—from 1655 to 1667. He did not write from surface observations ; his conclusions were those of an experienced and thoughtful man.⁴³

Description of
New Delhi.

Bernier describes Delhi much as Mandelslo describes Agra. There was a city, a square, and a palace. He brings out the significance of the several quarters. Each had a story to tell ; each played a part in the later history.⁴⁴

City.

The city was little better than a camp. There were broad streets lined with arcades and shops ; they were intersected by narrow streets and lanes. A few houses were built of stone and brick ; many were built of clay whitened with lime ; thousands were mud hovels. When the court was at Delhi the city was crowded with people. When the court was away from Delhi the city was silent and bare. The Amirs and Rajas left their houses to dwell in canvas pavilions ; the soldiers, camp-followers, servants, artisans, and labourers left their mud hovels to dwell in tents.

Great square :
astrologers.

The great square between the palace and the city was the centre of city life. When the court was at Delhi, the square was a vast bazaar. There Rajpoöt princes mounted guard ; horses were paraded and mustered ; wares of all kinds were offered for sale ; mountebanks and jugglers performed to idle crowds ; astrologers told fortunes to

⁴³ Travels in the Moghul Empire by Francis Bernier. Translated from the French by Irving Brock. 2 vols. There are so many editions of Bernier, that it would be useless to give references to pages. The author has followed the Calcutta reprint.

⁴⁴ Bernier has one weakness of which he was unconscious ; he had no deep insight into character. He fails to read the characters of the sons of Shah Jehan. Father Carrou's History of the Moghul Dynasty shows a larger knowledge and keener appreciation.

all comers. The astrologers were an institution. CHAPTER VI. They sat on pieces of carpet ; they handled mathematical instruments ; they opened large books which showed the signs of the zodiac. They told a fortune for a penny ; they examined the hand and face ; they turned over the leaves of the large book ; they feigned to make calculations ; they fixed the fortunate moment for beginning any business. Silly women covered from head to foot in white calico flocked to the astrologers. They whispered the secrets of their lives with the frankness of penitents in the presence of their confessors. They believed that the astrologers could control the influence of the stars.⁴⁵

The palace and gardens at Delhi were on the same plan as Agra. There was more magnificence. There was a bazar street ; there was also a street of public offices. There were quarters for the Amirs and Mansubdars who mounted guard within the palace walls. There were workshops for embroiderers, goldsmiths, painters, lacquer-joiners, turners, tailors, shoemakers, and dressmakers of every kind.

Beyond this public quarter was the Durbar court. Palace : the public quarter. Durbar, Ghus-A-khana, Mahal. It formed a large quadrangle surrounded by arcades ; the Durbar hall was at the further end ; it was

⁴⁵ One ridiculous pretender in Bernier's time was a half-caste Portuguese, who had fled from Goa. He could neither read nor write. His only instrument was an old mariner's compass ; his only books of astrology were a couple of old Catholic prayer-books. He pointed out the pictures in these prayer-books as the signs of the European zodiac.

Bernier so far is only describing the poorer sort of astrologers that told fortunes in the bazar. The better sort who frequented the courts of the grandees were of a very different character. They were regarded as eminent doctors. They received large salaries ; they were consulted before engaging in the most trifling transaction. They read whatever was written in heaven ; they fixed upon the fortunate moment ; they solved every doubt by opening the Koran. *Letter to M. De la Motte le Yayer.*

CHAPTER VI. known as the Am-khás, or audience-chamber of high and low ; it was supported by thirty-two columns of white marble ; the ceiling and columns were decorated with gold and colours. The throne was within a recess or opening at the back of the hall : Over the throne was a splendid peacock of gold and jewels. Behind the Am-khás was the Ghusal-khana. Beyond the Am-khás was the Mahal or harem ; a Mussulman paradise of pavilions, gardens, ladies, and Tartar guards ; the nursery of every vice and crime that tainted Moghul rule.

Stone elephants. The palace of Shah Jehan had strange belongings. The grand entrance facing the great square was guarded by two stone Rajpoots mounted on two stone elephants. Such guardianship has a grave significance. It reveals the fact that the Moghul court had become Hinduized ; that Islam had died out or was ignored. Images large and small are offensive to all good Mussulmans. They are strictly forbidden by the Koran. Probably the statues were set up at Delhi to gratify the Rajpoots. They represented the two Rajpoot heroes,—Patta and Jeimal,—who sacrificed their lives to save Chitór from Akber. Possibly they served another purpose. From a remote antiquity colossal figures of elephants and gods were placed at the gateways of palaces and pagodas ; they were the guardian deities of the buildings. The usage is common to Buddhism and Bráhmánism ; it is commoner in Burma than in India. The elephants and their riders at Delhi may have had a symbolic meaning ; the Padishah had placed his palace under the guardianship of Rajpoots.

The peacock of gold and jewels that hung over

the throne was another violation of the Koran. It was the Hindú symbol of sovereignty; the emblem of the children of the Sun. It was common alike to Bráhmanism and Buddhism, to Rajpoot and Moghul. The peacock was the ensign of the old Rajas of Vijayanagar. To this day it is the ensign of the kings of Burma.⁴⁶ Akber had taken a golden sun as his emblem; Shah Jehan had taken the peacock. No reason is given for the change. It is sufficient that both Akber and Shah Jehan claim to be children of the sun through Timúr and Chenghiz Khan.⁴⁷

It has already been seen that from a remote antiquity India has been divided between a solar and a lunar race, between the children of the sun and the children of the moon. The Persians, the Moghuls, and the Rajpoots claim to be descended from the sun. The other race has been a mystery. It is solved by the crescent of the Turks. The Ottomans carry the crescent on their standards; they thus proclaim themselves to be the children of the moon. The antagonism has survived the triumph of Islam; it finds expression in the antagonism between Shíah and Sunní.⁴⁸

The Hindú nature of Shah Jehan expressed itself in other ways besides the peacock throne. It

⁴⁶ The peacock of gold and jewels, and the arrangement of the peacock over the throne, was copied from the Hindú court at Vijayanagar. *Lettres Edifiantes et Curieuses*, vol. xiii. Letter from Father Bouchet.

⁴⁷ See *ante*, vol. iii. page 328, 330, *note*. Also pages 171, 184 of the present volume.

⁴⁸ The further investigations of this question must be left to students in comparative philology. It may possibly throw light on the ancient antagonisms of races. The Hindú epic of the Rámáyana refers to the children of the sun; that of the Mahá Bhárata refers to the children of the moon. Possibly the antagonism corresponds to that between Iran and Turan, Gog and Magog, Persia and Scythian.

CHAPTER VI
Peacock throne:
an emblem of
the sun.

Solar and lunar
races: Persians
and Turks.

Hindú nature
of Shah Jehan.

CHAPTER VI. was the custom of Hindú Rajas to lay the foundation of public buildings in human blood. Such cruelties were unknown to Mussulman rule ; they were revived by Shah Jehan. He caused several criminals to be slaughtered at Delhi ; their blood was shed on the foundations of the city.⁴⁹

War between his four sons.

The latter years of the reign of Shah Jehan were dark and terrible. Whilst he was yet alive Hindustan was convulsed by a war between his four sons for the possession of the empire. The history of that war reveals the worst phases in oriental life ; it brings out the innate treachery, falsehood, and selfishness of the men who called themselves Moghuls ; it throws fresh light upon the antagonisms which were at work in the political system.⁵⁰

Family of Shah Jehan.

Shah Jehan had four sons and two daughters. His four sons were named Dara, Shujá, Aurungzeb, and Murád. Each son was a type of character ; a representative of a class. For years Shah Jehan was conscious that his sons were plotting to seize the throne. He kept Dara at court ; he sent his three other sons to the extremities of the empire. Shujá was viceroy of Bengal. Aurungzeb was viceroy of the Dekhan. Murád was viceroy of Guzerat. All three ruled their provinces like independent kings ; it will be necessary to unfold the character of each before telling the story of the fratricidal war.

Dara was the eldest son of Shah Jehan. He was a

⁴⁹ This foul custom still lingers in the memory of Hindús. If a bridge or other public work is to be built, Hindú mothers are filled with horror. They shut up their children, lest they should be seized and murdered. This terror prevailed in southern India as late as 1860 ; since then it may have died out.

⁵⁰ To prevent the necessity for frequent references, it will suffice to state that the remaining history of the reign of Shah Jehan is based upon the history of Father Catrou with occasional references to Bernier and Tavernier.

man of intellect and capacity. He had studied CHAPTER VI. philosophy and religion; he was acquainted with ^{Dara the infidel.} European languages and sciences. He was much attached to Europeans; he took Europeans into his pay as engineers and artillerymen. He was puffed up by his knowledge; he spoke out his mind too freely; he was disdainful and insulting. He despised Islam and leaned towards Christianity. He held the ministers in contempt. He was blinded by conceit; he thought he was beloved and admired; he accepted flattery as truth; he little knew that his flatterers hated him.

Shuja was the second son of Shah Jehan. He ^{Shuja the Shah.} had courage and capacity; he was artful and suspicious. He kept spies at court; he was in secret understanding with the leading Rajas. He corresponded with the Shah of Persia; he became a Shíáh to attract Persians to his service. He held the Sunní religion in contempt.

Aurungzeb was the third son of Shah Jehan. He was the genius of the family. He was watchful, far-seeing, and crafty. He concealed his ambitious designs behind the mask of religion. He was a strict Sunní. He made religion serve his interests; he was no common hypocrite; he lived up to his professions. He was spare in his diet; he subsisted on rice and roots; he never touched wine. He dressed only in white; he wore but few jewels. He had a spare habit of body; it gave him an air of penitence; he knew how to accompany it with pious discourses. He was always pale and livid; his eyes were sunk in his head. He was thoughtful and taciturn; he seldom spoke excepting out of zeal for Muhammád and the law. He often carried the Koran under his

CHAPTER VI. arm. He often prayed in public. Every day he recited a string of the praises of God. He affected to yearn after a religious life; he hoped to spend his last days in penitence and prayer near the tomb of the prophet at Medina. He was bent upon obtaining the throne; he knew the risk; if he failed he might save his life by becoming a Fakír.

Murád the lax
Sunní.

Murád was the fourth and youngest son of Shah Jehán. He despised artifice; he was easily beguiled. He prided himself on his strength and courage. He was fond of arms; he was also fond of hunting lions and boars. He professed to be a Sunní like Aurungzeb.

Two daughters.

Shah Jehan had two daughters. Begum Sahib, the elder, promoted the interests of Dara. She had been promised a husband if Dara got the throne. She worked hard for Dara. Roysan Rai Begum, the younger, worked hard for Aurungzeb. Probably she had obtained a similar promise from Aurungzeb.

Dara, the crown
prince, at the
capital.

Dara was heir-apparent to the throne; in the absence of his brothers he was the soul of the royal council. Shah Jehan cared little for the administration; he was content to be sovereign in the harem and treasury. He left Dara to rule the empire with absolute power; he kept the control of the revenues in his own hands.

Proud and
insolent.

As Dara grew in power, he became more haughty and insolent than ever. He gave his confidence to no one but Europeans. He was arrogant towards the Rajpoot princes. He was violent towards Mahábat Khan; the old Rajpoot prepared for war; Shah Jehan got frightened; Dara was quieted down. In like manner Dara insulted Raja Jai Singh of Jai-

pur ; he called Jai Singh a musician ; Jai Singh never forgot the insult. Dara was charged with having poisoned a prime minister ; he was suspected of having strangled a secretary of state. He imprisoned or banished all whom he suspected of being luke-warm in his interest. He stung the grandees to the quick by his jealousy and scorn.⁵¹

The three brothers of Dara were differently employed. Shuja was exacting money and levying troops in Bengal ; he was preparing for the coming war. Murad was hunting and shooting in Guzerat ; he was the most open of the three. Aurungzeb was meditating deeper schemes. Outwardly he devoted himself to religion. He built mosques ; he mingled with Fakirs ; he affected to despise the world. He was almost malignant in his austerities. He assembled all the Fakirs of the country ; he knew they kept gold mohurs in their dirty rags ; he persisted in giving them new clothes and burning all their old rags. Many resisted ; Aurungzeb was firm ; he is said to have found quantities of gold amongst the cinders.

Meantime an adventurer named Amír Junla was beginning to play a part in history. Amír Junla was a type of the so-called Moghul Amírs of the time. He was a Persian by birth ; his father was said to be an oil-seller ; he came to India as the servant of a merchant. His Persian complexion was his fortune. He entered the Moghul army ; he rose to the highest posts. He was insulted by Dara. He left the Moghul army and entered the

⁵¹ Dara had a favourite slave, a minion of the vilest type. Whenever a minister or general was praised in his presence, he praised the slave. Such insolence could never be forgiven or forgotten.

CHAPTER VI. service of the Sultan of Golkonda. He was appointed collector of the customs ; he traded on his own account ; he acquired great wealth. He practised the sure way of promotion in oriental courts ; he made constant presents to the Sultan,—rarities from Europe, cabinets from China, elephants from Ceylon. He rose to the rank of prime minister. He engaged in an amour with the queen mother. The Sultan discovered the intrigue ; he stopped the scandal by sending Amír Jumla to command the territories he had conquered in the Karnatic plain.

Proceedings in
the Karnatic.

Amír Jumla turned his disgrace to his advantage. The diamond mines were within his province ; he worked them to his own profit ; he kept all the larger ones ; he sent only refuse to the Sultan. He sent diamonds to the Portuguese envoy at Goa ; he thus secured an asylum at Goa. He kept up a strong corps of Christian artillerymen. He placed no limits to his peculations. He plundered the temples ; he compelled the Hindús to surrender all their gold and jewels ; he flogged to death those who buried their treasures.

Tavernier's
meeting with
Amír Jumla.

In 1652 Tavernier, the jeweller, saw Amír Jumla at Gandikot near the river Penar. The Amír had just captured Gandikot. He had taken idols of gold and silver out of the pagoda and melted them down. He had taken out six idols of brass, ten feet high ; he wanted to make them into cannon ; they would not melt. He threatened to hang the Bráhmans for enchanting the idols ; it was of no use. A Frenchman in his service made one cannon ; it split to pieces on trial. Tavernier did not believe in the diamond mines ; he says that Amír Jumla got nothing but discoloured stones.⁵²

⁵² Tavernier's Travels in India, book i. chap. 18.

Amír Jumla administered the affairs of his province in Moghul fashion. He had numerous papers between his toes. He took them out and dictated instructions to two secretaries. He examined offenders, sentenced them on the spot, and ordered instant execution. One man was tried for murder; he had his hands and feet cut off; he was left to perish on the highway. Another man was tried for robbery; he was ripped up and thrown on a dung-hill. Two others were beheaded; Tavernier did not hear their crime. Such was the prompt administration of justice in the good old times.⁵³

Amír Jumla was unscrupulous and grasping after the manner of Moghuls; he met with the usual fate of such extortioners. His cruelties excited the hatred of the province; his riches excited the envy of the court. The Sultan of Golkonda resolved to recall him; to squeeze him of all his wealth. The queen mother sent timely notice to her lover; she proposed to him to dethrone her son. Amír Jumla bethought him of Aurungzeb; he wrote to Aurungzeb to the following effect:—"The time has arrived for conquering the richest kingdom in India: I have served the Moghul: I have entered the service of Golkonda only to help the Moghul: I am in correspondence with a great lady in the harem of Golkonda: I command the army in the Karnatic: My son Muhammad Amír Khan commands the army of Golkonda: If you will invade Golkonda the kingdom is yours."

Aurungzeb was overjoyed at this letter. The Sunní prince hated the Shíah Sultan. Aurungzeb saw plainly that if he got possession of Golkonda it

Reigned embassies to Golkonda.

⁵³ Tavernier's Travels in India, book i. chap. 18.

CHAPTER VI. would help him to get possession of Hindustan. He was not inclined to invade Golkonda. He resolved to go as an ambassador from himself; to surprise and seize the Sultan in his own capital. He gave out that he was going to Bengal to betroth his son Mahmúd to a daughter of his brother Shuja. He went with a strong escort to the city of Hyderabad. He arranged with the son of Amír Jumla to seize the Sultan at the first audience.

Flight of the Sultan.

The Sultan discovered the trap. He was powerless. He fled to the fortress of Golkonda, three miles off. Aurungzeb was outwitted. He plundered the city and palace. He was joined by Amír Jumla; he besieged Golkonda. The Sultan was reduced to extremity; he was about to surrender; his life was to be spared; he was to receive the rank of Raja at the court of the Moghul. Suddenly Aurungzeb received orders from Delhi; he was to raise the siege; he was to return to his province without delay.

Recall of Aurungzeb.

Dara had taken fright at Aurungzeb's operations in the Dekhan. He suspected that Aurungzeb would make Golkonda a stepping-stone to Hindustán. He sacrificed the conquest rather than see the aggrandizement of Aurungzeb.

Treaty with Golkonda.

Aurungzeb obeyed the orders; he said nothing about them. He proclaimed that he shrank from making war upon a brother Mussulman. He reinstated the Sultan on hard terms. The Sultan was to pay all the expenses of the war; he was to give his daughter in marriage to Mahmúd, the son of Aurungzeb; he was to give his frontier province of Ramghur as dowry to his daughter; he was to be succeeded upon the throne by his son-in-law Mah-

múd; he was to coin all money in the name of Shah CHAPTER VI.
Jehan ; he was to permit Amír Jumla to leave the kingdom with all his wealth and family.

Aurungzeb and Amír Jumla became close friends. ^{Aurungzeb and Amír Jumla.} They both hated Dara ; each could be useful to the other. Aurungzeb tried to keep Amír Jumla in the Dekhan. He begged that Amír Jumla might command an army for the conquest of Bijápur. Amír Jumla on his part sent rich presents to Shah Jehan. The presents prevailed ; Amír Jumla got the command. Dara checkmated Aurungzeb. Amír Jumla was to send his wife and children to court as hostages for his loyalty. Aurungzeb was to remain in his own province ; he was to take no part in the war against Bijápur.

The conditions were accepted. Aurungzeb ^{Ambition of Aurungzeb.} came to a thorough understanding with Amír Jumla. He complained that Dara was a jealous tyrant ; that Shah Jehan was the slave of Dara ; that Shah Jehan had ceased to be a father to his other sons. He begged Amír Jumla to be a father to him. Amír Jumla answered in like manner ; he would do his utmost to help Aurungzeb to the throne. This convention was kept a profound secret ; it was soon to show itself in action. Aurungzeb remained at Aurungabad ; he fixed his head-quarters at this city ; it was called after his own name. At Aurungabad he flaunted his piety in the eyes of all men. Amír Jumla invaded Bijápur ; he captured some towns ; he was engaged for months in besieging the old fortress of Bider.

Suddenly it was noised abroad that Shah Jehan ^{Shah Jehan's sickness.} was dying ; next it was told that he was dead. His sickness was in keeping with his life. •He was

CHAPTER VI. too old for his pleasures ; he recruited himself with strong medicines ; they brought him to the verge of the grave.

The ferment :
Shuja revolts.

Meantime the empire was in a ferment. Shuja, the most impetuous of the sons of Shah Jehan, was the first to take the field. Bengal was the wealthiest province of the empire. Shuja had kept forty thousand horsemen in readiness ; he had filled his coffers by plundering some Bengal Rajas and ruining others ; he had camels loaded with gold mohurs. He was soon on the road to Delhi. As he mounted his horse he waved his scimitar and cried out,— “Death or the throne.” He pushed on by the great road to Agra. He proclaimed that Dara had poisoned Shah Jehan ; he was going to Delhi to revenge the death of his father.

Shah Jehan's
letter.

Shah Jehan was beginning to recover ; he was still very ill ; he was told that Shuja was marching to Delhi. He was exceedingly angry ; he wrote a crafty letter to Shuja :—“I have recovered from my sickness ; it was not brought about by Dara : I am obliged by your affection : I beg you to return at once to Bengal ; by strict obedience you may atone for the hasty measure into which you have been hurried.”

Shuja ap-
proaches Agra.

Shuja received the letter on his march. It was accompanied by other letters from his spies saying that his father’s malady was mortal ; that his presence at Delhi was of crying importance. He said nothing about his father’s letter ; he hastened on all the faster. Meantime an army was sent against Shuja. Shah Jehan was very ill ; he removed from Delhi to Agra.

The imperial army was commanded by Sulai-

man, the eldest son of Dara.. It was composed of Afghans and Rajpoots. The Afghans were commanded by Dalil Khan an Afghan ; the Afghans would glory in fighting against a Shíah like Shuja.⁶⁴ The Rajpoots were commanded by Jai Singh of Jaipur. Jai Singh had not forgotten the insult of Dara ; he was by no means anxious to defeat Shuja ; he is said to have been instructed by Shah Jehan to avoid a battle.

Jai Singh wrote as follows to Shuja :—“ Your affection for your father is beyond all praise : You have proved your valour by marching against an army far superior to your own : But your father still lives : It would be dishonourable in you to fight against his faithful subjects : Return at once to Bengal : Courage is never esteemed if it is accompanied by crime.”

Shuja deliberated for awhile ; he then resolved on revolt. He concealed his intention ; he tried to deceive the imperial army. He wrote back to Jai Singh :—“ I quitted Bengal only to avenge my father : as Shah Jehan is still living, I will return to Bengal : I only ask that you retire first : It is not meet that I should seem to fly from you : I exact this as a mark of respect ; I expect it both from you and my nephew Sulaiman.”

Jai Singh knew that the letter was an artifice ; he knew that Shuja only wanted to surprise the imperial army, and to attack it in its retreat. He was

⁶⁴ Father Catrou speaks of the force under Dalil Khan as being composed of Mussulmans. It is doubtful whether it included Moghuls ; it is doubtful whether Moghul Shíahs could be trusted to fight against Shuja. As the force was commanded by an Afghan it is reasonable to suppose that it was composed of Afghans, or Sunnis. This would account for their alacrity to fight against Shuja.

CHAPTER VI.
Imperial army :
Afghans and
Rajpoots.

Jai Singh's
letter to Shuja.

Artifice of
Shuja.

Bamboozled by
Jai Singh.

CHAPTER VI. a match for Shuja; he ordered a retreat. At day-break the baggage was on the move to Delhi; a few useless footmen were also sent back. The spies of Shuja were deceived; they advised Shuja that the imperial army was going back to Delhi.

Defeat of
Shuja : by-play
of Jai Singh.

In reality the imperial army was in battle array. Shuja attacked some squadrons; he took them for a rear-guard. He soon found that he had been over-reached. The imperial cavalry charged him with fury. His forces were thrown into disorder; he could not rally them. His guns and elephants were captured; many of his troops were taken prisoners. He was obliged to retreat to Bengal. Jai Singh refused to pursue him; he was afraid to take Shuja prisoner; Shuja would have been pardoned; he would have hated Jai Singh for life. Moreover Jai Singh remembered that Dara had called him a musician. Shuja retired with the wreck of his army into Bengal; to save appearances the army of Sulaiman followed at a distance behind.

Aurungzeb
hoodwinks
Murad.

Whilst Shuja was making a bold stroke for the throne, Aurungzeb was biding his time. The crafty Sunni was not going to commit himself; he knew what was going on; he waited for both his brothers to revolt. Presently he heard that Murad was on the march for Delhi. He wrote to Murad to the following effect:—"You know that I have resolved to spend my life in penitence and prayer; the splendour of this world has no charms for me: My only desire is to establish the worship of the true God and the law of his prophet: You alone of all my brothers are jealous for the Koran: Dara is impious; he hankers after the religion of Europe: Shuja is a heretic; he is in league with the Shahs

of Persia: I will not suffer impiety or heresy to sit upon the throne: You are a true Mussulman, a staunch Sunní, the defender of the faithful: You alone are worthy to wear the crown: I salute you as my sovereign: Suffer me to join my troops with yours; to help you to defend the righteous cause; to combat with you for our religion: I shall ask for only one recompense: When the victory is won you must permit me to spend the remainder of my days near the tomb of our holy prophet at Medina."

Murád was overjoyed at this letter. He was warned to beware of Aurungzeb; he was deaf to all advice. He replied in the same strain:—"We have always been friends; we must unite to defend our religion from impiety and heresy: I swear by the great prophet that I will always respect you as my father."

Meantime Aurungzeb had gained an army. He begged Amír Jumla to join him from Bíjápur. Amír Jumla was powerless; his wife and children were in the hands of Dara; if he helped Aurungzeb they would be slaughtered. Craft was tried. There was a sham mutiny in the army of Amír Jumla. The officers feigned to rebel; they feigned to carry Amír Jumla as a prisoner to Aurungzeb. Amír Jumla allowed himself to be imprisoned in the fortress at Aurungabad. The Moghul court was deceived; it was sorry for Amír Jumla. In reality Amír Jumla was staking his life and fortune on the success of Aurungzeb.

Thus reinforced Aurungzeb prepared to join Murád. Before he left Aurungabad he made another show of piety. He took the Koran in his hand in the presence of his army; he pressed it devoutly to

Murád's blindness.

Aurungzeb's craft with Amír Jumla.

Aurungzeb leaves the Dekhan.

CHAPTER VI. his heart. He cried out with a loud voice :—“I am going to defend the Koran : The infidel Dara has treated it with contempt ; I am going to avenge it : It is for this that I break the peace that ought to reign between brothers.” He told every one that Shah Jehan was dead. He allowed no letter to enter the Dekhan that hinted that Shah Jehan was alive.

Joins Murad at Mandu. All this while Aurungzeb wrote to Murad as to his sovereign. He professed the most profound obedience to Murad. The two armies formed a junction near Mandu. Aurungzeb dismounted from his elephant ; he prostrated himself before his younger brother. From that day he treated Murad as Padishah. He took the orders of Murad as regards the army. In this way the united armies pushed on through Rajpootana.

Alarm of Dara. Dara had rejoiced at the victory of his son Sulaiman. He was now alarmed at the movements of Aurungzeb and Murad. He wrote to both the brothers that Shah Jehan was still alive ; he warned them against disobedience to their sovereign and father.

Scruples of Murad quieted by Aurungzeb. Murad was startled by the news that Shah Jehan was alive ; he began to waver. Aurungzeb soon quieted him ; he spoke to Murad as follows :—“Shah Jehan is dead ; the story that he is alive is the artifice of Dara : If we go back the murderer will secure the throne ; the parricide will wreak his vengeance upon us and our children : If we go forward you may gain the empire : If Shah Jehan is alive we will submit to him ; he will be assured of our affection from our impatience to avenge him.”

Murad was persuaded by the words of Aurung-

zeb.. Indeed no one believed that Shah Jehan was alive. At Delhi the people were satisfied he was dead. At Agra Shah Jehan showed himself; still the people disbelieved; they said it was a phantom of the Padishah.

Meantime an imperial army was despatched against the brothers. Shah Jehan was anxious to take the field; to show himself to the soldiers; to disarm his children by his presence. Had he gone Murád would have left Aurungzeb. The secret friends of Aurungzeb did all they could to prevent him. Khalil Khan was amongst the number; his wife was one of Shah Jehan's favourites; at heart he was bent on revenging the shame; in speech he was still devoted to the Padishah. "Shah Jehan," he said, "is in weak health; if he goes with the army he may die; his presence will not disarm his sons: They are daring enough to rebel against him; they will be daring enough to fight against him." It is said that Khalil Khan induced his wife and the Begum Sahib to keep Shah Jehan at Agra.

Dara would not leave his father. He appointed Kasim Khan to command the Mussulmans;⁶⁵ Raja Jaswant Singh of Jodhpur to command the Rajpoots. Kasim Khan was a dangerous man; he had been insulted by Dara; he was in secret correspondence with Aurungzeb.

The rebel army marched from Mandu northward to Ujain. The way ran along a defile; it was environed by forest and mountain. Had the defile been blocked up with imperialists, the rebels could

⁶⁵ It is not stated whether Kasim Khan was an Afghan or otherwise. The army under his command refused to fight against Aurungzeb and Murád; it may therefore be inferred that it was composed of Sunnis.

Plan of Shah Jehan.

Army of the imperialists.

Defeat of the imperialists at Ujain.

CHAPTER VI. not have forced a passage. The rebels faced the imperialists on the Ujain river. The hot season was at its height ; the river was fordable ; the rebel army crossed over. Kasim Khan hung aloof ; he never fired a gun ; he is said to have concealed the ammunition. The whole brunt of the battle fell upon the Rajpoots ; they were cut to pieces. Jaswant Singh escaped with a handful of followers.⁵⁶ Aurungzeb captured all the artillery and baggage.

Wrath of Dara. Dara was frantic at the defeat. He wrung his hands in agony ; he stamped with rage ; he cursed Kasim Khan. He next cursed Amír Jumla. "That traitor," he cried, "is the cause of all our misfortunes : Had he not surrendered his army to Aurungzeb, the princes could never have dared to rebel." Dara ordered the wife and family of the Amír to be put to death. Shah Jehan persuaded him to recall the order ; it would have thrown Amír Jumla into the arms of Aurungzeb.⁵⁷

Rebels advance to Agra : Shah Jehan abdicates to Dara. Aurungzeb and Murád were proud of their success ; they pushed on towards Agra. All malcontents joined them ; most of the friends of Aurungzeb joined them ; a few only stayed behind to report what was going on at Agra. Shah Jehan was betrayed on all sides. In his terror he made over his authority to Dara. He commanded his people to acknowledge no Padishah but Dara. The step was fatal to Shah Jehan ; it unsettled the public mind ; it destroyed the prestige of his name. A few nobles

⁵⁶ The Rajpoots would not fight against Shuja ; they fought bravely against Aurungzeb and Murád. Shuja was a lax Shah ; he kept up a correspondence with the Rajpoot princes. Aurungzeb was a Sunní ; he hated idolaters.

⁵⁷ Bernier says that Dara wanted to force the wife and daughters of Amír Jumla to become prostitutes in the bazaar. Such revenge was not uncommon under Moghul rule.

might have stood by Shah Jehan ; they were all CHAPTER VI. rebels at heart against Dara. The people were loyal to the old Padishah ; they were indifferent to the new one.

The desertion of the nobles did not prevent Dara from raising an immense army. He opened the imperial treasury ; he enlisted a hundred thousand horsemen and fifty thousand foot. He took a hundred cannon out of the arsenal at Agra. His corps of artillery was composed of Europeans. Sixty elephants carried small pieces in their howdahs.

Dara's army was vast enough to force a victory. ^{Dara leaves Agra.} It marched out of Agra in great pomp. Men of experience shook their heads. The officers hated Dara ; many were disloyal to Shah Jehan. Khalil Khan was second in command to Dara. He smarted under his wife's dishonour. The troops were raw levies ; the flower of the imperial army had gone with Sulaiman into Bengal. Jai Singh was being revenged on Dara ; he dissuaded Sulaiman from returning to Agra. The only man who shut his eyes to all these dangers was Dara. He thought that all his officers were faithful. He relied on Khalil Khan ; the injured husband was soon in secret correspondence with Aurungzeb. The Rajpoots were still faithful to Shah Jehan ; they were commanded by Ram Singh.⁵⁸

Dara waited for Sulaiman outside Agra. The camp was like a city. The imperial pavilions, covered with gold brocade, were placed in the centre. At all quarters the pavilions of the officers towered

⁵⁸ This Ram Singh was evidently a Rajpoot prince ; Catrou does not mention the name of the Rajpoot state to which Ram Singh belonged.

<sup>Encampment
on the Chambal
river.</sup>

CHAPTER VI. above the tents of the soldiers. At last Dara could wait no longer. He marched southward to the Chambal river. The squadrons moved like the waves of a great sea ; the steel of their javelins sparkled like the sun's rays upon the waters. The army encamped on the bank of the Chambal. Dara again waited for the coming of Sulaiman. Meantime he prepared to dispute the passage of the river with the rebel armies. He fortified the bank with his artillery ; he thought his position was impregnable.

Strategy of
Aurungzeb.

The rebel armies soon appeared on the opposite bank. Aurungzeb saw that he could not force a passage. He called his chief officers ; he conjured them to keep in readiness ; at any hour he might want them to cross the river ; he must force a passage before the arrival of Sulaiman, or else beat a retreat. As he expected, his words were reported to Dara. Dara kept on the alert ; but only as far as the passage was concerned. Meanwhile Aurungzeb was secretly negotiating with Champat of Bundelkund. Champat was still unsubdued by Shah Jehan. He readily offered Aurungzeb a passage through his territory. Dara was deceived. Whilst he was expecting an attack, Aurungzeb was seeking the aid of Champat of Bundelkund. Champat was still an independent Raja. He was ready to help the rebels. Aurungzeb marched through Champat's territory in the night time. He crossed the Chambal ; he entrenched his army ; he waited for the coming of Muirâd. Dara was outwitted. His spies sent him the news ; there was still time to thwart Aurungzeb. He sent a strong force to dispute the passage ; he gave the command to Khalil Khan.

The treachery of Khalil Khan was enormous. CHAPTER VI.
He permitted Aurungzeb to entrench his army ; he then went back to Dara ; he told Dara that the position of Aurungzeb was unassailable.

At length Aurungzeb and Murad advanced their united armies against the army of Dara. Khalil Khan directed the artillery ; he also commanded the right wing of the army. He drew up his artillery in a long line in front of the troops. He had arranged everything with Aurungzeb. He kept up a terrible fire so long as the rebels were out of reach. Dara was so blinded by the smoke and dust that he could not see what was going on. Presently three discharges of artillery came from Aurungzeb. This was the signal that he was advancing against the imperial army. Khalil Khan told Dara that the rebel army was cut to pieces by the imperial artillery ; that it was very weak in artillery ; that it had only fired three discharges. "Now," he said, "is the time for charging the enemy."

Dara ordered the charge. Dara was opposed to Aurungzeb ; Khalil Khan to Mahmud ; Ram Singh to Murad. As the imperial cavalry approached the rebels, Aurungzeb opened fire. The imperialists were mowed down by the rebel cannon.⁵⁹ At last they came to hand-to-hand conflict. Dara fought with desperate valour. He would have taken Aurungzeb prisoner, but for the treachery of Khalil Khan. The traitor had only made a show of fighting ; he pretended that his own

⁵⁹ The charge of Dara's army against the artillery of Aurungzeb resembled the famous cavalry charge at Balaklava. Had the artillery of Aurungzeb been well served as the Russian guns at Balaklava, the army of Dara would have shared the fate of the "Six hundred."

Treachery of
Khalil Khan.

Battle on the
Chambal : Dara
befooled.

Cavalry charge
against artillery.

CHAPTER VI. division was in danger; he called on Dara to help him. Dara thus lost his hold on Aurungzeb.

Death of Ram Singh : flight of the Rajpoots.

Meantime Ram Singh and his Rajpoots had charged Murád. Ram Singh engaged Murád in single combat. Murád seated on his elephant threw darts at Ram Singh. The Rajpoot mounted on his horse shot arrows at Murád. At last Ram Singh emptied his quiver. He dismounted from his horse; he tried to pierce Murád's elephant under the belly. Murád struck him down with a javelin. The elephant caught the Rajpoot with his trunk, dashed his head against the ground, and trampled him to death. The Rajpoots lost heart at the death of their leader. They fled in all directions. Dara tried to rally them; all was in vain. The Rajpoots obey no voice but that of their Raja.

Dara dismounts from his elephant : loses the battle.

Notwithstanding the flight of the Rajpoots, Dara had still enough troops to gain the victory. He repulsed the charges of the rebels; he was winning the day; he lost it through the perfidy of Khalil Khan. Dara was mounted on an elephant. Khalil Khan told him that the enemy was routed; that he need not expose himself longer to the arrows; that he had better mount his horse, and pursue the enemy. In an evil moment Dara followed the counsel; he dismounted from his elephant; he mounted his horse. The troops saw that he was not on his elephant; they thought he was killed; they were seized with a panic; they fled in all directions. Amidst the disorder Khalil Khan went over to Aurungzeb, followed by thirty thousand Moghuls.

Flight of Dara to Agra, Delhi, and Lahore.

The battle on the Chambal had lasted ten hours. At seven o'clock in the morning Dara commanded an immense army; at five o'clock in the afternoon

he was flying to Agra with a handful of followers. CHAPTER VI. He could do nothing but curse and swear at Khalil Khan. He would not stop at Agra ; he hurried on to Delhi ; the governor shut the fortress against him. He went on to Lahore ; there he got on better. Shah Jehan sent him ten camels loaded with rupees and gold mohurs. He began to collect the wreck of his army.

Aurungzeb had gained the victory ; his moderation was the admiration of all men. He captured the imperial camp and baggage. He made over the imperial pavilions to Murad. He retired to a tent and engaged in prayer. He entered his brother's tent with the Koran in his hand. He presented Khalil Khan to Murad. He said :—“ It is to God, to yourself, and to this faithful friend, that we owe the victory : I have returned thanks for the preservation of Islam ; I now prostrate myself before my sovereign : Place all your trust in the faithful Khalil Khan : I will wait for a third victory to place you on the throne : I shall then devote the rest of my days to meditation and prayer.”

Such was the language of Aurungzeb in public. In private he was working to gain his own ends. He recommended Khalil Khan to Murad in order to know his brother's secrets. Day and night he was sending despatches to his friends at Agra ; to the viceroys of provinces ; to the governors of fortresses. Dalil Khan and Jai Singh had gone with Sulaiman into Bengal ; Aurungzeb wrote letters to both ; he ordered them to put Sulaiman to death, or send him in chains to the camp. Neither the Afghan nor the Rajpoot would murder a prince of the imperial blood ; neither would deliver up Sulaiman to his

Moderation of
Aurungzeb :
deference to
Murad.

Activity of
Aurungzeb :
flight of
Sulaiman to
Kashmir.

CHAPTER VI. enemies. They told Sulaijhan of his father's defeat; they advised him to fly to the mountains. Sulaiman saw his danger; he fled to Kashmír with a small escort. Dalil Khan and Jai Singh prepared to join Aurungzeb..

Aurungzeb and
Murad at Agra:
message to Shah
Jehan.

Shortly after the battle Aurungzeb and Murád advanced to Agra. They pitched their camp near the imperial gardens, within two miles of the city. Aurungzeb played a solemn farce. He sent a faithful eunuch to make a set speech to Shah Jchan. The eunuch spoke thus to the Padishah:—"Your sons have not made war out of ambition or disobedience: They know how to respect their father and their sovereign: They appealed to arms because Dara was a tyrant. They heard rumours of your death; they desired to avenge it: Happily you are still alive: I am come in their name to acknowledge you as their sovereign: Justice demands that you should distinguish between the son who is hated by all the nobles, and the sons who are worthy of your esteem."

Shah Jehan's
reply.

Shah Jehan was equal to the occasion; his reply was equally as insincere. "Assure my children," he said, "of my affection for them; their disobedience has not extinguished it: Tell them to dismiss their armies; to come and implore my forgiveness; they shall then feel my clemency."

Treachery and
artifice.

Aurungzeb knew the meaning of these words. His sister, Royshan Rai Begum, had sent him a warning message from the harem:—"If you enter the palace you will be murdered by the Tartar women." Aurungzeb met artifice by artifice. He gave out that he was about to visit his father, to be reconciled to his father, to submit to his father. He

postponed the visit from day to day. Meantime he CHAPTER VI.
had gained over every grandee. He ordered his son Mahmúd to blockade the palace.

Shah Jehan saw from the towers of his palace that it was being invested. He planted cannon on his ramparts; they did little execution. Mahmúd raised a battery and fired against the palace walls. Aurungzeb tried another dodge. He sent the eunuch with another message to Shah Jahan. He said that he was very sick; the troops had attacked the palace without his orders. He begged that his son Mahmúd might tender his submission to Shah Jehan. When his health improved he would pay his respects in person.

Shah Jehan agreed to the visit of his grandson. ^{Mahmud visits Shah Jehan.} He prepared costly gifts for Mahmúd; they were the bait by which he hoped to ensnare Aurungzeb. Mahmúd entered the fortress. He gained over the soldiers of the watch; he became master of the palace without difficulty. He entered the interior with a strong escort. He slaughtered every one he met,—soldiers, women, slaves, and eunuchs. He entered the chamber of Shah Jchan. The Tartar women were standing round. Smooth language was laid aside. Mahmúd spoke out the demands of Aurungzeb:—“Your great age, my lord, has rendered you incapable of reigning: Retire with your wives into the palace gardens: Pass the remainder of your days in tranquillity: We do not grudge you the light of day: But you dishonour the throne; you must resign it to your children.”

At these words the Tartar women raised a great shout. Mahmúd was too strong for them. Shah Jehan yielded to force. He retired with his women

^{Shah Jehan retires.}

CHAPTER VI. to the garden pavilions without the circuit of the fortress.

Shah Jehan
offers the crown
to Mahmud.

Shah Jehan lived as a captive in a country palace; he was surrounded only by women. He had one last game to play; it might have cost Aurungzeb the empire. He invited Mahmúd to pay him a second visit. He spoke to Mahmúd as follows:—"I have been dethroned by my rebellious children: I place my crown in your hands: It is for you to become Padishah and avenge my cause: You command an army; you are master of Agra: Throw off your servitude to Aurungzeb; he dethroned his father; he will not spare his son."

Mahmud
refuses:
Aurungzeb
master.

Mahmúd was taken aback by the offer of the throne. For a moment he wavered. He was afraid of his father; he could not trust his grandfather. He resisted the temptation. He refused the crown. He forced Shah Jehan to make over all the palace keys: Henceforth Aurungzeb was master. He walled up gates; he guarded every entrance. Henceforth Shah Jehan and his heirs were barred off from the outer world; henceforth the outer world knew nothing of Shah Jehan.

Letter of Shah
Jehan to Dara.

About this time some of the grandees began to pity Shah Jchan. Aurungzeb sought to allay this feeling; he produced a letter purporting to have been written by Shah Jehan to Dara. It told Dara that Aurungzeb and Murád had promised to visit the palace; that both were to be murdered; that he had better march at once on Agra. Whether this letter was real or counterfeit can never be known. Shah Jehan was capable of writing it; Aurungzeb was capable of forging it. It was delivered to Aurungzeb whilst he was sur-

rounded by his chief officers; it was said to have CHAPTER VI.
been intercepted by his own vigilance. Whether real or counterfeit it was a success. Every one feigned to be horrified at the crime of Shah Jehan; every one extolled the prudence of Aurungzeb.

The two brothers now began to dispose of the public employments. All orders were issued in their joint names. Their uncle Shaishtha Khan was appointed governor of Agra. They divided the treasury and revenues. The liberality of Aurungzeb was unbounded. He rewarded former friends; he bought over new ones. Agra was tranquil. The two brothers resolved to leave Agra; to march their armies in pursuit of Dara.

The friends of Murád were unwilling that he should accompany Aurungzeb. "Your presence," they said, "is needed at Agra: You ought to be at hand to prevent a rising: Do not go away on any hazardous enterprise." Murád was gulled by Aurungzeb. He believed all the promises of Aurungzeb. He was impetuous and fond of glory. He went away with Aurungzeb towards Delhi. The two armies halted at Mathura.

There is a magnificent mosque at Mathura; it was built upon a hill by the old Mussulman sovereigns. Aurungzeb told Murád that he should be crowned in front of this mosque. The two armies encamped on opposite banks of the river Jumna; they communicated with each other by bridges. Aurungzeb visited his brother every morning and evening. He talked of nothing but the coronation. He deferred it from day to day on various pretences. The imperial tents were not finished; the presents were not ready; the new clothes for the army were

Shaishtha Khan
governor of
Agra: pursuit
of Dara.

Delusion of
Murád.

Encampment at
Mathura.

CHAPTER VI. not all made ; the harness for horses and elephants was not complete. Murád waited patiently ; he was in no hurry for a ceremony of which he was sure.

Contrast between the two armies.

All this while there was a marked difference in the discipline of the two camps. The army of Murád was devoted to pleasure. The officers feasted and drank wine ; they amused themselves with musicians, play-actors, and dancing-girls. The army of Aurungzeb was puritanical. Prayers were said three times a day. The officers took their cue from Aurungzeb. They discoursed with their soldiers on the piety of Aurungzeb ; how happy would they be to have a sovereign like Aurungzeb.

Preparations for crowning Murád.

At last a day was fixed for the coronation of Murád. A platform was raised in front of the mosque ; there Murád was to take his seat upon the throne ; there he was to receive the turban and sabre from the hands of the Kází, the Chief Judge of the empire. Tents of gold brocade were set up in the plain around. Murád was blinded by these preparations ; he had no suspicion that anything was wrong.

Eve of the coronation.

The evening before the ceremony Aurungzeb feigned sickness. He invited Murád to come to his tent to consult the astrologers. Murád had a faithful eunuch named Shah Abbas ; this man tried in vain to warn him against Aurungzeb.. Murád was infatuated. He crossed the river ; he entered the camp of Aurungzeb, followed by Shah Abbas and some of his own officers. On the way an officer besought him to beware of Aurungzeb. Murád was offended at the freedom. He entered the tent of Aurungzeb ; he was received by the Kází. Aurungzeb appeared with his generals. He treated Murád

with marked respect. He seated Murád in the place of honour; he fanned his brother; he repeatedly addressed him as his master, his lord, and his sovereign. A grand repast was served up; for the first time Aurungzeb allowed the use of wine. The two brothers sat in a tent by themselves. The officers of Murád were feasted by the generals of Aurungzeb in a distant tent. Shah Abbas alone remained near his master.

The two princes were amused with musicians and dan^cers. Aurungzeb never put off the air of piety; he drank nothing but water. Murád was less scrupulous; he drank wine to excess; he fell into a drunken sleep. Shah Abbas conducted him to a neighbouring tent; he sat at the foot of the bed whilst his master slept. Presently he saw Aurungzeb approach the tent with his little grandson Azam. Aurungzeb, as if in pleasantry, offered Azam a jewel if he could bring away the sabre and poniard of Murád without awaking him. The child brought away the weapons. At that moment six of Aurungzeb's guards appeared with chains. Murád started with the noise; he tried to scize his sabre; he began to shriek; the men gagged him with their hands. Aurungzeb then stood forward; he raised his hands to heaven; he spoke in a solemn voice:—"The law of Muhammad must be avenged: The drunkard who broke it is unfitted for a throne: Bind him in fetters and carry him away." Murád was loaded with silver chains. Shah Abbas was bound in iron chains. They were packed off on separate elephants; the prince was sent to Delhi; the eunuch was sent to Agra. As Murád departed he said to Aurungzeb:—"Are these the oaths you

Murád feasted
by Aurungzeb.

Murád's drunk-
enness: sudden
arrest.

CHAPTER VI. have sworn on the Koran?" Not another word was heard. No one but the chosen few knew that anything had occurred.

Aurungzeb
proclaimed
Padishah.

All that night the musicians continued to play in the tent of Aurungzeb. At day-break the two armies assembled in the plain to witness the coronation of Murad. The troops had been ordered to attend without arms; the order excited no suspicions; the troops thought it was issued to prevent broils. Every one waited for Murad. Presently squadrons of Aurungzeb's horse began to surround the plain; the horsemen were fully armed. At that moment certain persons, posted for the purpose, cried out:—"Long live the Emperor Aurungzeb!" The thoughtless soldiers echoed on the cry. The two armies exclaimed:—"Long live the Emperor Aurungzeb!" Presently Aurungzeb appeared upon the platform; he sat upon the throne for a moment; he then withdrew from the scene.

No opposition.

Henceforth Aurungzeb was Padishah. The change was sudden and startling. There was no movement; no one cared; nothing occurred. Aurungzeb had provided against any opposition from Murad's army; he had won over most of the officers; he guarded those whom he could not corrupt. At such moments Hindus are passive; they accept a revolution as the hand-work of fate. Aurungzeb gained the throne by an intrigue which has no example in recorded history. Murad was blotted out. He became a prisoner for life in the fortress of Gwalior.

Aurungzeb
pursues Dara:
recalled to
Agra.

Aurungzeb had ascended the throne in the presence of the army; other rivals were still in the field. Dara commanded an army in the Punjab;

Shuja commanded another army in Bengal. Aurungzeb marched against Dara. As he approached the Punjab the army of Dara fled away in terror. Dara could only seek to escape to Persia like his ancestor Humáyun. On the land side Persia was barred against him; the governors of Multan and Kábúl were partisans of Aurungzeb. The only way of escape was down the Indus to the sea. Fortunately one important friend was still staunch to Dara. This was a eunuch whose name is unknown.⁶⁰ The eunuch commanded the fortress of Bykkur on the Indus. Bukkur was situated on an island below the junction of the five rivers; at this place the Indus, swelled by the united streams, spreads out in a wide and deep bed. The eunuch secured the best troops of Dara within this fortress. He transported cannon, powder, and provisions from Lahore. He was determined to hold the fortress against Aurungzeb until Dara escaped to Persia. Dara recovered heart; he went down the Indus; he found a refuge at Ahmedabad in Guzerat; he waited for an opportunity of sailing to the Persian Gulf. Aurungzeb went on towards Bukkur. Suddenly he was called away to the other extremity of the empire. Shuja was again marching an army to Agra; he gave out that he was going to deliver his father Shah Jehan and his brother Murád from their captivity. Aurungzeb saw that the movement was dangerous in the extreme. He left his army to besiege Bukkur under the command of an officer named Bahadur Khan. He flew towards Agra with a small escort. At Agra

⁶⁰ The eunuch had been a favourite of Dara. His master had given him the name of "The Flower of the Spring." Eunuchs have played an important part in Asiatic affairs from a remote antiquity. It would be difficult to say more upon a subject so foreign to European sentiments.

CHAPTER VI. he would find an army under the command of his son Mahmúd.

Meeting be-
tween Aurung-
zeb and Jai
Singh.

On the march Aurungzeb encountered an unexpected peril. Raja Jai Singh met him with an army of ten thousand Rajpoots. Jai Singh had abandoned Sulaiman ; he had determined on joining the conqueror. He was startled at seeing Aurungzeb with a small escort. He took it for granted that Aurungzeb was defeated ; that Aurungzeb was flying from Dara. The sight of Aurungzeb vanquished created a revolution in his mind. He saw that it would be to his interest to murder Aurungzeb and release Shah Jehan. Aurungzeb knew by instinct all that was going on in the mind of the Rajpoot. He knew that nothing could save him but a bold face. He passed through the ranks of the Rajpoots ; he approached Jai Singh ; he spoke out fearlessly :— “Our common enemy is utterly beaten ; Dara has fled to find his death in Guzerat ; I have ceased to pursue him : I am going against another rebel : You defeated Shuja once ; I am going to defeat him again : Come with me, Raja : The army you have brought to fight Dara, shall now fight against Shuja.”

Jai Singh won over.

The Rajpoot was overcome by the language of Aurungzeb. Instead of killing, the prince Jai Singh again respected him. He still hated Dara ; he had not forgotten the insult ; by fighting for Aurungzeb he would be revenged on Dara. He placed himself and his Rajpoots under the command of Aurungzeb.

Amír Jumla
joins Aurung-
zeb.

On reaching Agra, Aurungzeb took the command of the army of Mahmúd. He was also joined by Amír Jumla. The wife and children of Amír Jumla had been liberated by the flight of Dara ;

Amír Jumla had left the fortress at Aurungabad ; CHAPTER VI. he had raised fresh levies in the Dekhan.

Aurungzeb marched the united forces from Agra ^{Advance to Kajwa.} towards Allahabad. On the way he found Shuja entrenched at Kajwa. The position was very strong. Kajwa was a village on the bank of a small lake ; there was no other water within a circuit of many miles. The village was environed by forest and mountain. The approach from Agra was a desert of sand. There were no trees, no forage, and no provisions. The hot season was at its height. The army of Aurungzeb was helpless. It was in the presence of the enemy, but the enemy would not come out. The troops suffered agonies. All water had to be brought from the Ganges on the backs of camels ; the Ganges was nearly twenty miles off.

Amír Jumla saw a way out of the difficulty. He ^{Artifice of Amír Jumla.} spread a report among his soldiers that the army would decamp at day-break. The rumour reached the camp of Shuja ; it deceived Shuja into the belief that Aurungzeb was about to retreat. Next morning there was a dead silence in the camp of Aurungzeb. Not a fire was lighted. The tents were furled as if the camp had been abandoned. Troops, camels and elephants with burdens, were taking the road back to Agra. Shuja mistook them for the rear-guard of Aurungzeb. He led his army out of the natural fortress ; he marched through forest and mountains into the open plain to pursue Aurungzeb. The supposed rear-guard faced about and repulsed Shuja. Fresh troops poured out from either camp ; the whole of both armies were soon fighting in the open field. Shuja saw that he had been cajoled out of his camp.

CHAPTER VI

Battle of
Kajwa : its
significance.

The battle that followed was one of the bloodiest ever fought in India. There was no treachery. Aurungzeb had failed to corrupt a single follower of Shuja. The battle was a death-struggle for the throne; it was also a death-struggle between Sunnis and Shias. The Mussulmans in the two armies fought with the fury of fanatics. The two brothers were mounted on elephants; they met each other; they shot arrows at each other. Suddenly Aurungzeb fell back; Shuja pressed after him. The retreat of Aurungzeb was another feint. Shuja's elephant tumbled into a trench, which had been dug for the purpose and covered with branches. Shuja escaped and mounted a horse. The movement lost him the empire. His troops saw that he was no longer on his elephant; they thought he was dead; they fled in terror from the field. Aurungzeb gained the day.

Movement of
Jaswant Singh.

The progress of the battle had been watched with eager interest. When Aurungzeb fell back, the news of his death was carried to Agra. Meantime Raja Jaswant Singh of Jodhpur was smarting under his defeat on the Ujain river. His Rajpoot wife had abused him for his cowardice; she had threatened to burn herself on the funeral pile; he had soothed her by swearing to be revenged on Aurungzeb. He heard that Aurungzeb was on the march from Agra to Allahabad. He thought that the moment had come for getting his revenge. He marched out of Jodhpur; he overtook Aurungzeb on the day of the battle; he attacked and plundered the rear of Aurungzeb in the midst of the battle. He heard that Aurungzeb was defeated. He hurried back to Agra with the plunder; he resolved to release Shah Jehan.

Shaista Khan, the governor of Agra, believed CHAPTER VI.
that Aurungzeb was dead ; so did all the people of Terror at Agra. Agra. Next they heard that Jaswant Singh was coming with his Rajpoots. The whole city was stricken with terror. Shaista Khan was in a panic of fear. He clutched a cup of poison ; his women dashed it to the ground before it reached his lips. By this time Jaswant Singh knew that Aurungzeb was the victor. He rode into Agra ; he might have released Shah Jehan with the utmost ease ; he did nothing at Agra ; he carried off his plunder in safety to Jodhpur.

All this while Aurungzeb was worn out by Anxieties of Aurungzeb : return to Agra. anxiety. He had dispersed the army of Shuja ; he had not conquered him. He was afraid that Jaswant Singh would release Shah Jehan. He was afraid that Jaswant Singh would join Dara. He was forced to return to Agra. He left the army with his friend Amír Jumla and his son Mahmúd. He trusted neither. Amír Jumla had been faithless to the Sultan of Golkonda ; he might prove faithless to Aurungzeb. Amír Jumla might conquer Shuja ; he would become viceroy of Bengal in his room ; he would then convert the province into a kingdom. So Aurungzeb feigned a liking for Muhammád Amír Khan, the son of Amír Jumla ; he took the young man with him to Agra ; he kept him as a hostage for the fidelity of his father. Aurungzeb played the same game with his son Mahmúd. The young prince was puffed up ; he had captured the fortress at Agra ; he had refused the imperial crown. He had married the daughter of the Sultan of Golkonda. Aurungzeb kept his daughter-in-law at Agra as a hostage for his son's fidelity. He gave the com-

CHAPTER VI. mand of the army to Amír Jumla. He reduced Mahmúd to the rank of subaltern.

Mahmúd joins Shuja.

Shuja took up a strong position near Monghír; it was in the same defile where Sher Khan blocked out Humáyun. He laboured to win over Mahmúd. He had betrothed a daughter to Mahmúd. The marriage had been postponed on account of the Golkonda marriage. The Golkonda princess had been kept at Agra. In the absence of his wife, Mahmúd began to think of the fair cousin to whom he was betrothed. He was exasperated beyond measure at his father. Suddenly he left Amír Jumla; he joined Shuja; he married Shuja's daughter. The defection was disastrous to Aurungzeb; it was accompanied by other defections.

Mahmúd's return : im-prisoned for life.

Amír Jumla brought it to a close; he excited the suspicions of the uncle against the nephew. Mahmúd found himself watched; he grew frightened; he returned to Amír Jumla; he implored to be forgiven. Aurungzeb was inexorable; he disguised his vindictiveness; he feigned to pardon Mahmúd; he sent him affectionate letters. Mahmúd was sent to Delhi under an escort; he found he was strongly guarded; he tried to escape to Kashmír. No half measures were taken with him; he was placed on the back of an elephant and carried off to Gwalior; he spent the remainder of his days in the fortress of Gwalior.

Aurungzeb at Delhi.

Aurungzeb had a short breathing time. He went on to Delhi; he entered the city amidst the acclamations of the people; He established his court in the palace at Delhi. He coined money in his own name.

Aurungzeb was soon forced to take the field.

Jeswant Singh was corresponding with Dara ; he promised to help Dara with ten thousand Rajpoots. Dara left Ahmadabad ; he marched an army towards Ajmír. Jaswant Singh was won over to Aurungzeb by bribes and promises. At Ajmír Dara discovered that Jaswant Singh had thrown him over ; that Aurungzeb was marching from Delhi with an overwhelming army. His own officers turned against him ; they betrayed his plans to Aurungzeb. He began a battle ; he was beaten by treachery ; the fighting was a sham ; it is said that his artillery was charged with blank cartridges. He soon fled from the field. He pushed on with his family and a small body of horse towards Guzerat. Many of his followers died on the way from heat and exhaustion ; many were pillaged and murdered by robbers. He reached Ahmadabad ; he was refused admittance. He toiled northwards through the horrible desert of Seinde.⁶¹ He tried to escape to Kábul ; he was betrayed by a treacherous Afghan, whose life he had saved. His favourite wife took poison ; she dreaded falling into the hands of Aurungzeb ; she shuddered at the idea of becoming the wife of the murderer of her husband. Death put an end to her sufferings.⁶² Dara was

⁶¹ Dara had fully expected to find an asylum at Ahmadabad. Bernier was with him at the time ; he describes the scene. The message from the governor of Ahmadabad, that the gate would be shut against Dara, reached the party at day-break. It threw them into an agony of fear. The women screamed in terror. Dara was more dead than alive ; he spoke sometimes to one and sometimes to another ; he stopped and consulted the commonest soldier. The sufferings of those who died in the desert were heart-rending. It would have been better for Dara had he perished in the desert.

⁶² Father Catrou states, evidently on the authority of Manouchi, that all Moghul princesses carried poison in their rings ; they could thus at any moment put an end to their misfortunes. The wife of Dara had good reason for her fears. Aurungzeb, notwithstanding his piety, had the same polygamous tastes

CHAPTER VI. about to follow her example; suddenly he was taken prisoner and sent to Delhi.

Last days of Dara.

The last days of Dara were spent in the extremity of misery. Aurungzeb had resolved in council to imprison him for life in the fortress of Gwalior. Before doing so it was necessary to prove to all the world that the real Dara had been captured; that he was conquered, degraded, and a prisoner. Dara was paraded on a wretched elephant through the streets and great square at Delhi. He was guarded by the Afghan who had betrayed him. Bernier witnessed the sad procession; he has vividly described the scene. An immense multitude was assembled; shrieks and cries were heard from every quarter. Men, women, and children bewailed the fate of Dara as though some great calamity had befallen them. The whole city was moved; curses were uttered against the Afghan and his followers. Some stones were thrown at them; otherwise no one stirred; no one attempted to rescue Dara. The demonstration, however, was sufficient to alarm Aurungzeb. A second council was held in the palace; it was decided that Dara should die. The wretched prince was not made over to the executioner; he was murdered by hired assassins. His head was cut off and carried to Aurungzeb; it was buried in the tomb of Humáyun.

Dara a Christian.

Father Catrou says that Dara died a Christian. When Dara knew that death was inevitable he

as his predecessors. The old Rajpoot law, under which the wife of the conquered was compelled to surrender herself to the conqueror, seems to have been recognized by the Moghuls. There was nothing to prevent Aurungzeb from taking such sweet revenge. The Koran had abrogated the law; but only as regards the wives of believers. Dara, as already seen, was no Mussulman.

turned to Christianity for consolation. He wanted CHAPTER VI. to speak to Father Busée—a Flemish priest who had formerly instructed him in Roman Catholic Christianity. Aurungzeb forbade the meeting; he was too staunch a Mussulman to allow Dara to become a Christian. Dara was heard to say, more than once:—"Muhammad has destroyed me; Jesus Christ, the Son of the Eternal, will save me." When the assassins entered his chamber, he cried aloud:—"Muhammad gives me death; the Son of God gives me life." They were his last words. At that moment he was cut down and beheaded.

Shortly after the death of Dara, his son Sulaiman ^{Betrayal of Sulaiman.} was betrayed by the Raja of Kashmír. He too was sent as a prisoner to Delhi. By this time Aurungzeb had learnt a lesson. He did not expose Sulaiman to the sympathies of the multitude; he paraded him before the court in an inner hall of the palace. The scene was deeply affecting; Bernier could not keep himself away. Sulaiman was tall and handsome. His hands were bound in golden fetters. In this plight he stood before Aurungzeb and all the grandees of the empire. Many ladies looked at him through a lattice; some might have known him from his infancy. All were moved; behind the lattice there was weeping and wailing. Aurungzeb promised to spare his life. Sulaiman knew that he would be a prisoner; he feared lest he should be slowly poisoned.⁶³ He made a profound reverence. He said:—"Let me be killed at once if

⁶³ The poison was a well-known mixture of poppy-juice and water. It was called poust. Every morning a cup was given to the victim; all food was withheld until he had drank it. It took away all sense and intellect. The victim became torpid and idiotic; at last death relieved him. See Bernier.

CHAPTER VI. I am to drink poust!" Aurungzeb promised in a loud voice that no poust should be given to him. The next day he was sent to the fortress of Gwalior.

Defeat of
Shuja; tragedy
in Arakan.

Meantime Amír Jumla had carried on the war against Shuja. It soon drew to a close. Shuja fled to Dacca; thence he escaped to Arakan in Portuguese galleys; he was accompanied by his wife, two sons, and three daughters. The King of Arakan was puzzled about Shuja. At first he was hospitable; in time he grew insolent. He demanded a daughter of Shuja in marriage. The request was revolting to the Moghul prince. Shuja tried to raise the Mussulmans of Arakan; to kill the King; to seize the throne of Arakan. The plot was discovered. Shuja fled to the mountains which separate Arakan from Pegu. He was pursued; probably he was murdered; nothing more was heard of him. The King of Arakan took his eldest daughter and made her his wife. The queen-mother wanted the son of Shuja to be her husband. There was another plot to raise the Mussulmans. The King discovered it; he murdered the whole family. The princes were beheaded with blunt axes. The princesses were starved to death; the princess who had become his wife, and was about to become a mother, was starved with the others.⁶⁴

Murád accused
of murder :
opposition to
Aurungzeb.

All the brothers of Aurungzeb were dead excepting Murád. Aurungzeb was anxious for the death of Murád. The prince was charged with having murdered a secretary whilst viceroy of Guzerat. Aurungzeb prepared to try the case. There was a

⁶⁴ There are contradictory accounts of these murders. All are horrible. Perhaps Berfier's story is the best-authenticated; the Moghul chronicles were not likely to tell the truth.

difficulty at starting. According to Mussulman law CHAPTER VI. no sovereign could try a capital offence until he had been consecrated by the Chief Judge of the empire.⁶⁵ Aurungzeb was the last man to ignore Mussulman law. The Chief Judge had been appointed when Shah Jehan was on the throne; he manfully refused to consecrate a new sovereign whilst Shah Jehan was still living; he denounced Aurungzeb as the murderer of his elder brother. Aurungzeb was taken aback. He convoked an assembly of all the doctors of the law. He set forth that Shah Jehan was unfit to reign; that Dara had been put to death for infidelity and disobedience to the law. He mingled threats with his arguments. The convocation decided that Aurungzeb was the lawful sovereign. The obnoxious Chief Judge was deposed; another doctor was appointed in his room. Aurungzeb was consecrated as Padishah; he ascended the throne in earnest; he received the homage of all the Amirs and Rajas. Murad was found guilty and sentenced to death. He was bitten by a cobra in the fortress of Gwalior.⁶⁶

The accession of Aurungzeb is an era in the history of India. It was followed by a revival of the Sunni religion; a return to Mussulman law and the Koran; the establishment of Muftis throughout the empire.⁶⁷ It was also followed by Hindú up-

*Accession of
Aurungzeb an
epoch.*

⁶⁵ The Chief Judge of the empire was known as the Sadr-i-Jehan, or Chief Kazi. Under Mussulman Sultans the power of this officer was immense; he was the head of religion, the fourth person in the empire. (See Blockmann's *Ain-i-Akbari*.) The influence of the Sadr-i-Jehan became greatly diminished after Akbar had broken up the Ulama, and forced the existing Sadr-i-Jehan to go to Mecca. Succeeding Sadrs had been members of the "Divine Faith." The Sadr-i-Jehan, who was in power when Aurungzeb usurped the throne, was evidently a staunch Shiah.

⁶⁶ Father Catrou's History. Tavernier's Travels in India, book ii. chap. 5.

⁶⁷ The Mufti was the officer who inspected all matters that concerned religion.

CHAPTER VI. risings,—Mahratta and Rajpoot. The history of the reign will be told hereafter.

Bernier's de-
scription of
Moghul admin-
istration.

Meantime it may be as well to glance at the working of the Moghul administration. Fortunately Bernier has brought out its main features: He resided many years at Delhi. He travelled through Hindustan and the Dekhan from Kashmír to Gol-konda. In 1663 he drew up a report upon the Moghul empire for the information of the French minister Colbert. The working of the Moghul administration may therefore be described almost in the words of Bernier :—

Jaghír and
Khalisa lands.

“ All the lands of the empire are the property of the sovereign. They are divided into Jaghír lands and Khalisa lands. The Jaghírs are allotments of lands and villages in lieu of pay, and for the maintenance of troops. Every Jaghírdar pays a fixed sum yearly to the sovereign out of the surplus income. The Khalisa lands are the royal domains. They are rarely if ever given in Jaghír. They are let out to Farmers, who pay a yearly rent to the sovereign, and exact what they can out of the cultivators.

Tyranny and
cruelty.

“ The Jaghírdars and Farmers exercise supreme power in their respective districts. Their authority over the peasantry is almost absolute ; it is nearly as absolute over artisans and traders in towns and villages. They are cruel and oppressive to the last degree. The injured peasant, artisan, or trader has no appeal. There are no great lords, no parliaments, no judges of high courts, as there are in

No mention is made of the Mufti during the reigns of Jehangír, or Shah Jahan ; they probably had no existence during that period, or were of little weight in the administration. Even the existence of the Kází is rarely mentioned. In the early part of the reign of Aurungzeb, there was a Mufti and a Kází in every town. See Tavernier's Travels in the Indies, chap. 10.

France, to restrain the wickedness of the oppressors. CHAPTER VI.
 There are Kázís, or magistrates, but they have not enough power to redress the wrongs of these unhappy people. This abuse of authority is not felt in the same degree near Delhi and Agra, nor in the neighbourhood of large towns and seaports; in those places it is not so easy to conceal acts of gross injustice from the knowledge of the court.

“ The people are reduced to a debasing state of slavery. It obstructs trade; it pauperizes the manners and mode of life. If a man makes money he dares not spend it lest he should provoke the cupidity of some tyrant. He does not live in greater comfort; he dares not assume an air of independence; he only studies to appear poor. His dress, his lodging, his furniture, and even his daily food, are all as mean as ever. Meantime he buries his gold at a great depth under-ground. Mussulmans bury their money as well as Hindús. A few individuals, who are protected by the sovereign, or by a powerful Amír, are alone able to enjoy the comforts and luxuries of life.

“ It is utterly impossible for the Padishah, however well disposed, to control the tyranny which prevails in the provinces. It often deprives peasants and artisans of the necessaries of life; it leaves them to die of misery and exhaustion. The people have either no children at all, or have them only to starve. The cultivators are driven from their homes to seek for better treatment in some neighbouring state. Some follow the army; they prefer becoming servants to common horsemen, to remaining in their native villages and cultivating the land.

“ The ground is seldom tilled except by compul-

CHAPTER VI. sion. There is no one to repair the ditches and
 Misery of culti-
 vators. The houses are dilapidated ; few persons will build new ones or repair those which are tumbling down. The peasants will not toil for tyrants. The tyrants will not care for lands which may be taken from them at any moment. They draw all they can out of the soil ; they leave the peasants to starve or run away ; they leave the land to become a dreary waste.

Misery of
 artisans.

“Artisans are treated with the same oppression. They are kept at work by sheer necessity or the cudgel. It is enough for them if they can satisfy the cravings of hunger and clothe themselves in the coarsest garments. Any money gained goes to the merchant ; the merchant in his turn has to hide it from the rapacity of the governor.

Slavish aristocracy.

The sovereign of India cannot select loyal men for his service. He cannot employ princes, noblemen, or gentlemen of opulent and ancient families. He cannot employ the sons of citizens, merchants, and manufacturers ; men of education, ready to support the reputation of their family, and satisfied with the approbation of their sovereign. Instead of men of this description, the Great Moghul is surrounded by slaves, ignorant and brutal ; by parasites raised from the dregs of society ; strangers to loyalty and patriotism ; full of insufferable pride ; destitute of courage, honour, and decency.⁶⁸

Dead weight of
 the court and
 army.

“The country is ruined to maintain the splendour of a numerous court and to pay a large army. Meantime the sufferings of the people are beyond conception. They are compelled by whips and

⁶⁸ Bernier states in his Travels that many of the Amirs were originally slaves ; they had nothing to fit them for command except their fair complexions.

canes to labour incessantly for the benefit of others. CHAPTER VI.
 They are driven to despair by cruel treatment of every kind. They are only prevented from revolting or flying away by the presence of a military force.

“The misery of these ill-fated people is swelled by the practice of selling different governments for immense sums in hard cash. The purchaser borrows the money at enormous rates of interest; he has to squeeze the principal and interest as well as his own profit out of the people. He has to make valuable presents every year to a vizier, a eunuch, a lady of the harem, and to any other person whose influence at court he considers indispensable. The governor must also enforce the payment of the regular tribute to the Padishah. Originally he may have been a wretched slave, involved in debt, and without the smallest patrimony; he yet becomes a great and opulent lord.

“Thus ruin and desolation overspread the land. The provisional governors are so many petty tyrants possessing a boundless authority. There is no one to whom the oppressed subject may appeal; he cannot hope for redress, however great may be his injuries, however often they may be repeated. It is true that the Padishah sends Wakiahnavis, or news-writers, to every province; their business is to report every event that takes place; but there is generally a disgraceful collusion between these officers and the governor, so that their presence seldom restrains the tyranny which is exercised over the unhappy people.

“Despotic governments are not without some ^{Asiatic justice,} advantages. They have few lawyers, few suits, and

Sale of governments.

Tyranny in the provinces.

CHAPTER VI. speedy justice. Protracted law-suits are a great evil; sovereigns are bound to find a remedy; the most efficacious remedy would be to destroy the right of private property. The necessity for legal proceedings would cease at once; magistrates, lawyers, and counsellors would become useless: But the remedy would be worse than the disease. Instead of magistrates whom a sovereign could trust, we should have rulers such as I have described. Some travellers have borne different testimony from mine. They have seen two poor men, the dregs of the people, brought before a Kází. They have seen one or both punished at once or dismissed at once. They have been enchanted at the sight. They have returned to France, exclaiming,—‘What excellent justice! What speedy justice! The upright Kázís of Hindustan are models for the magistrates of France!’ They forget that had the real offender a few rupees to give the Kází, and a few more to buy two false witnesses, he would have gained his cause, or might have protracted it as long as he pleased.”

Asiatic rule.

Such is the testimony of Bernier as regards Asiatic rule; such is the evidence of all Asiatic history worthy of the name.

LINGUISTIC PUBLICATIONS OF **TRUBNER & CO.,** 57 AND 59, LUDGATE HILL, LONDON, E.C.

Adi Granth (The); or, THE HOLY SCRIPTURES OF THE SIKHS, translated from the original Gurmukhi, with Introductory Essays, by Dr. ERNEST TRUMPP, Professor Regius of Oriental Languages at the University of Munich, etc. Roy. 8vo. cloth, pp. 866. £2 12s. 6d.

Ahlwardt.—THE DIVÁNS OF THE SIX ANCIENT ARABIC POETS, Ennábiga, 'Antara, Tarafa, Zuhair, 'Algama, and Imruolggis; chiefly according to the MSS. of Paris, Gotha, and Leyden, and the collection of their Fragments: with a complete list of the various readings of the Text. Edited by W. AHLWARDT, 8vo. pp. xxx. 340, sewed. 1870. 12s.

Aitareya Brahmanam of the Rig Veda. 2 vols. See under HAUG.

Alabaster.—THE WHEEL OF THE LAW: Buddhism illustrated from Siamese Sources by the Modern Buddhist, a Life of Buddha, and an account of H.M. Consulate-General in Siam; M.R.A.S. Demy 8vo. pp. lviii. and 324. 1871. 14s.

Alif Lailat wa Lailat.—THE ARABIAN NIGHTS. 4 vols. 4to. pp. 495, 493, 442, 434. Cairo, A.H. 1279 (1862). £3 3s.

This celebrated Edition of the Arabian Nights is now, for the first time, offered at a price which makes it accessible to Scholars of limited means.

Andrews.—A DICTIONARY OF THE HAWAIIAN LANGUAGE, to which is appended an English-Hawaiian Vocabulary, and a Chronological Table of Remarkable Events. By LORRIN ANDREWS. 8vo. pp. 560, cloth. £1 11s. 6d.

Anthropological Institute of Great Britain and Ireland (The Journal of the). Published Quarterly.

Vol I., No. 1. January-July, 1871. 8vo. pp. 120-clix, sewed. Illustrated with 11 full page Plates, and numerous Woodcuts; and accompanied by several folding plates of Tables, etc. 7s.

Vol. I., No. 2. October, 1871. 8vo. pp. 121-264, sewed. 4s.

Vol. I., No. 3. January, 1872. 8vo. pp. 265-427, sewed. 16 full-page Plates. 4s

Vol. II., No. 1. April, 1872. 8vo. pp. 136, sewed. Eight two-page plates and two four-page plates. 4s.

Vol. II., No. 2. July and Oct., 1872. 8vo. pp. 137-312. 9 plates and a map. 6s.

Vol. II., No. 3. January, 1873. 8vo. pp. 143. With 4 plates. 4s.

Vol. III., No. 1. April, 1873. 8vo. pp. 136. With 8 plates and two maps. 4s.

Vol. III., No. 2. July and October, 1873. 8vo. pp. 168, sewed. With 9 plates. 4s.

Vol. III., No. 3. January, 1874. 8vo. pp. 238, sewed. With 8 plates, etc. 6s.

Vol. IV., No. 1. April and July, 1874. 8vo. pp. 308, sewed. With 22 plates. 8s.

Vol. IV., No. 2. April, 1875. 8vo. pp. 200, sewed. With 11 plates. 6s.

Vol. V., No. 1. July, 1875. 8vo. pp. 120, sewed. With 3 plates. 4s.

Vol. V., No. 2. October, 1875. 8vo. pp. 132, sewed. With 8 plates. 4s.

Vol. V., No. 3. January, 1876. 8vo. pp. 156, sewed. With 8 plates. 5s.

Vol. V., No. 4. April, 1876. 8vo. pp. 128, sewed. With 2 plates. 5s.

Vol. VI., No. 1. July, 1876. 8vo. pp. 100, sewed. With 5 plates. 5s.

Vol. VI., No. 2. October, 1876. 8vo. pp. 98, sewed. With 4 plates and a map. 5s.

Vol. VI., No. 3. January, 1877. 8vo. pp. 146, sewed. With 11 plates. 5s.

Vol. VI., No. 4. May, 1877. 8vo. pp. iv. and 184, sewed. With 7 plates. 5s.

Apastambiya Dharma Sutram.—**APHORISMS OF THE SACRED LAWS OF THE HINDUS**, by Apastamba. Edited, with a Translation and Notes, by G. Bühler. By order of the Government of Bombay. 2 parts. 8vo. cloth, 1868–71. £1 4s. 6d.

Arabic and Persian Books (A Catalogue of). Printed in the East. Constantly for sale by Trübner and Co., 57 and 59, Ludgate Hill, London. 16mo. pp. 46, sewed. 1s.

Archæological Survey of India.—See under BURGESS and CUNNINGHAM.

Arden.—**A PROGRESSIVE GRAMMAR OF THE TELUGU LANGUAGE**, with Copious Examples and Exercises. In Three Parts. Part I. Introduction.—On the Alphabet and Orthography.—Outline Grammar, and Model Sentences. Part II. A Complete Grammar of the Colloquial Dialect. Part III. On the Grammatical Dialect used in Books. By A. H. ARDEN, M.A., Missionary of the C. M. S. Masulipatam. 8vo. sewed, pp. xiv. and 380. 14s.

Arnold.—**THE ILIAD AND ODYSSEY OF INDIA.** By EDWIN ARNOLD, M.A., C.S.I., F.R.G.S., etc. Fcap. 8vo. sd., pp. 24. 1s.

Arnold.—**THE INDIAN SONG OF SONGS.** From the Sanskrit of the Gita Govinda of Jayadeva. By EDWIN ARNOLD, M.A., C.S.I., F.R.G.S. (of University College, Oxford), formerly Principal of Poona College, and Fellow of the University of Bombay. Cr. 8vo. cl., pp. xvi. and 144. 1875. 5s.

Arnold.—**A SIMPLE TRANSLITERAL GRAMMAR OF THE TURKISH LANGUAGE.** Compiled from various sources. With Dialogues and Vocabulary. By EDWIN ARNOLD, M.A., C.S.I., F.R.G.S. Pott 8vo. cloth, pp. 80. 2s. 6d.

Asher.—**ON THE STUDY OF MODERN LANGUAGES IN GENERAL**, and of the English Language in particular. An Essay. By DAVID ASHER, Ph.D. 12mo. pp. viii. and 80, cloth. 2s.

Asiatic Society.—**JOURNAL OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND**, from the Commencement to 1863. First Series, complete in 20 Vols. 8vo., with many Plates. Price £10; or, in Single Numbers, as follows:—Nos. 1 to 14, 6s. each; No. 15, 2 Parts, 4s. each; No. 16, 2 Parts, 4s. each; No. 17, 2 Parts, 4s. each, No. 18, 6s. These 18 Numbers form Vols. I. to IX.—Vol. X., Part 1, op.; Part 2, 6s.; Part 3, 5s.—Vol. XI., Part 1, 6s.; Part 2 not published.—Vol. XII., 2 Parts, 6s. each.—Vol. XIII., 2 Parts, 6s. each.—Vol. XIV., Part 1, 5s.; Part 2 not published.—Vol. XV., Part 1, 6s.; Part 2, with 3 Maps, £2 2s.—Vol. XVI., 2 Parts, 6s. each.—Vol. XVII., 2 Parts, 6s. each.—Vol. XVIII., 2 Parts, 6s. each.—Vol. XIX., Parts 1 to 4, 16s.—Vol. XX., Parts 1 and 2, 4s. each. Part 3, 7s. 6d.

Asiatic Society.—**JOURNAL OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. New Series.** Vol. I. In Two Parts. pp. iv. and 490, sewed. 16s.

CONTENTS.—I. *Vajra-chhedikā*, the “Kin Kong King,” or Diamond Sūtra. Translated from the Chinese by the Rev. S. Beal, Chaplain, R.N.—II. The Pāramitā-hridaya Sūtra, or, in Chinese, “Mo ho-pō-ye-po-lo-mih-to-sin-king,” i.e. “The Great Pāramitā Heart Sūtra.” Translated from the Chinese by the Rev. S. Beal, Chaplain, R.N.—III. On the Preservation of National Literature in the East. By Colonel F. J. Goldsmid.—IV. On the Agricultural, Commercial, Financial, and Military Statistics of Ceylon. By E. R. Power, Esq.—V. Contributions to a Knowledge of the Vedic Theogony and Mythology. By J. Muir, D.C.L., LL.D.—VI. A Tabular List of Original Works and Translations, published by the late Dutch Government of Ceylon at their Printing Press at Colombo. Compiled by Mr. Mat. P. J. Ondaatje, of Colombo.—VII. Assyrian and Hebrew Chronology compared, with a view of showing the extent to which the Hebrew Chronology of Ussher must be modified, in conformity with the Assyrian Canon. By J. W. Bosanquet, Esq.—VIII. On the existing Dictionaries of the Malay Language. By Dr. H. N. van der Tuuk.—IX. Bilingual Readings: Cuneiform and Phœnician. Notes on some Tablets in the British Museum, containing Bilingual Legends (Assyrian and Phœnician). By Major-General Sir H. Rawlinson, K.C.B., Director R.A.S.—X. Translations of Three Copper-plate Inscriptions of the Fourth Century A.D., and Notices of the Chālukya and Gurjara Dynasties. By Professor J. Dowson, Staff College, Sandhurst.—XI. Yama and the Doctrine of a Future Life, according to the Rig-Yajur-, and Atharva-Vedas. By J. Muir, Esq., D.C.L., LL.D.—XII. On the Jyotisha Observation of the Place of the Colures, and the Date derivable from it. By

William D. Whitpey, Esq., Professor of Sanskrit in Yale College, New Haven, U.S.—Note on the preceding Article. By Sir Edward Colebrooke, Bart., M.P., President R.A.S.—XIII. Progress of the Vedic Religion towards Abstract Conceptions of the Deity. By J. Muir, Esq., D.C.L., LL.D.—XIV. Brief Notes on the Age and Authenticity of the Work of Aryabhata, Varāhamihira, Brahmagupta, Bhāskarāchārya. By Dr. Bhāu Dāji, Honorary Member R.A.S.—XV. Outlines of a Grammar of the Malagasy Language. By H. N. Van der Tuuk.—XVI. On the Identity of Xandrames and Krananda. By Edward Thomas, Esq.

Vol. II. In Two Parts. pp. 522, sewed. 16s.

CONTENTS.—I. Contributions to a Knowledge of Vedic Theogony and Mythology. No. 2. By J. Muir, Esq.—II. Miscellaneous Hymns from the Rig- and Atharva-Vedas. By J. Muir, Esq.—III. Five hundred questions on the Social Condition of the Natives of Bengal. By the Rev. J. Long.—IV. Short account of the Malay Manuscripts belonging to the Royal Asiatic Society. By Dr. H. N. van der Tuuk.—V. Translation of the Amitābhā Sūtra from the Chinese. By the Rev. S. Beal, Chaplain Royal Navy.—VI. The initial coinage of Bengal. By Edward Thomas, Esq.—VII. Specimens of an Assyrian Dictionary. By Edwin Norris, Esq.—VIII. On the Relations of the Priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age. By J. Muir, Esq.—IX. On the Interpretation of the Veda. By the same.—X. An attempt to Translate from the Chinese a work known as the Confessional Services of the great compassionate Kwan Yin, possessing 1000 hands and 1000 eyes. By the Rev. S. Beal, Chaplain Royal Navy.—XI. The Hymns of the Gaupayanas and the Legend of King Asamati. By Professor Max Müller, M.A., Honorary Member Royal Asiatic Society.—XII. Specimen Chapters of an Assyrian Grammar. By the Rev. E. Hincks, D.D., Honorary Member Royal Asiatic Society.

Vol. III. In Two Parts. pp. 516, sewed. With Photograph. 22s.

CONTENTS.—I. Contributions towards a Glossary of the Assyrian Language. By H. F. Talbot.—II. Remarks on the Indo-Chinese Alphabets. By Dr. A. Bastian.—III. The poetry of Mohamed Rabadan, Arragonese. By the Hon. H. E. J. Stanley.—IV. Catalogue of the Oriental Manuscripts in the Library of King's College, Cambridge. By Edward Henry Palmer, B.A., Scholar of St. John's College, Cambridge; Member of the Royal Asiatic Society; Membre de la Société Asiatique de Paris.—V. Description of the Amravati Tope in Guntur. By J. Fergusson, Esq., F.R.S.—VI. Remarks on Prof. Brockhaus' edition of the Kathāsarit-sagara, Lambaka IX. XVIII. By Dr. H. Kern, Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Leyden.—VII. The source of Colebrooke's Essay "On the Duties of a Faithful Hindu Widow." By Fitzedward Hall, Esq., M.A., D.C.L. Oxon. Supplement: Further detail of proofs that Colebrooke's Essay, "On the Duties of a Faithful Hindu Widow," was not indebted to the Vivādabhangārnava. By Fitzedward Hall, Esq.—VIII. The Sixth Hymn of the First Book of the Itig Veda. By Professor Max Müller, M.A., Hon. M.R.A.S.—IX. Sassanian Inscriptions. By E. Thomas, Esq.—X. Account of an Embassy from Morocco to Spain in 1690 and 1691. By the Hon. H. E. J. Stanley.—XI. The Poetry of Mohamed Rabadan, of Arragon. By the Hon. H. E. J. Stanley.—XII. Materials for the History of India for the Six Hundred Years of Mohammedan rule, previous to the Foundation of the British Indian Empire. By Major W. Nassau Lees, LL.D., Ph.D.—XIII. A Few Words concerning the Hill people inhabiting the Forests of the Cochin State. By Captain G. E. Fryer, Madras Staff Corps, M.R.A.S.—XIV. Notes on the Bhojpuri Dialect of Hindi, spoken in Western Behar. By John Beames, Esq., B.C.S., Magistrate of Chumparun.

Vol. IV. In Two Parts. pp. 521, sewed. 16s.

CONTENTS.—I. Contribution towards a Glossary of the Assyrian Language. By H. F. Talbot. Part II.—II. On Indian Chronology. By J. Fergusson, Esq., F.R.S.—III. The Poetry of Mohamed Rabadan of Arragon. By the Hon. H. E. J. Stanley.—IV. On the Magar Language of Nepal. By John Beames, Esq., B.C.S.—V. Contributions to the Knowledge of Parsee Literature. By Edward Sachau, Ph.D.—VI. Illustrations of the Lamaist System in Tibet, drawn from Chinese Sources. By Wm. Frederick Meyers, Esq., of the H.B.M. Consular Service, China.—VII. Khuddaka Pāṭha, a Pāli Text, with a Translation and Notes. By R. C. Childers, late of the Ceylon Civil Service.—VIII. An Endeavour to elucidate Rashiduddin's Geographical Notices of India. By Col. H. Yule, C.B.—IX. Sassanian Inscriptions explained by the Pahlavi of the Pārsis. By E. W. West, Esq.—X. Some Account of the Sonbyū Pagoda at Mengün, near the Burmese Capital, in a Memorandum by Capt. E. H. Sladen, Political Agent at Mandalé; with Remarks on the Subject by Col. Henry Yule, C.B.—XI. The Brhat-Sanhita; or, Complete System of Natural Astrology of Varāha-Mihira. Translated from Sanskrit into English by Dr. H. Kern.—XII. The Mohammedan Law of Evidence, and its influence on the Administration of Justice in India. By N. B. E. Baillie, Esq.—XIII. The Mohammedan Law of Evidence in connection with the Administration of Justice to Foreigners. By N. B. E. Baillie, Esq.—XIV. A Translation of a Bactrian Pāli Inscription. By Prof. J. Dowson.—XV. Indo-Parthian Coins. By E. Thomas, Esq.

Vol. V. In Two Parts. pp. 463, sewed. 18s. 6d. With 10 full-page and folding Plates.

CONTENTS.—I. Two Jātakas. The original Pāli Text, with an English Translation. By V. Faufböll.—II. On an Ancient Buddhist Inscription at Keu-yung kwan, in North China. By A. Wyllie.—III. The Brhat Sanhita; or, Complete System of Natural Astrology of Varāha-Mihira Translated from Sanskrit into English by Dr. H. Kern.—IV. The Pongol Festival in Southern India. By Charles E. Gover.—V. The Poetry of Mohamed Rabadan, of Arragon. By the Right Hon. Lord Stanley of Alderley.—VI. Essay on the Creeds and Customs of the Jangams. By Charles P. Brown.—VII. On Malabar, Coromandel, Quilon, etc. By C. P. Brown.—VIII. On the Treatment of the Nexus in the Neo-Aryan Languages of India. By John Beames, B.C.S.—IX. Some Remarks on the Great Tope at Sānchi. By the Rev. S. Beal.—X. Ancient Inscriptions from Mathura. Translated by Professor J. Dowson.—Note to the Mathura Inscriptions. By

Major-General A. Cunningham.—XI. Specimen of a Translation of the *Adi Granth*. By Dr. Ernest Trumpp.—XII. Notes on Dhammapada, with Special Reference to the Question of Nirvâna. By R. C. Childers, late of the Ceylon Civil Service.—XIII. The *Brihat-Sanhita*; or, Complete System of Natural Astrology of Varâha-mihira. Translated from Sanskrit into English by Dr. H. Kern.—XIV. On the Origin of the Buddhist Arthakathâs. By the Mudiar L. Comrilla Vîjasinha, Government Interpreter to the Ratnapura Court, Ceylon. With an Introduction by R. C. Childers, late of the Ceylon Civil Service.—XV. The Poetry of Mohamed Rabadan, of Arragon. By the Right Hon. Lord Stanley of Alderley.—XVI. Proverbia Communia Syriaca. By Captain R. F. Burton.—XVII. Notes on an Ancient Indian Vase, with an Account of the Engraving thereupon. By Charles Horne, M.R.A.S., late of the Bengal Civil Service.—XVIII. The Bhar Tribe. By the Rev. M. A. Sherring, LL.D., Benares. Communicated by C. Horne, M.R.A.S., late B.C.S.—XIX. Of *Jihad* in Mohammedian Law, and its application to British India. By N. B. E. Baillie.—XX. Comments on Recent Pehlvi Decipherments. With an Incidental Sketch of the Derivation of Aryan Alphabets. And Contributions to the Early History and Geography of Tabaristân. Illustrated by Coins. By E. Thomas, F.R.S.

Vol. VI., Part I., pp. 212, sewed, with two plates and a map. 8s.

CONTENTS.—The Ishmaelites, and the Arabic Tribes who Conquered their Country. By A. Sprenger.—A Brief Account of Four Arabic Works on the History and Geography of Arabia. By Captain S. B. Miles.—On the Methods of Disposing of the Dead at Liassa, Thibet, etc. By Charles Horne, late B.C.S. The *Brihat-Sanhita*; or, Complete System of Natural Astrology of Varâha-mihira. Translated from Sanskrit into English by Dr. H. Kern.—Notes on Hwen Thsang's Account of the Principalities of Tokhâristân, in which some Previous Geographical Identifications are Reconsidered. By Colonel Yule, C.B.—The Campaign of Ælius Gallus in Arabia. By A. Sprenger.—An Account of Jerusalem, Translated for the late Sir H. M. Elliott from the Persian Text of Nâsir ibn Khusrû's *Safanâma* by the late Major A. R. Fuller.—The Poetry of Mohamed Rabadan, of Arragon. By the Right Hon. Lord Stanley of Alderley.

Vol. VI., Part II., pp. 213 to 400 and lxxiv., sewed. Illustrated with a Map, Plates, and Woodcuts. 8s.

* **CONTENTS.**—On Hiouen-Thsing's Journey from Patna to Ballabhi. By James Fergusson, D.C.L., F.R.S.—Northern Buddhism. [Note from Colonel H. Yule, addressed to the Secretary.]—Hwen Thsang's Account of the Principalities of Tokhâristân, etc. By Colonel H. Yule, C.B.—The *Brihat-Sanhita*; or, Complete System of Natural Astrology of Varâha-mihira. Translated from Sanskrit into English by Dr. H. Kern.—The Initial Coinage of Bengal, under the Early Muhammedan Conquerors. Part II. Embracing the preliminary period between A.H. 614-634 (A.D. 1217-1236-7). By Edward Thomas, F.R.S.—The Legend of Dipaukara Buddha. Translated from the Chinese (and intended to illustrate Plates xxix. and t., 'Tree and Serpent Worship'). By S. Beal.—Note on Art. IX., ante pp. 213-274 on Hiouen-Thsing's Journey from Patna to Ballabhi. By James Fergusson, D.C.L., F.R.S.—Contributions towards a Glossary of the Assyrian Language. By H. F. Talbot.

Vol. VII., Part I., pp. 170 and 24, sewed. With a plate. 8s.

CONTENTS.—The *Upasampadâ-Kammârûcâ*, being the Buddhist Manual of the Form and Manner of Ordering of Priests and Deacons. The Pâli Text, with a Translation and Notes. By J. F. Dickson, B.A., sometime Student of Christ Church, Oxford, now of the Ceylon Civil Service.—Notes on the Megalithic Monuments of the Coimbatore District, Madras. By M. J. Wilhouse, late Madras C.S.—Notes on the Sinhalese Language. No. I. On the Formation of the Plural of Neuter Nouns. By R. C. Childers, late of the Ceylon Civil Service.—The Pali Text of the *Mahâparinibbâna Sutta* and Commentary, with a Translation. By R. C. Childers, late of the Ceylon Civil Service.—The *Brihat-Sanhita*; or, Complete System of Natural Astrology of Varâha-mihira. Translated from Sanskrit into English by Dr. H. Kern.—Note on the Valley of Choombi. By Dr. A. Campbell, late Superintendent of Darjeeling.—The Name of the Twelfth Imâm on the Coinage of Egypt. By H. Sauvage and Stanley Lane Poole.—Three Inscriptions of Parâkâama Bâhu the Great from Pulastipura, Ceylon (date circa 1180 A.D.). By T. W. Rhys Davids.—Of the Kharâj or Muhammedan Land Tax; its Application to British India, and Effect on the Tenure of Land. By N. B. E. Baillie.—Appendix: A Specimen of a Syriac Version of the *Kalilah wa-Dimmah*, with an English Translation. By W. Wright.

Vol. VII., Part II., pp. 191 to 394, sewed. With seven plates and a map. 8s.

CONTENTS.—Sigiri, the Lion Rock, near Pulastipura, Ceylon; and the Thirty-ninth Chapter of the *Mahâvâsîsa*. By T. W. Rhys Davids.—The Northern Frontagers of China. Part I. The Origines of the Mongols. By H. H. Howorth.—Inedited Arabic Coins. By Stanley Lane Poole.—Notice on the Dîmârs of the Abbasside Dynasty. By Edward Thomas Rogers.—The Northern Frontagers of China. Part II. The Origines of the Manchus. By H. H. Howorth.—Notes on the Old Mongolian Capital of Shangtu. By S. W. Bushell, B.Sc., M.D.—Oriental Proverbs in their Relations to Folklore, History, Sociology; with Suggestions for their Collection, Interpretation, Publication. By the Rev. J. Long.—Two Old Sinhalese Inscriptions. The *Sahasa Malla* Inscription, date 1200 A.D., and the *Ruwanwâli Dagaba* Inscription, date 1191 A.D. Text, Translation, and Notes. By T. W. Rhys Davids.—Notes on a Bactrian Pali Inscription and the Samvat Era. By Prof. J. Dowson.—Note on a Jade Drinking Vessel of the Emperor *ahangir*. By Edward Thomas, F.R.S.

Vol. VIII., Part I., pp. 156, sewed, with three plates and a plan. 8s.

CONTENTS.—Catalogue of Buddhist Sanskrit Manuscripts in the Possession of the Royal Asiatic Society (Hodgson Collection). By Professors E. B. Cowell and J. Eggeling.—On the Ruins of Sigiri in Ceylon. By T. H. Blakesley, Esq., Public Works Department, Ceylon.—The

Pātimokkha, being the Buddhist Office of the Confession of Priests. The Pali Text, with a Translation, and Notes. By J. F. Dickson, M.A., sometime Student of Christ Church, Oxford, now of the Ceylon Civil Service.—Notes on the Sinhalese Language. No. 2. Proofs of the Sanskritic Origin of Sinhalese. By R. C. Childers, late of the Ceylon Civil Service.

Vol. VIII., Part II., pp. 157-308, sewed. 8s.

CONTENTS.—An Account of the Island of Bali. By R. Friederich.—The Pali Text of the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta and Commentary, with a Translation. By R. C. Childers, late of the Ceylon Civil Service.—The Northern Frontiers of China. Part III. The Kara Khitai. By H. H. Howorth.—Inedited Arabic Coins. II. By Stanley Lane Poole.—On the Form of Government under the Native Sovereigns of Ceylon. By A. de Silva Ekanayaka, Mudaliyar of the Department of Public Instruction, Ceylon.

Vol. IX., Part I., pp. 156, sewed, with a plate. 8s.

CONTENTS.—Bactrian Coins and Indian Dates. By E. Thomas, F.R.S.—The Tenses of the Assyrian Verb. By the Rev. A. H. Sayce, M.A.—An Account of the Island of Bali. By R. Friederich (continued from Vol. VIII. n.s. p. 218).—On Ruins in Makran. By Major Mockler.—Inedited Arabic Coins. III. By Stanley Lane Poole,—Further Note on a Bactrian Pali Inscription and the Samvat Era. By Prof. J. Dowson.—Notes on Persian Beluchistan. From the Persian of Mirza Mehdy Khan. By A. H. Schindler.

Asiatic Society.—TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Complete in 3 vols. 4to., 80 Plates of Facsimiles, etc., cloth. London, 1827 to 1835. Published at £9 5s.; reduced to £5 5s.

The above contains contributions by Professor Wilson, G. C. Haughton, Davis, Morrison, Colebrooke, Humboldt, Dorn, Groteweld, and other eminent Oriental scholars.

Asiatic Society of Bengal.—JOURNAL OF THE ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL. Edited by the Honorary Secretaries. 8vo. 8 numbers per annum, 4s. each number.

Asiatic Society of Bengal.—PROCEEDINGS OF THE ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL. Published Monthly. 1s. each number.

Asiatic Society (Bombay Branch).—THE JOURNAL OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY. Edited by the Secretary. Nos. 1 to 33. 7s. 6d. each number.

Asiatic Society.—JOURNAL OF THE CEYLON BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY. 8vo. Published irregularly. 7s. 6d. each part.

Asiatic Society of Japan.—TRANSACTIONS OF THE ASIATIC SOCIETY OF JAPAN. Vol. I. From 30th October, 1872, to 9th October, 1873. 8vo. pp. 110, with plates. 1874. Vol. II. From 22nd October, 1873, to 15th July, 1874. 8vo. pp. 249. 1874. Vol. III. Part I. From 16th July, 1874, to December, 1874, 1875. Vol. III. Part II. From 13th January, 1875, to 30th June, 1875. Vol. IV. From 20th October, 1875, to 12th July, 1876. Each Part 7s. 6d.

Asiatic Society (North China Branch).—JOURNAL OF THE NORTH CHINA BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY. New Series. Parts 1 to 8. Each part 7s. 6d.

Aston.—A SHORT GRAMMAR OF THE JAPANESE SPOKEN LANGUAGE. By W. G. ASTON, M.A., Interpreter and Translator, H. B. M.^rs Legation, Yedo, Japan. Third edition. 12mo. cloth, pp. 96. 12s.

Atharva Veda Prātiçākhya.—See under WHITNEY.

Auctores Sanscriti. Edited for the Sanskrit Text Society, under the supervision of THEODOR GOLDSTÜCKER. Vol. I., containing the Jaiminiya-Nyāya-Mālā-Vistara. Parts I. to V., pp. 1 to 400, large 4to. sewed. 10s. each part.

Axon.—THE LITERATURE OF THE LANCASHIRE DIALECT. A Bibliographical Essay. By WILLIAM E. A. AXON, F.R.S.L. Fcap. 8vo. sewed. 1870. 1s.

Baba.—AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR OF THE JAPANESE LANGUAGE, with Easy Progressive Exercises. By TATUI BABA. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 92. 5s.

Bachmaier.—PASIGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY AND GRAMMAR. By ANTON BACHMAIER, President of the Central Pasigraphical Society at Munich. 18mo. cloth, pp. viii. ; 26 ; 160. 1870. 3s.

Bachmaier.—PASIGRAPHISCHES WÖRTERBUCH ZUM GEBRAUCHE FÜR DIE DEUTSCHE SPRACHE. Verfasst von ANTON BACHMAIER, Vorsitzendem des Central-Vereins für Pasigraphy in München. 18mo. cloth, pp. viii. ; 32 ; 128 ; 120. 1870. 2s. 6d

Bachmaier.—DICTIONNAIRE PASIGRAPHIQUE, PRÉCÉDÉ DE LA GRAMMAIRE. Redigé par ANTOINE BACHMAIER, Président de la Société Centrale de Pasigraphy à Munich. 18mo. cloth, pp. vi. 26 ; 168 ; 150. 1870. 2s. 6d.

Balfour.—WAIFS AND STRAYS FROM THE FAR EAST; being a Series of Disconnected Essays on Matters relating to China. By FREDERIC HENRY BALFOUR. 1 vol. demy 8vo. cloth, pp. 224. 10s. 6d.

Ballad Society's Publications.—Subscriptions—Small paper, one guinea, and large paper, three guineas, per annum.

1868.

1. **BALLADS AND POEMS FROM MANUSCRIPTS.** Vol. I. Part I. On the Condition of England in the Reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI. (including the state of the Clergy, Monks, and Friars), contains (besides a long Introduction) the following poems, etc.: Now a Dayes, ab. 1520 A.D.; Vox Populi Vox Dei, A.D. 1547-8; The Ruy'n' of a Ream'; The Image of Ypocresye, A.D. 1533; Against the Blaspheming English Lutherans and the Poisonous Dragon Luther; The Spoiling of the Abbeys; The Overthrowe of the Abbeys, a Tale of Robin Hoode; De Monasteriis Dirutis. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 8vo.

2. **BALLADS FROM MANUSCRIPTS.** Vol. II. Part I. The Poore Mans Pittance. By RICHARD WILLIAMS. Contayninge three severall subjects:—(1.) The firste, the fall and complayne of Anthонie Bahington, whoe, with others, weare executed for highe treason in the feildes nere lycolns Inne, in the yeare of our lorde—1586. (2.) The seconde contaynes the life and Deathe of Roberte, lorde Deverox, Earle of Essex: whoe was beheaded in the towre of london on ash-wensdaye mornynge, Anno—1601. (3.) The laste, Intituled “ acclamatio patrie,” contayninge the horrib[ly]e treason that weare pretended agaynst your Maiestie, to be donne on the parliament howse The seconde [third] yeare of your Maiestis Raygne [1605]. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 8vo. (*The Introductions, by Professor W. R. Morfill, M.A., of Oriel Coll., Oxford, and the Index, are published in No. 10.*)

1869.

3. **THE ROXBURGHE BALLADS.** Part I. With short Notes by W. CHAPPELL, Esq., F.S.A., author of “Popular Music of the 'Olden Time,'” etc., etc., and with copies of the Original Woodcuts, drawn by Mr. RUDOLPH BLIND and Mr. W. H. HOOPER, and engraved by Mr. J. H. RIMBAULT and Mr. HOOPER. 8vo.

1870.

4. **THE ROXBURGHE BALLADS.** Vol. I. Part II.

1871.

5. **THE ROXBURGHE BALLADS.** Vol. I. Part III. With an Introduction and short Notes by W. CHAPPELL, Esq., F.S.A.

- 6. CAPTAIN COX, HIS BALLADS AND BOOKS; or, ROBERT LANEHAM'S Letter:** Whearin part of the entertainment unto the Queenz Majesty at Killingworth Castl, in Warwik Sheer in this Soomerz Progress, 1575, is signified; from a freend Officer attendant in the Court, unto his freend, a Citizen and Merchant of London. Re-edited, with accounts of all Captain Cox's accessible Books, and a comparison of them with those in the COMPLAYNT OF SCOTLAND, 1548-9 A.D. By F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 8vo.

1872.

- 7. BALLADS FROM MANUSCRIPTS.** Vol. I. Part II. Ballads on Wolsey, Anne Boleyn, Somerset, and Lady Jane Grey; with Wynkyn de Worde's Treatise of a Galaunt (A.R. 1520 A.D.). Edited by FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A. With Forewords to the Volume, Notes, and an Index. 8vo.

- 8. THE ROXBURGHE BALLADS.** Vol. II. Part I.

1873.

- 9. THE ROXBURGHE BALLADS.** Vol. II. Part II.

- 10. BALLADS FROM MANUSCRIPTS.** Vol. II. Part II. Containing Ballads on Queen Elizabeth, Essex, Campion, Drake, Raleigh, Frobisher, Warwick, and Bacon, "the Candlewick Ballads," Poems from the Jackson MS., etc. Edited by W. R. MORFILL, Esq., M.A., with an Introduction to No. 3.

1874.

- 11. LOVE-POEMS AND HUMOUROUS ONES,** written at the end of a volume of small printed books, A.D. 1614-1619, in the British Museum, labell'd "Various Poems," and markt ^{C. 80 a.} ₁₋₅. Put forth by FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL.

- 12. THE ROXBURGHE BALLADS.** Vol. II. Part III.

1875.

- 13. THE ROXBURGHE BALLADS.** Vol. III. Part I.

1876.

- 14. THE BAGFORD BALLADS.** Edited with Introduction and Notes, by JOSEPH WOODFALL EBSWORTH, M.A., Camb., Editor of the Reprinted "Drolleries" of the Restoration." Part I.

Ballantyne.—ELEMENTS OF HINDI AND BRAJ BHÁKÁ GRAMMAR. By the late JAMES R. BALLANTYNE, LL.D. Second edition, revised and corrected: Crown 8vo, pp. 44, cloth. 5s.

Ballantyne.—FIRST LESSONS IN SANSKRIT GRAMMAR; together with an Introduction to the Hitopadésa. Second edition. Second Impression. By JAMES R. BALLANTYNE, LL.D., Librarian of the India Office. 8vo. pp. viii. and 110, cloth. 1873. 3s. 6d.

Banerjea.—THE ARIAN WITNESS, or the Testimony of Arian Scriptures in corroboration of Biblical History and the Rudiments of Christian Doctrine. Including Dissertations on the Original Home and Early Adventures of Indo-Arians. By the Rev. K. M. BANERJEA. 8vo. sewed, pp. xviii. and 236. 8s. 6d.

Bate.—A DICTIONARY OF THE HINDEE LANGUAGE. Compiled by J. D. BATE. 8vo. cloth, pp. 806. £2 12s. 6d.

Beal.—TRAVELS OF FAH HIAN AND SUNG-YUN, Buddhist Pilgrims from China to India (400 A.D. and 518 A.D.) Translated from the Chinese, by S. BEAL (B.A. Trinity College, Cambridge), a Chaplain in Her Majesty's

Fleet, a Member of the Royal Asiatic Society, and Author of a Translation of the *Pratimôksha* and the *Amithûba Sûtra* from the Chinese. Crown 8vo. pp. lxxiii. and 210, cloth, ornamental, with a coloured map. 10s. 6d.

Beal.—A CATENA OF BUDDHIST SCRIPTURES FROM THE CHINESE. By S. BEAL, B.A., Trinity College, Cambridge; a Chaplain in Her Majesty's Fleet, etc. 8vo. cloth, pp. xiv. and 436. 1871. 15s.

Beal.—THE ROMANTIC LEGEND OF SÂKHYA BUDDHA. From the Chinese-Sanskrit by the Rev. SAMUEL BEAL, Author of "Buddhist Pilgrims," etc. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. 400. 1875. 12s.

Beal.—THE BUDDHIST TRIPITAKA, as it is known in China and Japan. A Catalogue and Compendious Report. By SAMUEL BEAL, B.A. Folio, sewed, pp. 117. 7s. 6d.

Beames.—OUTLINES OF INDIAN PHILOLOGY. With a Map, showing the Distribution of the Indian Languages. By JOHN BEAMES. Second enlarged and revised edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 96. 5s.

Beames.—NOTES ON THE BHOPURÍ DIALECT OF HINDÍ, spoken in Western Behar. By JOHN BEAMES, Esq., B.C.S., Magistrate of Chumparun. 8vo. pp. 26, sewed. 1868. 1s. 6d.

Beames.—A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE MODERN ARYAN LANGUAGES OF INDIA (to wit), Hindi, Panjabi, Sindhi, Gujarati, Marathi, Uriya, and Bengali. By JOHN BEAMES, Bengal C.S., M.R.A.S., &c.

Vol. I. On Sounds. 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi and 360. 16s.

Vol. II. The Noun and the Pronoun. 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 348. 16s.

Bede.—VENERABILIS BEDÆ HISTORIA ECCLESIASTICA GENTIS ANGLORUM. Ad Fidem Codd. MSS. recensuit JOSEPHUS STEVENSON. With plan of the English Historical Society, by the late John Miller. 8v. pp. xxxv., xxi. and 424, and 2 facsimiles. 7s. 6d.

The same, in royal 8vo., uniform with the publications of the Master of the Rolls. 10s. 6d.

Bellairs.—A GRAMMAR OF THE MARATHI LANGUAGE. By H. S. K. BELLAIRS, M.A., and LAXMAN Y. ASHKEDEKAR, B.A. 12mo. cloth, pp. 90. 5s.

Bellew.—A DICTIONARY OF THE PUKKHTO, OR PUKSHTO LANGUAGE, on a New and Improved System. With a reversed Part, or English and Pukkhto, By H. W. BELLEW, Assistant Surgeon, Bengal Army. Super Royal 8vo. pp. xii. and 356, cloth. 42s.

Bellew.—A GRAMMAR OF THE PUKKHTO OR PUKSHTO LANGUAGE, on a New and Improved System. Combining Brevity with Utility, and Illustrated by Exercises and Dialogues. By H. W. BELLEW, Assistant Surgeon, Bengal Army. Super-royal 8vo., pp. xii. and 156, cloth. 21s.

Bellew.—FROM THE INDUS TO THE TIGRIS: a Narrative of a Journey through the Countries of Balochistan, Afghanistan, Khorassan, and Iran, in 1872; together with a Synoptical Grammar and Vocabulary of the Braheo Language, and a Record of the Meteorological Observations and Altitudes on the March from the Indus to the Tigris. By H. W. BELLEW, C.S.I., Surgeon Bengal Staff Corps, Author of "A Journal of a Mission to Afghanistan in 1857-58," and "A Grammar and Dictionary of the Pukkhto Language." Demy 8vo. cloth. 14s.

Bellew.—KASHMIR AND KASHGHAR. A Narrative of the Journey of the Embassy to Kashghar in 1873-74. By H. W. BELLEW, C.S.I. Demy 8vo. cl. pp. xxxii. and 420. 16s.

Bellows.—ENGLISH OUTLINE VOCABULARY, for the use of Students of the Chinese, Japarese, and other Languages, Arranged by JOHN BELLows. With Notes on the writing of Chinese with Roman Letters. By Professor SUMMERS, King's College, London. Crown 8vo., pp. 6 and 368, cloth. 6s.

Bellows.—**OUTLINE DICTIONARY, FOR THE USE OF MISSIONARIES, Explorers, and Students of Language.** By MAX MÜLLER, M.A., Taylorian Professor in the University of Oxford. With an Introduction on the proper use of the ordinary English Alphabet in transcribing Foreign Languages. The Vocabulary compiled by JOHN BELLows. Crown 8vo. Limp morocco, pp. xxxi. and 368. 7s. 6d.

Bellows.—**DICTIONARY FOR THE POCKET, French and English, English and French.** Both Divisions on same page. By JOHN BELLows. Masculine and Feminine Words shown by Distinguishing Types. Conjugations of all the Verbs; Liaison marked in French Part, and Hints to aid Pronunciation. Together with Tables and Maps. Revised by ALEXANDRE BELJAME, M.A., and Fellow of the University, Paris. Second Edition. 32mo. roan, with tuck, gilt edges. 10s. 6d. Morocco, 12s. 6d.

Benfey.—**A GRAMMAR OF THE LANGUAGE OF THE VEDAS.** By Dr. THEODOR BENFEY. In 1 vol. 8vo., of about 650 pages. [In preparation.]

Benfey.—**A PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF THE SANSKRIT LANGUAGE, for the use of Early Students.** By THEODOR BENFEY, Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Göttingen. Second, revised and enlarged, edition. Royal 8vo. pp. viii. and 296, cloth. 10s. 6d.

Benfey.—**VEDICA UND VERWANDTES.** Von THEODOR BENFEY. Cr. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Beschli.—**CLAVIS HUMANIORUM LITTERARUM SUBLIMIORIS TAMILICI IDIOMATIS.** Auctore R. P. CONSTANTIO JOSEPHO BENCHIO, Soc. Jesu, in Madurensi Regno Missionario. Edited by the Rev. K. IHLEFELD, and printed for A. Burnell, Esq., Tranquebar. 8vo. sewed, pp. 171. 10s. 6d.

Beveridge.—**THE DISTRICT OF BAKARGANJ;** its History and Statistics. By H. BEVERIDGE, B.C.S. 8vo. cloth, pp. xx. and 460. 21s.

Bhagavat-Geeta.—See under WILKINS.

Bibliotheca Indica. A Collection of Oriental Works published by the Asiatic Society of Bengal. Old Series. Fasc. 1 to 235. New Series. Fasc. 1 to 362. (Special List of Contents to be had on application.) Each Fsc in 8vo., 2s.; in 4to., 4s.

Bibliotheca Sanskrita.—See TRÜBNER.

Bickell.—**OUTLINES OF HEBREW GRAMMAR.** By GUSTAVUS BICKELL, D.D. Revised by the Author; Annotated by the Translator, SAMUEL IVES CURTISS, junior, Ph.D. With a Lithographic Table of Semitic Characters by Dr. J. EUTING. Cr. 8vo. sd., pp. xiv. and 140. 1877. 3s. 6d.

Bigandet.—**THE LIFE OR LEGEND OF GAUDAMA,** the Buddha of the Burmese, with Annotations. The ways to Neibban, and Notice on the Phongies, or Burmese Monks. By the Right Reverend P. BIGANDET, Bishop of Ramatha, Vicar Apostolic of Ava and Pegu. 8vo. pp. xi., 538, and v. £1 11s. 6d.

Birch.—**FASTI MONASTICI AEVI SAXONICI:** or, an Alphabetical List of the Heads of Religious Houses in England, previous to the Norman Conquest, to which is prefixed a Chronological Catalogue of Contemporary Foundations. By W. DE GREY BIRCH. 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 114. 3s.

Bleek.—**A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SOUTH AFRICAN LANGUAGES.** By W. H. I. BLEEK, Ph.D. Volume I. I. Phonology. II. The Concord. Section 1. The Noun. 8vo. pp. xxxvi. and 322, cloth. £1 16s.

Bleek.—**A BRIEF ACCOUNT OF BUSHMAN FOLK LORE AND OTHER TEXTS.** By W. H. I. BLEEK, Ph.D., etc., etc. Folio sd., pp. 21. 1875. 2s. 6d.

Bleek.—**REYNARD IN SOUTH AFRICA;** or, Hottentot Fables. Translated from the Original Manuscript in Sir George Grey's Library. By Dr. W. H. I. BLEEK, Librarian to the Grey Library, Cape Town, Cape of Good Hope. In one volume, small 8vo., pp. xxxi. and 94, cloth. 3s. 6d.

Blochmann.—THE PROSODY OF THE PERSIANS, according to Saifi, Jami, and other Writers. By H. BLOCHMANN, M.A. Assistant Professor, Calcutta Madrasah. 8vo. sewed, pp. 166. 10s. 6d.

Blochmann.—SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA AND BRITISH BURMAH. By H. BLOCHMANN, M.A. 12mo. pp. vi. and 100. 2s. 6d.

Blochmann.—A TREATISE ON THE RUBA'I entitled Risalah i Tarana. By AGHA AHMAD 'ALI. With an Introduction and Explanatory Notes, by H. BLOCHMANN, M.A. 8vo. sewed, pp. 11 and 17. 2s. 6d.

Blochmann.—THE PERSIAN METRES BY SAIFI, and a Treatise on Persian Rhyme by Jami. Edited in Persian, by H. BLOCHMANN, M.A. 8vo. sewed, pp. 62. 3s. 6d.

Bombay Sanskrit Series. Edited under the superintendence of G. BÜHLER, Ph. D., Professor of Oriental Languages, Elphinstone College, and F. KIELHORN, Ph. D., Superintendent of Sanskrit Studies, Deccan College. 1868-70.

1. PANCHATANTRA IV. AND V. Edited, with Notes, by G. BÜHLER, Ph. D. Pp. 84, 16. 6s.
2. NÁGOJÍBHÁTTA'S PARIBHÁSHENDUŠEKHARA. Edited and explained by F. KIELHORN, Ph. D. Part I., the Sanskrit Text and Various Readings. pp. 116. 10s. 6d.
3. PANCHATANTRA II. AND III. Edited, with Notes, by G. BÜHLER, Ph. D. Pp. 86, 14, 2. 7s. 6d.
4. PANCHATANTRA I. Edited, with Notes, by F. KIELHORN, Ph.D. Pp. 114, 53. 7s. 6d.
5. KÁLIDÁSA'S RAGHUVAMŚA. With the Commentary of Mallinátha. Edited, with Notes, by SHANKAR P. PĀNDIT, M.A. Part I. Cantos I.—VI. 10s. 6d.
6. KÁLIDÁSA'S MÁLAVIKÁGNIMITRA. Edited, with Notes, by SHANKAR P. PĀNDIT, M.A. 10s. 6d.
7. NÁGOJÍBHÁTTA'S PARIBHÁSHENDUŠEKHARA Edited and explained by F. KIELHORN, Ph.D. Part II. Translation and Notes. (Paribháshás, i.—xxxvii.) pp. 184. 10s. 6d.
8. KÁLIDÁSA'S RAGHUVAMŚA. With the Commentary of Mallinátha. Edited, with Notes, by SHANKAR P. PĀNDIT, M.A. Part II. Cantos VII.—XIII. 10s. 6d.
9. NÁGOJÍBHÁTTA'S PARIBHÁSHENDUŠEKHARA. Edited and explained by F. KIELHORN. Part II Translation and Notes. (Paribháshás xxviii.—lxix.) 7s. 6d.
10. DANDIN'S DASAKUMARACHARITA. Edited with critical and explanatory Notes by G. Bühlér. Part I. 7s. 6d.
11. BHARTIHARI'S NITISATAKA AND VAIRAGYASATAKA, with Extracts from Two Sanskrit Commentaries. Edited, with Notes, by KASINATH T. TELANG. 9s.
12. NAGOJIBHATTA'S PARIBHÁSHENDUSEKHKARA. Edited and explained by F. KIELHORN. Part II. Translation and Notes. (Paribháshás lxx.—cxi.) 7s. 6d.
13. KAŚIDASA'S RAGHUVAMŚA, with the Commentary of Mallinátha. Edited, with Notes, by SHANKAR P. PĀNDIT. Part III. Cantos XIV.—XIX. 10s. 6d.
14. VIKRAMÁNKADEVACHARITA. Edited, with an Introduction, by G. BÜHLER. 7s. 6d.
15. BHAVABHÚTI'S MÁLATÍ-MÁDHAVA. With the Commentary of Jagaddhara, edited by RAMKRISHNA GOPAL BHANDARKAR. 14s.

- Bottrell.**—**TRADITIONS AND HEARTHSIDE STORIES OF WEST CORNWALL.** By W. BOTTRELL (an old Celt). Demy 12mo. pp. vi. 292, cloth. 1870. Scarce.
- Bottrell.**—**TRADITIONS AND HEARTHSIDE STORIES OF WEST CORNWALL.** By WILLIAM BOTTRELL. With Illustrations by Mr. JOSEPH BLIGHT. Second Series. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. iv. and 300. 6s.
- Bowditch.**—**SUFFOLK SURNAMES.** By N. I. BOWDITCH. Third Edition, 8vo. pp. xxvi. and 758, cloth. 7s. 6d.
- Bretschneider.**—**ON THE KNOWLEDGE POSSESSED BY THE ANCIENT CHINESE OF THE ARABS AND ARABIAN COLONIES, and other Western Countries mentioned in Chinese Books.** By E. BRETSCHNEIDER, M.D., Physician of the Russian Legation at Peking. 8vo. pp. 28, sewed. 1871. 1s.
- Bretschneider.**—**NOTES ON CHINESE MEDIAEVAL TRAVELLERS TO THE WEST.** By E. BRETSCHNEIDER, M.D. Demy 8vo. sd., pp. 130. 5s.
- Bretschneider.**—**ARCHAEOLOGICAL AND HISTORICAL RESEARCHES ON BEIJING AND ITS ENVIRONS.** By E. BRETSCHNEIDER, M.D., Physician to the Russian Legation at Peking. Imp. 8vo. sewed, pp. 64, with 4 Maps. 5s.
- Bretschneider.**—**NOTICES OF THE MEDIAEVAL GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF CENTRAL AND WESTERN ASIA.** Drawn from Chinese and Mongol Writings, and Compared with the Observations of Western Authors in the Middle Ages. By E. BRETSCHNEIDER, M.D. 8vo. sewed, pp. 233, with two Maps. 12s. 6d.
- Brhat-Sanhita (The).**—See under **Kern.**
- Brinton.**—**THE MYTHS OF THE NEW WORLD** A Treatise on the Symbolism and Mythology of the Red Race of America. By DANIEL G. BRINTON, A.M., M.D. Second Edition, revised. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 331. 12s. 6d.
- British Museum.**—**CATALOGUE OF SANSKRIT AND PALI BOOKS** in the British Museum. By DR. ERNST HAAS. Printed by permission of the Trustees of the British Museum. 4to pp. viii. and 188, boards. £1 1s.
- British Archaeological Association (Journal of The).** Volumes 1 to 31, 1844 to 1876, £1 11s. 6d. each. General Index to vols. 1 to 30. 8vo. cloth. 15s. Parts Quarterly, 8s. each.
- Brockie.**—**INDIAN PHILOSOPHY.** Introductory Paper. By WILLIAM BROCKIE, Author of "A Day in the Land of Scott," etc., etc. 8vo. pp. 26, sewed. 1872. 6d.
- Bronson.**—**A DICTIONARY IN ASSAMESE AND ENGLISH.** Compiled by M. BRONSON, American Baptist Missionary. 8vo. calf, pp. viii. and 609. £2 2s.
- Brown.**—**THE DERVISHES; or, ORIENTAL SPIRITUALISM.** By JOHN P. BROWN, Secretary and Dragoman of the Legation of the United States of America at Constantinople. With twenty-four Illustrations. 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 415. 14s.
- Brown.**—**SANSKRIT PROSODY AND NUMERICAL SYMBOLS EXPLAINED.** By CHARLES PHILIP BROWN, Author of the Telugu Dictionary, Grammar, etc., Professor of Telugu in the University of London. Demy 8vo. pp. 64, cloth. 3s. 6d.
- Buddhaghosha's Parables:** translated from Burmese by Captain H. T. ROGERS, R.E. With an Introduction containing Buddha's Dhammapadam, or, Path of Virtue; translated from Pali by F. MAX MÜLLER. 8vo. pp. 378, cloth. 12s. 6d.
- Burgess.**—**ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF WESTERN INDIA.** Report of the First Season's Operations in the Belgum and Kaladgi Districts. Jan. to May, 1874. By JAMES BURGESS. With 56 photographs and lith. plates. Royal 4to. pp. viii. and 45. £2 2s.
- Burgess.**—**ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF WESTERN INDIA.** Report of the Second Season's Operations. Report on the Antiquities of Kâthiâwâd and Kachh. 1874-5. By JAMES BURGESS, F.R.G.S., M.R.A.S., etc. With Map, Inscriptions, Photographs, etc. Roy. 4to, half bound, pp. x. and 242. £3 3s.

Burnell.—CATALOGUE OF A COLLECTION OF SANSKRIT MANUSCRIPTS. By A. C. BURNELL, M.R.A.S., Madras Civil Service. PART 1. *Vedic Manuscripts.* Fcap. 8vo. pp. 64, sewed. 1870. 2s.

Burnell.—THE SĀMAVIDHĀNABRĀHMĀNA (being the Third Brāhmaṇa) of the Sāma Veda. Edited, together with the Commentary of Sāyaṇa, an English Translation, Introduction, and Index of Words, by A. C. BURNELL. Volume I.—Text and Commentary, with Introduction. 8vo. pp. xxxviii. and 104. 12s. 6d.

Burnell.—THE ARSHEYABRAHMANA (being the fourth Brāhmaṇa) OF THE SĀMA VEDA. The Sanskrit Text. Edited, together with Extracts from the Commentary of Sayana, etc. An Introduction and Index of Words. By A. C. BURNELL, Ph.D. 8vo, pp. 51 and 109. 10s. 6d.

Burnell.—THE DEVATĀDHYĀYĀBRĀHMĀNA (being the Fifth Brāhmaṇa) of the Sama Veda. The Sanskrit Text edited, with the Commentary of Sāyaṇa, an Index of Words, etc., by A. C. BURNELL, M.R.A.S. 8vo. and Trans., pp. 34. 5s.

Burnell.—THE VAMÇABRĀHMĀNA (being the Eighth Brāhmaṇa) of the Sāma Veda. Edited, together with the Commentary of Sāyaṇa, a Preface and Index of Words, by A. C. BURNELL, M.R.A.S., etc. 8vo. sewed, pp. xliii., 12, and xii., with 2 coloured plates. 10s. 6d.

Burnell.—ON THE AINDRA SCHOOL OF SANSKRIT GRAMMARIANS. Their Place in the Sanskrit and Subordinate Literatures. By A. C. BURNELL. 8vo. pp. 120. 10s. 6d.

Burnell.—DAYADAÇÇOKI. TEN SLOKAS IN SANSKRIT, with English Translation. By A. C. BURNELL. 8vo. pp. 11. 2s.

Burnell.—ELEMENTS OF SOUTH-INDIAN PALÆOGRAPHY, from the 4th to the 17th century A.D. By A. C. BURNELL. 4to. boards, pp. 98. With 30 plates. Second edition (in preparation).

Buttmann.—A GRAMMAR OF THE NEW TESTAMENT GREEK. By A. BUTTMANN. Authorized translation by Prof J. H. Thayer, with numerous additions and corrections by the author. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xx. and 474. 1873. 14s.

Butrus Al Bustâny. كتاب وائرة المعارف—An Arabic Encyclopædia of Universal Knowledge, by BUTRUS AL BUSTÂNY. The celebrated compiler of Mohît ul Mehit (محیط المحتاط) and Katr el Mohît (قطر المحتاط). This work will be completed in from 12 to 15 vols. Small folio, cloth, vol. i. pp. 800. £1 11s. 6d.

Calcutta Review.—THE CALCUTTA REVIEW. Published Quarterly. Price 8s. 6d. per number.

Caldwell.—A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE DRAVIDIAN, OR SOUTH-INDIAN FAMILY OF LANGUAGES. By the Rev. R. CALDWELL, LL.D. A Second, corrected, and enlarged Edition. Demy 8vo. pp. 805. 1875. 28s.

Callaway.—IZINGANEKWANE, NENSUMANSUMANE, NEZINDABA, ZABANTU (Nursery Tales, Traditions, and Histories of the Zulus). In their own words, with a Translation into English, and Notes. By the Rev. HENRY CALLAWAY, M.D. Volume I., 8vo. pp. xiv. and 378, cloth. Natal, 1866 and 1867. 16s.

Callaway.—THE RELIGIOUS SYSTEM OF THE AMAZULU.

Part I.—Unkulunkulu; or, the Tradition of Creation as existing among the Amazulu and other Tribes of South Africa, in their own words, with a translation into English, and Notes. By the Rev. CANÓN CALLAWAY, M.D. 8vo. pp. 128, sewed. 1868. 4s.

Part II.—Agnatongo ; or, Ancestor Worship, as existing among the Amazulu, in their own words, with a translation into English, and Notes. By the Rev. CANON CALLAWAY, M.D. 1869. 8vo. pp. 127, sewed. 1869. 4s.

Part III.—Izinyanga Zokubula ; or, Divination, as existing among the Amazulu, in their own words. With a Translation into English, and Notes. By the Rev. Canon CALLAWAY, M.D. 8vo. pp. 150, sewed. 1870. 4s.

Part IV.—Abatakati, or Medical Magic and Witchcraft. 8vo. pp. 40, sewed. 1s. 6d.

Calligaris.—LE COMPAGNON DE TOUS, OU DICTIONNAIRE POLYGLOTTE.
Par le Colonel LOUIS CALLIGARIS, Grand Officier, etc. (French—Latin—Italian—Spanish—Portuguese—German—English—Modern Greek—Arabic—Turkish.) 2 vols. 4to, pp. 1157 and 746. Turin. £4 4s.

Campbell.—SPECIMENS OF THE LANGUAGES OF INDIA, including Tribes of Bengal, the Central Provinces, and the Eastern Frontier. By Sir G. CAMPBELL, M.P. Folio, paper, pp. 308. 1874. £1 11s. 6d.

Carpenter.—THE LAST DAYS IN ENGLAND OF THE RAJAH RAMMOHUN ROY. By MARY CARPENTER, of Bristol. With Five Illustrations. 8vo. pp. 272, cloth. 7s. 6d.

Carr.—అంధ్రాస్తవందిక : A COLLECTION OF TELUGU PROVERBS,
Translated, Illustrated, and Explained; together with some Sanscrit Proverbs printed in the Devnâgarî and Telugu Characters. By Captain M. W. (A.R.) Madras Staff Corps. One Vol. and Supplmnt, royal 8vo. pp. 488 and 148. 31s. 6d

Catlin.—O-KEE-PA. A Religious Ceremony of the Mandans. By GEORGE CATLIN. With 13 Coloured Illustrations. 4to pp. 60, bound in cloth, gilt edges. 14s.

Chalmers.—THE ORIGIN OF THE CHINESE; an Attempt to Trace the connection of the Chinese with Western Nations in their Religion, Superstitions, Arts, Language, and Traditions. By JOHN CHALMERS, A.M. Foolscap 8vo. cloth, pp. 78. 5s.

Chalmers.—THE SPECULATIONS ON METAPHYSICS, POLITY, AND MORALITY of "The OLD PHILOSOPHER" LAU TSZE. Translated from the Chinese, with an Introduction by John Chalmers, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, xx. and 62. 4s. 6d.

Charnock.—LUDUS PATRONYMICUS ; or, the Etymology of Curious Surnames. By RICHARD STEPHEN CHARNOCK, Ph.D., F.S.A., F.R.G.S. Crown 8vo.. pp. 182, cloth. 7s. 6d.

Charnock.—VERBA NOMINALIA ; or Words derived from Proper Names. By RICHARD STEPHEN CHARNOCK, Ph. Dr. F.S.A., etc. 8vo. pp. 326, cloth. 14s.

Charnock.—THE PEOPLES OF TRANSYLVANIA. Founded on a Paper read before THE ANTHROPOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF LONDON, on the 4th of May, 1869. By RICHARD STEPHEN CHARNOCK, Ph.D., F.S.A., F.R.G.S. Demy 8vo. pp. 36, sewed. 1870. 2s. 6d.

Chaucer Society's Publications. Subscription, two guineas per annum.

1868. *First Series.*

CANTERBURY TALES. Part I.

I. The Prologue and Knight's Tale, in 6 parallel Texts (from the 6 MSS. named below), together with Tables, showing the Groups of the Tales, and their varying order in 38 MSS. of the Tales, and in the old printed editions, and also Specimens from several MSS. of the "Moveable Prologues" of the Canterbury Tales.—The Shipman's Prologue, and Franklin's Prologue,—when moved from their right places, and of the substitutes for them.

Chaucer Society's Publications—continued.

- II. The Prologue and Knight's Tale from the Ellesmere MS.
 III. " " " " " Hengwrt " 154.
 IV. " " " " " Cambridge " Gg. 4. 27.
 V. " " " " " Corpus " Oxford.
 VI. " " " " " Petworth "
 VII. " " " " " Lansdowne " 851.
 Nos. II. to VII. are separate Texts of the 6-Text edition of the Canterbury Tales, Part I.

1868. Second Series.

1. ON EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, containing an investigation of the Correspondence of Writing with Speech in England, from the Anglo-Saxon period to the present day, preceded by a systematic notation of all spoken sounds, by means of the ordinary printing types. Including a re-arrangement of Prof. F. J. Child's Memoirs on the Language of Chaucer and Gower, and Reprints of the Rare Tracts by Salesbury on English, 1547, and Welsh, 1567, and by Barcley on French, 1521. By ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, F.R.S., etc., etc. Part I. On the Pronunciation of the xvith, xvith, and xviiith centuries.
2. ESSAYS ON CHAUCER; His Words and Works. Part I. 1. Ebert's Review of Sandras's *E'tude sur Chaucer, considérée comme l'Initiateur des Trouvères*, translated by J. W. Van Rees Hoets, M.A., Trinity Hall, Cambridge, and revised by the Author.—II. A Thirteenth Century Latin Treatise on the *Chilindre*: "For by my chilindre it is prime of day" (*Shipmannes Tale*). Edited, with a Translation, by Mr. EDMUND BROCK, and illustrated by a Woodcut of the Instrument from the Ashmole MS. 1522.
3. A TEMPORARY PREFACE to the Six-Text Edition of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales. Part I. Attempting to show the true order of the Tales, and the Days and Stages of the Pilgrimage, etc., etc. By F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., Trinity Hall, Cambridge.

1869. First Series.

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| VIII. The Miller's, Reeve's, Cook's, and Gamelyn's Tales: | Ellesmere MS. |
| IX. " " " " | Hengwrt " |
| X. " " " " | Cambridge " |
| XI. " " " " | Corpus " |
| XII. " " " " | Petworth " |
| XIII. " " " " | Lansdowne " |

These are separate issues of the 6-Text Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, Part II.

1869. Second Series.

4. ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer. By ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, F.R.S. Part II.

1870. First Series.

- XIV. CANTERBURY TALES. Part II. The Miller's, Reeve's, and Cook's Tales, with an Appendix of the Spurious Tale of Gamelyn, in Six parallel Texts.

1870. Second Series.

5. ON EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer. By A. J. ELLIS, F.R.S., F.S.A. Part III. Illustrations on the Pronunciation of xvith and xvith Centuries. Chaucer, Gower, Wycliffe, Spenser, Shakspere, Salesbury, Barcley, Hart, Bullokar, Gill. Pronouncing Vocabulary.

Chaucer Society's Publications—continued.

1871. First Series.

- XV. The Man of Law's, Shipman's, and Prioress's Tales, with Chaucer's own Tale of Sir Thopas, in 6 parallel Texts from the MSS. above named, and 10 coloured drawings of Tellers of Tales, after the originals in the Ellesmere MS.
- XVI. The Man of Law's Tale, &c., &c.: Ellesmere MS.
- XVII. " " " Cambridge ,,
- XVIII. " " " Corpus ,,"
- XIX. The Shipman's, Prioress's, and Man of Law's Tales, from the Petworth MS.
- XX. The Man of Law's Tales, from the Lansdowne MS. (each with woodcuts of fourteen drawings of Tellers of Tales in the Ellesmere MS.).
- XXI. A Parallel-Text edition of Chaucer's Minor Poems, Part I.:—'The Deth of Blanche the Duchesse,' from Thynne's ed. of 1532, the Fairfax MS. 16, and Tanner MS. 346; 'the compleynt to Pite,' 'the Parlament of Foules,' and 'the Compleynt of Mars,' each from six MSS.
- XXII. Supplementary Parallel-Texts of Chaucer's Minor Poems, Part I., containing 'The Parlament of Foules,' from three MSS.
- XXIII. Odd Texts of Chaucer's Minor Poems, Part I., containing 1. two MS. fragments of 'The Parlament of Foules'; 2. the two differing versions of 'The Prologue to the Legende of Good Women,' arranged so as to show their differences; 3. an Appendix of Poems attributed to Chaucer, i. 'The Balade of Pitee by Chauciers'; ii. 'The Cronycle made by Chaucer,' both from MSS. written by Shirley, Chaucer's contemporary.
- XXIV. A One-Text Print of Chaucer's Minor Poems, being the best Text from the Parallel-Text Edition, Part I., containing: 1. The Deth of Blanche the Duchesse; 2. The Compleynt to Pite; 3. The Parlament of Foules; 4. The Compleynt of Mars; 5. The A B C, with its original from De Guileville's *Pèlerinage de la Vie humaine* (edited from the best Paris MSS. by M. Paul Meyer).

1871. Second Series.

6. TRIAL FORE-WORDS to my Parallel-Text edition of Chaucer's Minor Poems for the Chaucer Society (with a try to set Chaucer's Works in their right order of Time). By FREDK. J. FURNIVALL. Part I. (This Part brings out, for the first time, Chaucer's long early but hopeless love.)

1872. First Series.

- XXV. Chaucer's Tale of Melibé, the Monk's, Nun's Priest's, Doctor's, Pardoner's, Wife of Bath's, Friar's, and Summoner's Tales, in 6 parallel Texts from the MSS. above named, and with the remaining 13 coloured drawings of Tellers of Tales, after the originals in the Ellesmere MS.
- XXVI. The Wife's, Friar's, and Summoner's Tales, from the Ellesmere MS., with 9 woodcuts of Tale-Tellers. (Part IV.)
- XXVII. The Wife's, Friar's, Summoner's, Monk's, and Nun's Priest's Tales, from the Hengwrt MS., with 23 woodcuts of the Tellers of the Tales. (Part III.)
- XXVIII. The Wife's, Friar's, and Summoner's Tales, from the Cambridge MS., with 9 woodcuts of Tale-Tellers. (Part IV.)
- XXIX. A Treatise on the Astrolabe; otherwise called Bred and Mylk for Children, addressed to his Son Lowys by Geoffrey Chaucer. Edited by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.

1872. Second Series.

- ORIGINALS AND ANALOGUES of some of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales. Part 1. 1. The original of the Man of Law's Tale of Constance, from the French Chronicle of Nicholas Trivet, Arundel MS. 56, ab. 1340 A.D., collated with the later copy, ab. 1400, in the National Library at Stockholm; copied and

Chaucer Society's Publications—continued.

edited with a translation, by Mr. EDMUND BROCK. 2. The Tale of "Merelaus the Emperor," from the Early-English version of the *Gesta Romanorum* in Harl. MS. 7333; and 3. Part of Matthew Paris's *Vita Officæ Primi*, both stories, illustrating incidents in the Man of Law's Tale. 4. Two French Fabliaux like the Reeve's Tale. 5. Two Latin Stories like the Friar's Tale.

1873. First Series.

XXX. The Six-Text Canterbury Tales, Part V., containing the Clerk's and Merchant's Tales.

1873. Second Series.

- 8.** Albertano of Brescia's *Liber Consilii et Consolationis*, A.D. 1246 (the Latin source of the French original of Chaucer's *Melibe*), edited from the MSS. by Dr. THOR SUNDBY.

1874. First Series.

XXXI. The Six-Text, Part VI., containing the Squire's and Franklin's Tales. **XXXII.** to **XXXVI.** Large Parts of the separate issues of the Six MSS.

1874. Second Series.

- 9.** Essays on Chaucer, his Words and Works, Part II.: 3. John of Hoveden's *Practica Chilindri*, edited from the MS. with a translation, by Mr. E. BROCK. 4. Chaucer's use of the final -e, by JOSEPH PAYNE, Esq. 5. Mrs. E. Barrett-Browning on Chaucer: being those parts of her review of the *Book of the Poets*, 1842, which relate to him; here reprinted by leave of Mr. Robert Browning. 6. Professor Bernhard Ten-Brink's critical edition of Chaucer's *Compleynte to Pite*.

1875. First Series.

XXXVII. The Six-Text, Part VII., the Second Nun's, Canon's-Yeoman's, and Manciple's Tales, with the Blank-Parson Link.

XXXVIII. to **XLIII.** Large Parts of the separate issues of the Six MSS. bringing all up to the Parson's Tale.

XLIV. A detailed Comparison of the *Troylus and Cryseyde* with Boccaccio's *Filostrato*, with a Translation of all Passages used by Chaucer, and an Abstract of the Parts not used, by W. MICHAEL ROSSETTI, Esq., and with a print of the *Troylus* from the Harleian MS. 3943. Part I.

XLV., **XLVI.** Ryme-Index to the Ellesmere MS. of the Canterbury Tales, by HENRY CROMIE, Esq., M.A. Both in Royal 4to for the *Six-Text*, and in 8vo. for the separate Ellesmere MS.

XLVII. Notes and Corrections for the 8vo. Ryme-Index, by H. CROMIE, Esq. and Autotypes of Chaucer Manuscripts, Part I.

1875. Second Series.

- 10.** Originals and Analogues of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, Part II. 6. Alphonsus of Lincoln, a Story like the *Prioresse's Tale*. 7. How Reynard caught Chanticleer, the source of the *Nun's-Priest's Tale*. 8. Two Italian Stories, and a Latin one, like the *Pardonner's Tale*. 9. The Tale of the Priest's Bladder, a story like the *Summoner's Tale*, being 'Li dis de le Vescie a Prestre,' par Jakes de Basiw. 10. Petrarch's Latin Tale of Griseldis (with Boccaccio's Story from which it was re-told), the original of the *Clerk's Tale*. 11. Five Versions of a Pear-tree Story like that in the *Merchant's Tale*. 12. Four Versions of The Life of Saint Cecilia, the original of the *Second Nun's Tale*.
11. Early English Pronunciation, with especial reference to Shakespeare and Chaucer. By ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, Esq., F.R.S. Part IV.

Chaucer Society's Publications—continued.

12. **Life Records of Chaucer.** Part I., The Robberies of Chaucer by Richard Brerelay and others at Westminster, and at Hatcham, Surrey, on Tuesday, Sept. 6, 1390, with some account of the Robbers, from the Enrolments in the Public Record Office. By WALFORD D. SELBY, Esq., of the Public Record Office.
13. **THYNNE'S ANIMADVERSIONS (1599) ON SPEGHT'S Chaucer's Workes,** re-edited from the unique MS., by FREDK. J. FURNIVALL, with fresh Lives of William and Francis Thynne, and the only known fragment of *The Pilgrim's Tale*.

1876. Second Series.

14. **LIFE RECORDS OF CHAUCER.** Part II. The Household Ordinances of King Edward II., June, 1323 (as englisch by Francis Tate in March, 1601 A. D.), with extracts from those of King Edward IV. to show the probable duties of Chaucer as Valet, or Yeoman of the Chamber, and Esquire to Edward III., of whose Household Book no MS. is known ; together with Chaucer's Oath as Controller of the Customs ; and an enlarged Autotype of Hoccleve's Portrait of Chaucer ; edited by F. J. FURNIVALL.
15. **ORIGINALS AND ANALOGUES OF CHAUCER'S CANTERBURY TALES.** Part III. 13. The Story of Constance for the *Man of Law's Tale*. 14. The Boy killd by a Jew for singing "Gaude Maria," an Analogue of the *Prioress's Tale*. 15. The Paris Beggar Boy Murdered by a Jew for singing "Alma redemptoris mater!" an Analogue of the *Prioress's Tale*, with a Poem by Lydgate.
16. **ESSAYS ON CHAUCER, HIS WORDS AND WORKS.** Part III. of Chaucer's Prioress, her Nun, Chaplain, and 3 Priests, illustrated from the Paper Survey of St. Mary's Abbey, Winchester, by F. J. FURNIVALL. 8. Alliteration in Chaucer, by Dr PAUL LINDNER. 8. Chaucer a Wiccliffite ; a critical Examination of the *Parson's Tale*, by Herr HUGO SIMON. 10. The sources of the Wife of Bath's Prologue ; Chaucer not a borrower from John of Salisbury, by the Rev. W. W. WOOLLCOMBE.
17. **SUPPLEMENTARY CANTERBURY TALES :** I. The Tale of Beryn with a Prologue of the Merry Adventure of the Pardonner with a Tapster at Canterbury, re-edited from the Duke of Northumberland's unique MS., by FREDK. J. FURNIVALL. Part I. The Text, with Wm. Smith's Map of Canterbury in 1588, now first engraved from his unique MS. and Ogilby's Plan of the road from London to Canterbury in 1675.

For 1876, First Series, Part VIII. of the Six-Text edition, containing the Parson's Tale, and completing the *Canterbury Tales*, is in the Press ; and for 1877, Part II. of Chaucer's Minor Poems, completing them.

Childers.—A PÁLI-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, with Sanskrit Equivalents, and with numerous Quotations, Extracts, and References. Compiled by ROBERT CÆSAR CHILDERS, late of the Ceylon Civil Service. Imperial 8vo. Double Columns. Complete in 1 Vol., pp. xxii. and 622, cloth. 1875. £3 3s.

The first Pali Dictionary ever published.

Childers.—A PÁLI GRAMMAR FOR BEGINNERS. By ROBERT C. CHILDERS. In 1 vol. 8vo. cloth. [In preparation.]

Childers.—NOTES ON THE SINHALESE LANGUAGE. No. 1. On the Formation of the Plural of Neuter Nouns. By R. C. CHILDERS. Demy 8vo. sd., pp. 16. 1873. 1s.

China Review; or, NOTES AND QUERIES ON THE FAR EAST. Published bi-monthly. Edited by E. J. EITEL. 4to. Subscription, £1 10s. per volume.

Chinese and Japanese Literature (A Catalogue of), and of Oriental Periodicals. On Sale by Trübner & Co., 57 and 59, Ludgate Hill, London. 8vo. pp. 28. *Gratis.*

Chintamon.—A COMMENTARY ON THE TEXT OF THE BHAGAVAD-GÍTÁ; or, the Discourse between Krishna and Arjuna of Divine Matters. A Sanscrit Philosophical Poem. With a few Introductory Papers. By HURRYCHUND CHINTAMON, Political Agent to H. H. the Guicowar Mulhar Rao Maharajah of Baroda. Post 8vo. cloth, pp. 118. 6s.

Christaller.—A DICTIONARY, ENGLISH, TSHI, (ASANTE), AKRA ; Tshi (Chwee), comprising as dialects Akán (Asùnté, Akém, Akuapém, etc.) and Fante ; Akra (Accra), connected with Adangme ; Gold Coast, West Africa.

Enyiresi, Twi né Nkrañ nsem - asekyeré - nhōma.		Eñiliši, Osüi ke Gā wiemgi - ašištōmō - wolo.
--	--	--

By the Rev. J. G. CHRISTALLER, Rev. C. W. LOCHER, Rev. J. ZIMMERMANN. 16mo. 7s. 6d.

Christaller.—A GRAMMAR OF THE ASANTE AND FANTE LANGUAGE, called Tshi (Chwee, Twi) : based on the Akuapem Dialect, with reference to the other (Akan and Fante) Dialects. By Rev. J. G. CHRISTALLER. 8vo. pp. xxiv. and 203. 1875. 10s. 6d.

Clarke.—TEN GREAT RELIGIONS : an Essay in Comparative Theology. By JAMES FREEMAN CLARKE. 8vo. cloth, pp. x. and 528. 1871. 14s.

Clarke.—MEMOIR ON THE COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF EGYPTIAN, COPTIC, AND UDE. By HYDE CLARKE, Cor. Member American Oriental Society ; Mem. German Oriental Society, etc., etc. Demy 8vo. sd., pp. 32. 2s.

Clarke.—RESEARCHES IN PRE-HISTORIC AND PROTO-HISTORIC COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY, MYTHOLOGY, AND ARCHAEOLOGY, in connexion with the Origin of Culture in America and the Accad or Sumerian Families. By HYDE CLARKE. Demy 8vo. sewed, pp. xi. and 74. 1875. 2s. 6d.

Clarke.—SERPENT AND SIVA Worship, and Mythology in Central America, Africa and Asia. By HYDE CLARKE, Esq. 8vo. sewed. 1s.

Cleasby.—AN ICELANDIC-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. Based on the MS. Collections of the late Richard Cleasby. Enlarged and completed by G. VIGFÚSSON. With an Introduction, and Life of Richard Cleasby, by G. WILBE DASENT, D.C.L. 4to. £3 7s.

Cleasby.—APPENDIX TO AN ICELANDIC-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. See Skeat.

Colebrooke.—THE LIFE AND MISCELLANEOUS ESSAYS OF HENRY THOMAS COLEBROOKE. The Biography by his Son, Sir T. E. COLEBROOKE, Bart., M.P., The Essays edited by Professor Cowell. In 3 vols.

Vol. I. The Life. With Portrait and Map. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 492. 14s.

Vols. II. and III. The Essays. A New Edition, with Notes by E. B. COWELL, Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi.-544, and x.-520. 1873. 28s.

Colleccao de Vocabulos e Frases usados na Provincia de S. Pedro, do Rio Grande do Sul, no Brasil. 12mo. pp. 32, sewed. 1s.

Contopoulos.—A LEXICON OF MODERN GREEK-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH MODERN GREEK. By N. CONTOPOULOS. In 2 vols. 8vo. cloth. Part I. Modern Greek-English, pp. 460. Part II. English-Modern Greek, pp. 582. £1.7s.

Conway.—THE SACRED ANTHOLOGY. A Book of Ethnical Scriptures. Collected and edited by M. D. CONWAY. 4th edition. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 480. 12s.

Cotton.—**ARABIC PRIMER.** Consisting of 180 Short Sentences containing 30 Primary Words prepared according to the Vocal System of Studying Language. By General SIR ARTHUR COTTON, K.C.S.I. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. 38. 2s.

Cowell and Eggeling.—**CATALOGUE OF BUDDHIST SANSKRIT MANUSCRIPTS** in the Possession of the Royal Asiatic Society (Hodgson Collection). By Professors E. B. COVELL and J. EGGLING. 8vo. sd., pp. 56. 2s. 6d.

Cowell.—**A SHORT INTRODUCTION TO THE ORDINARY PRAKRIT OF THE SANSKRIT DRAMAS.** With a List of Common Irregular Prakrit Words. By Prof. E. B. COVELL. Cr. 8vo. limp cloth, pp. 40. 1875. 3s. 6d.

Cunningham.—**THE ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA.** I. The Buddhist Period, including the Campaigns of Alexander, and the Travels of Hwen-Thsang. By ALEXANDER CUNNINGHAM, Major-General, Royal Engineers (Bengal Retired). With thirteen Maps. 8vo. pp. xx. 590, cloth. 1870. 28s.

Cunningham.—**THE BHILSA TOPES;** or, Buddhist Monuments of Central India: comprising a brief Historical Sketch of the Rise, Progress, and Decline of Buddhism; with an Account of the Opening and Examination of the various Groups of Topes around Bhilsa. By Brev.-Major Alexander Cunningham, Bengal Engineers. Illustrated with thirty-three Plates. 8vo. pp. xxxvi. 370, cloth. 1854. £2 2s.

Cunningham.—**ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA.** Four Reports, made during the years 1862–63. 64–5. By ALEXANDER CUNNINGHAM, C.S.I., Major-General, etc. With Maps and Plates. Vols. 1 to 5. 8vo. cloth. £6.

Da Cunha.—**MEMOIR ON THE HISTORY OF THE TOOTH-RELIC OF CEYLON;** with an Essay on the Life and System of Gautama Buddha. By J. GERSON DA CUNHA. 8vo. cloth, pp. xiv. and 70. With 4 photographs and cuts. 7s. 6d.

Da Cunha.—**THE SAHYADRI KHANDA OF THE SKANDA PURANA;** a Mythological, Historical and Geographical Account of Western India. First edition of the Sanskrit Text, with various readings. By J. GERSON DA CUNHA, M.R.C.S. and L.M. Eng., I.R.C.P. Edinb., etc. 8vo. bds. pp. 580. £1 1s.

Da Cunha.—**NOTES ON THE HISTORY AND ANTIQUITIES OF CHAUL AND BASSEIN.** By J. GERSON DA CUNHA, M.R.C.S. and L.M. Eng., etc. 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 262. With 17 photographs, 9 plates and a map. £1 5s.

Dalton.—**DESCRIPTIVE ETHNOLOGY OF BENGAL.** By EDWARD TUTE DALTON, C.S.I., Colonel, Bengal Staff Corps, etc. Illustrated by Lithograph Portraits copied from Photographs. 3s. Lithograph Plates. 4to. half-calf, pp. 340. £6 6s.

D'Alwis.—**A DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF SANSKRIT, PALI, AND SINHALESE LITERARY WORKS OF CEYLON.** By JAMES D'ALWIS, M.R.A.S., Advocate of the Supreme Court, &c., &c. In Three Volumes. Vol. I., pp. xxii. and 24, sewed. 1870. 8s. 6d. [Vols. II. and III. in preparation.]

Davids.—**THREE INSCRIPTIONS OF PARÂKRAMA BâHU THE GREAT,** from Pulastipura, Ceylon. By T. W. RHYS DAVIDS. 8vo. pp. 20. 1s. 6d.

Davids.—**SIGIRI, THE LION ROCK, NEAR PULASTIPURA, AND THE 39TH CHAPTER OF THE MAHÂVAMSA.** By T. W. RHYS DAVIDS. 8vo. pp. 30. 1s. 6d.

Deleplierre.—**SUPERCHÉRIES LITTÉRAIRES, PASTICHES SUPPOSITIONS D'AUTEUR, DANS LES LETTRES ET DANS LES ARTS.** Par OCTAVE DELEPLIERRE. Fcap. 4to. paper cover, pp. 328. 14s.

Deleplierre.—**TABLEAU DE LA LITTÉRATURE DU CENTON, CHEZ LES ANCIENS et chez les Modernes.** Par Octave Deleplierre. 2 vols. small 4to. paper cover, pp. 324 and 318. 21s.

Delepierre.—**ESSAI HISTORIQUE ET BIBLIOGRAPHIQUE SUR LES RÉBÜS.**
Par Octave Delepierre. 8vo. pp. 24, sewed. With 15 pages of Woodcuts.
1870. 3s. 6d.

Dennys.—**CHINA AND JAPAN.** A complete Guide to the Open Ports of those countries, together with Pekin, Yedo, Hong Kong, and Macao; forming a Guide Book and Vade Mecum for Travellers, Merchants, and Residents in general; with 56 Maps and Plans. By W.M. FREDERICK MAYERS, F.R.G.S. H.M.'s Consular Service; N.B. DENNYS, late H.M.'s Consular Service; and CHARLES KING, Lieut. Royal Marine Artillery. Edited by N.B. DENNYS. In one volume. 8vo. pp. 600, cloth. £2 2s.

Dennys.—**A HANDBOOK OF THE CANTON VERNACULAR OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE.** Being a Series of Introductory Lessons, for Domestic and Business Purposes. By N.B. DENNYS, M.R.A.S., Ph.D. 8vo. cloth, pp. 4, 195, and 31. £1 10s.

Dennys.—**THE FOLK-LORE OF CHINA,** and its Affinities with that of the Aryan and Semitic Races. By N.B. DENNYS, Ph.D., F.R.G.S., M.R.A.S., author of "A Handbook of the Canton Vernacular," etc. 8vo. cloth, pp. 168. 10s. 6d.

Dickson.—**THE PĀTIMOKKHA,** being the Buddhist Office of the Confession of Priests. The Pali Text, with a Translation, and Notes, by J.F. DICKSON, M.A. 8vo. sd., pp. 69. 2s.

Dinkard (The).—The Original Pehlwi Text, the same transliterated in Zend Characters. Translations of the Text in the Gujarati and English Languages; a Commentary and Glossary of Select Terms. By PESHOTUN DUSTOOR BEHRAMJEE SUNJANA. Vols. I. and II. 8vo. cloth. £2 2s.

Döhne.—**A ZULU-KAFIR DICTIONARY,** etymologically explained, with copious Illustrations and examples, preceded by an introduction on the Zulu-Kafir Language. By the Rev. J.L. DÖHNE. Royal 8vo. pp. xlvi. and 418, sewed. Cape Town, 1857. 21s.

Döhne.—**THE FOUR GOSPELS IN ZULU.** By the Rev. J.L. DÖHNE, Missionary to the American Board, C.F.M. 8vo. pp. 208, cloth. Pietermaritzburg, 1866. 5s.

Doolittle.—**A VOCABULARY AND HANDBOOK OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE.** Romanized in the Mandarin Dialect. In Two Volumes comprised in Three parts. By Rev. JUSTUS DOOLITTLE, Author of "Social Life of the Chinese." Vol. I. 4to. pp. viii. and 548. Vol. II. Parts II. and III., pp. vii. and 695. £1 11s. 6d. each vol.

Douglas.—**CHINESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY OF THE VERNACULAR OR SPOKEN LANGUAGE OF AMOY,** with the principal variations of the Chang-Chew and Chin-Chew Dialects. By the Rev. CARSTAIRS DOUGLAS, M.A., LL.D., Glasg., Missionary of the Presbyterian Church in England. 1 vol. High quart, cloth, double columns, pp. 632. 1873. £3 3s.

Douglas.—**CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.** Two Lectures delivered at the Royal Institution, by R.K. DOUGLAS, of the British Museum, and Professor of Chinese at King's College. Cr. 8vo. cl., pp. 118. 1875. 5s.

Douse.—**GRIMM'S LAW; A STUDY:** or, Hints towards an Explanation of the so-called "Lautverschiebung." To which are added some Remarks on the Primitive Indo-European *K*, and several Appendices. By T. LE MARCHANT DOUSE. 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 230. 10s. 6d.

Dowson.—**A GRAMMAR OF THE URDU OR HINDUSTANI LANGUAGE.** By JOHN DOWSON, M.R.A.S. 12mo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 264. 10s. 6d.

Dowson.—**A HINDUSTANI EXERCISE BOOK.** Containing a Series of Passages and Extracts adapted for Translation into Hindustani. By JOHN DOWSON, M.R.A.S., Professor of Hindustani, Staff College. Crown 8vo. pp. 100. Limp cloth, 2s. 6d.

Dwight.—MODERN PHILOLOGY : Its Discovery, History, and Influence. New edition, with Maps, Tabular Views, and an Index. By BENJAMIN W. DWIGHT. In two vols. cr. 8vo. cloth. First series, pp. 360; second series, pp. xi. and 554. £1.

Early English Text Society's Publications. Subscription, one guinea per annum.

1. **EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS.** In the West-Midland Dialect of the Fourteenth Century. Edited by R. MORRIS, Esq., from an unique Cottonian MS. 16s.
2. **ARTHUR** (about 1440 A.D.). Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., from the Marquis of Bath's unique MS. 4s.
3. **ANE COMPENDIOUS AND BREUE TRACTATE CONCERNYNG YE OFFICE AND DEWTIE OF KYNGIS, etc.** By WILLIAM LAUDER. (1556 A.D.) Edited by F. HALL, Esq., D.C.L. 4s.
4. **SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GREEN KNIGHT** (about 1320-30 A.D.). Edited by R. MORRIS, Esq., from an unique Cottonian MS. 10s.
5. **OF THE ORTHOGRAPHIE AND CONGRUITIE OF THE BRITAN TONGUE;** a treatise, noe shorter than necessarie, for the Schooles, by ALEXANDER HUME. Edited for the first time from the unique MS. in the British Museum (about 1617 A.D.), by HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq. 4s.
6. **LANCELOT OF THE LAIK.** Edited from the unique MS. in the Cambridge University Library (ab. 1500), by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A. 8s.
7. **THE STORY OF GENESIS AND EXODUS,** an Early English Song, of about 1250 A.D. Edited for the first time from the unique MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by R. MORRIS, Esq. 8s.
8. **MORTE ARTHURE;** the Alliterative Version. Edited from ROBERT THORNTON's unique MS. (about 1440 A.D.) at Lincoln, by the Rev. GEORGE PERRY, M.A., Prebendary of Lincoln. 7s.
9. **ANIMADVERSIONS UPON THE ANNOTACIONS AND CORRECTIONS OF SOME IMPERFECTIONS OF IMPRESSIONES OF CHAUCER'S WORKES,** reprinted in 1598; by FRANCIS THYNNE. Edited from the unique MS. in the Bridgewater Library. By G. H. KINGSLEY, Esq., M.D., and F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A. 10s.
10. **MERLIN, OR THE EARLY HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR.** Edited for the first time from the unique MS. in the Cambridge University Library (about 1450 A.D.), by HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq. Part I. 2s. 6d.
11. **THE MONARCHE,** and other Poems of Sir David Lyndesay. Edited from the first edition by JOHNE SKOTT, in 1552, by FITZEDWARD HALL, Esq., D.C.L. Part I. 3s.
12. **THE WRIGHT'S CHASTE WIFE,** a Merry Tale, by Adam of Cobsam (about 1462 A.D.), from the unique Lambeth MS. 306. Edited for the first time by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A. 1s.
13. **SEINTE MARHERETE, HE MEIDEN ANT MARTYR.** Three Texts of ab. 1200, 1310, 1330 A.D. First edited in 1862, by the Rev. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., and now re-issued. 2s.
14. **KYNG HORN,** with fragments of Floriz and Blauncheflur, and the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin. Edited from the MSS. in the Library of the University of Cambridge and the British Museum, by the Rev. J. RAWSON LUMBY. 3s. 6d

Early English English Text Society's Publications—continued.

15. POLITICAL, RELIGIOUS, AND LOVE POEMS, from the Lambeth MS. No. 306, and other sources. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 7s. 6d.
16. A TRETICE IN ENGLISII breuely drawe out of þ book of Quintis essencijs in Latyn, þ Hermys þ prophete and king of Egipt after þ flood of Noe, fader of Philosophris, hadde by reuelacionis of an aungil of God to him sente. Edited from the Sloane MS. 73, by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A. 1s.
17. PARALLEL EXTRACTS from 29 Manuscripts of PIERS PLOWMAN, with Comments, and a Proposal for the Society's Three-text edition of this Poem. By the Rev. W. SKEAT, M.A. 1s.
18. HALE MEIDENHEAD, about 1200 A.D. Edited for the first time from the MS. (with a translation) by the Rev. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A. 1s.
19. THE MONARCHE, and other Poems of Sir David Lyndesay. Part II., the Complaynt of the King's Papingo, and other minor Poems. Edited from the First Edition by F. HALL, Esq., D.C.L. 3s. 6d.
20. SOME TREATISES BY RICHARD ROLLE DE HAMPOLE. Edited from Robert of Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440 A.D.), by Rev. GEORGE G. PERRY, M.A. 1s.
21. MERLIN, OR THE EARLY HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR. Part II. Edited by HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq. 4s.
22. THE ROMANS OF PARTENAY, OR LUSIGNEN. Edited for the first time from the unique MS. in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge, by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT. M.A. 6s.
23. DAN MICHEL'S AYENBITE OF INWYT, or Remorse of Conscience, in the Kentish dialect, 1340 A.D. Edited from the unique MS. in the British Museum, by RICHARD MORRIS, Esq. 10s. 6d.
24. HYMNS OF THE VIRGIN AND CHRIST; THE PARLIAMENT OF DEVILS, and Other Religious Poems. Edited from the Lambeth MS. 853, by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 3s.
25. THE STACIONS OF ROME, and the Pilgrim's Sea-Voyage and Sea-Sickness, with Clene Maydenhod. Edited from the Vernon and Porkington MSS., etc., by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A. 1s.
26. RELIGIOUS PIECES IN PROSE AND VERSE. Containing Dan Jon Gaytrigg's Sermon; The Abbaye of S. Spirit; Sayne Jon, and other pieces in the Northern Dialect. Edited from Robert of Thorntone's MS. (ab. 1460 A.D.), by the Rev. G. PERRY, M.A. 2s.
27. MANIPULUS VOCABULORUM : a Rhyming Dictionary of the English Language, by PETER LÉVINS (1570). Edited, with an Alphabetical Index, by HENRY B. WHEATLEY. 12s.
28. THE VISION OF WILLIAM CONCERNING PIERS PLOWMAN, together with Vita de Dowel, Dobet et Dobest. 1362 A.D., by WILLIAM LANGLAND. The earliest or Vernon Text; Text A. Edited from the Vernon MS., with full Collations, by Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. 7s.
29. OLD ENGLISH HOMILIES AND HOMILETIC TREATISES. (Sawles Warde and the Wohunge of Ure Lauerd : Ureisuns of Ure Louerd and of Ure Lefdi, etc.) of the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries. Edited from MSS. in the British Museum, Lambeth, and Bodleian Libraries; with Introduction, Translation, and Notes. By RICHARD MORRIS. *First Series.* Part I. 7s.
30. PIERS, THE PLOUGHMAN'S CREDE (about 1394). Edited from the MSS. by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. 2s.

Early English Text Society's Publications—continued.

31. INSTRUCTIONS FOR PARISH PRIESTS. By JOHN MYRC. Edited from Cotton MS. Claudius A. II., by EDWARD PEACOCK, Esq., F.S.A., etc., etc. 4s.
32. THE BABEES BOKE, Aristotle's A B C, Urbanitatis, Stans Puer ad Mensam, The Lyttle Childrenes Lytil Boke THE BOKES OF NURTURE of Hugh Rhodes and John Russell, Wykyng de Worde's Boke of Kervynge, The Booke of Demeanor, The Boke of Curtasye, Seager's Schoole of Vertue, etc., etc. With some French and Latin Poems on like subjects, and some Forewords on Education in Early England. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A., Trin. Hall, Cambridge 15s.
33. THE BOOK OF THE KNIGHT DE LA TOUR LANDRY, 1372. A Father's Book for his Daughters. Edited from the Harleian MS. 1764, by THOMAS WRIGHT Esq., M.A., and MR. WILLIAM ROSSITER. 8s.
34. OLD ENGLISH HOMILIES AND HOMILETIC TREATISES. (Sawles Warde, and the Wohunge of Ure Lauerd: Ureisuns of Ure Louerd and of Ure Lefdi, etc.) of the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries. Edited from MSS. in the British Museum, Lambeth, and Bodleian Libraries; with Introduction, Translation, and Notes, by RICHARD MORRIS. First Series. Part 2. 8s.
35. SIR DAVID LYNDSEAY'S WORKS. PART 3. The Historie of ane Nobil and Wailzeand Sqvyer, WILLIAM MELDRUM, unyqvhyle Laird of Cleische and Bynnis, compylit be Sir DAVID LYNDSEAY of the Mont alias Lyon King of Armes. With the Testament of the said Williame Meldrum, Squyer, compylit also be Sir David Lyndesay, etc. Edited by F. HALL, D.C.L. 2s.
36. MERLIN, OR THE EARLY HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR. A Prose Romance (about 1450–1460 A.D.), edited from the unique MS. in the University Library, Cambridge, by HENRY B. WHEATLEY. With an Essay on Arthurian Localities, by J. S. STUART GLENNIE, Esq. Part III. 1869. 12s.
37. SIR DAVID LYNDSEAY'S WORKS. Part IV. Ane Satyre of the thrie estaits, in commendation of vertew and vituperatioν of vyce. Maid be Sir DAVID LYNDSEAY, of the Mont, alias Lyon King of Armes. At Edinbvrgħ Printed be Robert Charteris, 1602. Cvm privilegio regis. Edited by F. HALL, Esq., D.C.L. 4s.
38. THE VISION OF WILLIAM CONCERNING PIERS THE PLOWMAN, together with Vita de Dowel, Dobet, et Dobest, Secundum Wit et Resoun, by WILLIAM LANGLAND (1377 A.D.). The "Crowley" Text; or Text B. Edited from MS. Laud Misc. 581, collated with MS. Rawl. Poet. 38, MS. B. 15. 17. in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge, MS. Dd. 1. 17. in the Cambridge University Library, the MS. in Oriel College, Oxford, MS. Bodley 814, etc. By the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A., late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. 10s. 6d.
39. THE "GEST HISTORIALE" OF THE DESTRUCTION OF TROY. An Alliterative Romance, translated from Guido De Colonna's "Hystoria Troiana." Now first edited from the unique MS. in the Hunterian Museum, University of Glasgow, by the Rev. GEO. A. PANTON and DAVID DONALDSON. Part I. 10s. 6d.
40. ENGLISH GILDS. The Original Ordinances of more than One Hundred Early English Gilds: Together with the olde usages of the cite of Wynchestre; The Ordinances of Worcester; The Office of the Mayor of Bristol; and the Customary of the Manor of Tettenhall-Regis. From Original MSS. of the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries. Edited with Notes by the late TOULMIN SMITH, Esq., F.R.S. of Northern Antiquaries. (Copenhagen). With an Introduction and Glossary, etc., by his daughter, LUCY TOULMIN SMITH. And a Preliminary Essay, in Five Parts, ON THE HISTORY AND DEVELOPMENT OF GILDS, by LUJO BRENTANO, Doctor Juris Utriusque et Philosophiae. 21s.

Early English Text Society's Publications—continued.

41. THE MINOR POEMS OF WILLIAM LAUDER, Playwright, Poet, and Minister of the Word of God (mainly on the State of Scotland in and about 1568 A.D., that year of Famine and Plague). Edited from the Unique Originals belonging to S. CHRISTIE-MILLER, Esq., of Britwell, by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A., Trin. Hall, Camb. 3s.
42. BERNARDUS DE CURA REI FAMILIARIS, with some Early Scotch Prophecies, etc. From a MS., KK 1. 5, in the Cambridge University Library. Edited by J. RAWSON LUMBY, M.A., late Fellow of Magdalen College, Cambridge. 2s.
43. RATIS RAVING, and other Moral and Religious Pieces, in Prose and Verse. Edited from the Cambridge University Library MS. KK 1. 5, by J. RAWSON LUMBY, M.A., late Fellow of Magdalen College, Cambridge. 3s.
44. JOSEPH OF ARIMATHIE: otherwise called the Romance of the Seint Graal, or Holy Grail: an alliterative poem, written about A.D. 1350, and now first printed from the unique copy in the Vernon MS. at Oxford. With an appendix, containing "The Lyfe of Joseph of Armathy," reprinted from the black-letter copy of Wynkyng de Worde; "De sancto Joseph ab Arimathia," first printed by Pynson, A.D. 1516; and "The Lyfe of Joseph of Arimathia," first printed by Pynson, A.D. 1520. Edited, with Notes and Glossarial Indices, by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A. 5s.
45. KING ALFRED'S WEST-SAXON VERSION OF GREGORY'S PASTORAL CARE. With an English translation, the Latin Text, Notes, and an Introduction. Edited by HENRY SWEET, Esq., of Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s.
46. LEGENDS OF THE HOLY ROOD; SYMBOLS OF THE PASSION AND CROSS-POEMS. In Old English of the Eleventh, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Centuries. Edited from MSS. in the British Museum and Bodleian Libraries; with Introduction, Translations, and Glossarial Index. By RICHARD MORRIS, LL.D. 10s.
47. SIR DAVID LYNDDESAY'S WORKS. PART V. The Minor Poems of Lyndesay. Edited by J. A. H. MURRAY, Esq. 3s.
48. THE TIMES' WHISTLE: or, A Newe Daunce of Seven Satires, and other Poems: Compiled by R. C., Gent. Now first Edited from MS. Y. 8. 3. in the Library of Canterbury Cathedral; with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary, by J. M. COWPER. 6s.
49. AN OLL ENGLISH MISCELLANY, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, Religious Poems of the 13th century. Edited from the MSS. by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D. 10s.
50. KING ALFRED'S WEST-SAXON VERSION OF GREGORY'S PASTORAL CARE. Edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation. By HENRY SWEET, Esq., Balliol College, Oxford. Part II. 10s.
51. þE LIFLADE OF ST. JULIANA, from two old English Manuscripts of 1230 A.D. With renderings into Modern English, by the Rev. O. COCKAYNE and EDMUND BROCK. Edited by the Rev. O. COCKAYNE, M.A. Price 2s. 1
52. PALLADIUS ON HUSBONDRIE, from the unique MS., ab. 1420 A.D., ed. Rev. B. LODGE. Part I. 10s.
53. OLD ENGLISH HOMILIES, Series II., from the unique 13th-century MS. in Trinity Coll. Cambridge, with a photolithograph; three Hymns to the Virgin and God, from a unique 13th-century MS. at Oxford, a photolithograph of the music to two of them, and transcriptions of it in modern notation by Dr. RIMBAULT, and A. J. ELLIS, Esq., F.R.S.; the whole edited by the Rev. RICHARD MORRIS, LL.D. 8s.

Early English Text Society's Publications—continued.

54. THE VISION OF PIERS PLOWMAN, Text C (completing the three versions of this great poem), with an Autotype; and two unique alliterative Poems: Richard the Redeles (by WILLIAM, the author of the *Vision*) ; and The Crowned King ; edited by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. 18s.
55. GENERYDES, a Romance, edited from the unique MS., ab. 1440 A.D., in Trin. Coll. Cambridge, by W. ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., Trin. Coll. Cambr. Part I. 3s.
56. THE GEST HYSTORIALE OF THE DESTRUCTION OF TROY, translated from Guido de Colonna, in alliterative verse; edited from the unique MS. in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, by D. DONALDSON, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d.
57. THE EARLY ENGLISH VERSION OF THE "CURSOR MUNDI," in four Texts, from MS. Cotton, Vesp. A. iii. in the British Museum; Fairfax MS. 14. in the Bodleian; the Göttingen MS. Theol. 107; MS. R. 3, 8, in Trinity College, Cambridge. Edited by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D. Part I. with two photo-lithographic facsimiles by Cooke and Fotheringham. 10s. 6d.
58. THE BLICKLING HOMILIES, edited from the Marquis of Lothian's Anglo-Saxon MS. of 971 A.D., by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D. (With a Photolithograph). Part I. 8s.
59. THE EARLY ENGLISH VERSION OF THE "CURSOR MUNDI," in four Texts, from MS. Cotton Vesp. A. iii. in the British Museum; Fairfax MS. 14. in the Bodleian; the Göttingen MS. Theol. 107; MS. R. 3, 8, in Trinity College, Cambridge. Edited by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D. Part II. 15s.
60. MEDITACYUNS ON THE SOPER OF OUR LORDE (perhaps by ROBERT OF BRUNNE). Edited from the MSS. by J. M. COWPER, Esq. 2s. 6d.
61. THE ROMANCE AND PROPHECIES OF THOMAS OF ERCELDOUNE, printed from Five MSS. Edited by Dr. JAMES A. H. MURRAY. 10s. 6d.
62. THE EARLY ENGLISH VERSION OF THE "CURSOR MUNDI," in Four Texts. Edited by the Rev. R. MORRIS, M.A., LL.D. Part III. 15s.
63. THE BLICKLING HOMILIES. Edited from the Marquis of Lothian's Anglo-Saxon MS. of 971 A.D., by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D. Part II. 4s.
64. FRANCIS THYNNE'S EMBLEMES AND EPIGRAMS, A.D. 1600, from the Earl of Ellesmere's unique MS. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 4s.
65. BE DOMES DÆGE (Bede's De Die Judicii) and other short Anglo-Saxon Pieces. Edited from the unique MS. by the Rev. J. RAWSON LUMBY, B.D. 2s.
66. THE EARLY ENGLISH VERSION OF THE "CURSOR MUNDI," in Four Texts. Edited by Rev. R. MORRIS, M.A., LL.D. Part IV. 10s.

Extra Series. Subscriptions—Small paper, one guinea; large paper two guineas, per annum.

1. THE ROMANCE OF WILLIAM OF PALERNE (otherwise known as the Romance of William and the Werwolf). Translated from the French at the command of Sir Humphrey de Bohun, about A.D. 1350, to which is added a fragment of the Alliterative Romance of Alisaunder, translated from the Latin by the same author, about A.D. 1340; the former re-edited from the unique MS. in the Library of King's College, Cambridge, the latter now first edited from the unique MS. in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. By the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A. 8vo. sewed, pp. xliv. and 328. £1 6s.
2. ON EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer; containing an investigation of the Correspondence of Writing with Speech in England, from the Anglo-Saxon period to the

Early English Text Society's Publications.—continued.

- present day, preceded by a systematic Notation of all Spoken Sounds by means of the ordinary Printing Types; including a re-arrangement of Prof. F. J. Child's Memoirs on the Language of Chaucer and Gower, and reprints of the rare Tracts by Salesbury on English, 1547, and Welsh, 1567, and by Barcley on French, 1521. By ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, F.R.S. Part I. On the Pronunciation of the xvith, xviith, xviiith, and xviiiith centuries. 8vo. sewed, pp. viii. and 416. 10s.
3. CAXTON'S BOOK OF CURTESYE, printed at Westminster about 1477-8, A.D., and now reprinted, with two MS. copies of the same treatise, from the Oriel MS. 79, and the Balliol MS. 354. Edited by FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A. 8vo. sewed, pp. xii. and 58. 5s.
 4. THE LAY OF HAVELOK THE DANE; composed in the reign of Edward I., about A.D. 1280. Formerly edited by Sir F. MADDEN for the Roxburghe Club, and now re-edited from the unique MS. Laud Misc. 108, in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A. 8vo. sewed, pp. lv. and 160. 10s.
 5. CHAUCER'S TRANSLATION OF BOETHIUS'S "DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIE." Edited from the Additional MS. 10,340 in the British Museum. Collated with the Cambridge Univ. Libr. MS. II. 3. 21. By RICHARD MORRIS. 8vo. 12s.
 6. THE ROMANCE OF THE CHEVELEERE ASSIGNE. Re-edited from the unique manuscript in the British Museum, with a Preface, Notes, and Glossarial Index, by HENRY H. GIBBS, Esq., M.A. 8vo. sewed, pp. xviii. and 38. 3s.
 7. ON EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer. By ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, F.R.S., etc., etc. Part II. On the Pronunciation of the xiiiith and previous centuries, of Anglo-Saxon, Icelandic, Old Norse and Gothic, with Chronological Tables of the Value of Letters and Expression of Sounds in English Writing. 10s.
 8. QUEENE ELIZABETHES ACHADEMIE, by Sir HUMPHREY GILBERT. A Booke of Precedence, The Ordering of a Funerall, etc. Varying Versions of the Good Wife, The Wise Man, etc., Maxims, Lydgate's Order of Fools, A Poem on Heraldry, Occleve on Lords' Men, etc., Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A., Trin. Hall, Camb. With Essays on Early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. ROSSETTI, Esq., and E. OSWALD, Esq. 8vo. 13s.
 9. THE FRATERNITYE OF VACABONDES, by JOHN AWDELEY (licensed in 1560-1, imprinted then, and in 1565), from the edition of 1575 in the Bodleian Library. A Cauet or Warening for Commen Cursetors vulgarely called Vagabones, by THOMAS HARMAN, ESQUIERE. From the 3rd edition of 1567, belonging to Henry Huth, Esq., collated with the 2nd edition of 1567, in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and with the reprint of the 4th edition of 1573. A Sermon in Praise of Thieves and Thievery, by PARSON HABEN OR HYBERDYNE, from the Lansdowne MS. 98, and Cotton Vesp. A. 25. Those parts of the Groundworke of Conny-catching (ed. 1592), that differ from Harman's Cauet. Edited by EDWARD VILES & F. J. FURNIVALL. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
 10. THE FYRST BOKE OF THE INTRODUCTION OF KNOWLEDGE, made by Andrew Borde, of Physycke Doctor. A COMPENDYOUS REGIMENT OF A DYETARY OF HEALTII made in Mountypyllier, compiled by Andrewe Boorde, of Physycke Doctor. BARNES IN THE DEFENCE OF THE BERDE: a treatysse made, answerynge the treatyse of Doctor Borde upon Berdes. Edited, with a life of Andrew Boorde, and large extracts from his Breuyary, by F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A., Trinity Hall, Camb. 8vo. 18s.
 11. THE BRUCE; or, the Book of the most excellent and noble Prince, Robert de Broys, King of Scots: compiled by Master John Barbour, Arch-

Early English Text Society's Publications—continued.

- Meacon of Aberdeen. A.D. 1375. Edited from MS. G 23 in the Library of St. John's College, Cambridge, written A.D. 1487; collated with the MS. in the Advocates' Library at Edinburgh, written A.D. 1489, and with Hart's Edition, printed A.D. 1616; with a Preface, Notes, and Glossarial Index, by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A. Part I 8vo. 12s.
12. ENGLAND IN THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE EIGHTH. A Dialogue between Cardinal Pole and Thomas Lupset, Lecturer in Rhetoric at Oxford. By THOMAS STARKEY, Chaplain to the King. Edited, with Preface, Notes, and Glossary, by J. M. COWPER. And with an Introduction, containing the Life and Letters of Thomas Starkey, by the Rev. J. S. BREWER, M.A. Part II. 12s. (*Part I., Starkey's Life and Letters, is in preparation.*)
13. A SUPPLICACYON FOR THE BEGGARS. *Written about the year 1529, by SIMON FISH. Now re-edited by FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL. With a Supplycacion to our moste Soueraigne Lorde Kynge Henry the Eyght (1544 A.D.), A Supplication of the Poore Commons (1546 A.D.), The Decaye of England by the great multitude of Shepe (1550-3 A.D.). Edited by J. MEADOWS COWPER. 6s.
14. ON EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer. By A. J. ELLIS, F.R.S., F.S.A. Part II. Illustrations of the Pronunciation of the xvith and xvith Centuries.. Chaucer, Gower, Wycliffe, Spenser, Shakspere, Salesbury, Barcley, Hart, Bullokar, Gill. Pronouncing Vocabulary. 10s.
15. ROBERT CROWLEY'S THIRTY-ONE EPIGRAMS, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, etc., 1550-1 A.D. Edited by J. M. COWPER, Esq. 12s.
16. A TREATISE ON THE ASTROLABE; addressed to his son Lowys, by Geoffrey Chaucer, A.D. 1391. Edited from the earliest MSS. by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A., late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. 10s.
17. THE COMPLAYNT OF SCOTLANDE, 1549, A.D., with an Appendix of four Contemporary English Tracts. Edited by J. A. H. MURRAY, Esq. Part I. 40s.
18. THE COMPLAYNT OF SCOTLANDE, etc. Part II. 8s.
19. OURE LADYES MYROURE, A.D. 1530, edited by the Rev. J. H. BLUNT, M.A., with four full-page photolithographic facsimiles by Cooke and Fotheringham. 24s.
20. LONELICH'S HISTORY OF THE HOLY GRAIL (ab. 1450 A.D.), translated from the French Prose of SIREB ROBIERS DE BORRON. Re-edited from the Unique MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by F. J. Furnivall, Esq. M.A. Part I. 8s.
21. BARBOUR'S BRUCE. Part II. Edited from the MSS. and the earliest printed edition by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. 4s.
22. HENRY BRINKLOW'S COMPLAYNT OF RODERYCK MORS, somtyme a gray Fryre, unto the Parliament Howse of Ingland his naturall Country, for the Redresse of certen wicked Lawes, euel Customs, and cruel Decrees (ab. 1542); and THE LAMENTACION OF A CHRISTIAN AGAINST THE CITIE OF LONDON, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Edited by J. M. COWPER, Esq. 9s.
23. ON EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer. By A. J. ELLIS, Esq., F.R.S. Part IV. 10s..
24. LONELICH'S HISTORY OF THE HOLY GRAIL (ab. 1450 A.D.), translated from the French Prose of SIREB ROBIERS DE BORRON. Re-edited from the Unique MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A. Part II. 10s.

Early English Text Society's Publications—continued.

- 25. THE ROMANCE OF GUY OF WARWICK.** Edited from the Cambridge University MS. by Prof. J. ZUPITZA, Ph.D. Part I. 20s.
- 26. THE ROMANCE OF GUY OF WARWICK.** Edited from the Cambridge University MS. by Prof. J. ZUPITZA, Ph.D. (The 2nd or 15th century version.) Part II. 14s.
- Edda Saemundar Hinns Froda**—The Edda of Saemund the Learned. From the Old Norse or Icelandic. By BENJAMIN THORPE. Part I. with a Mythological Index. 12mo. pp. 152, cloth, 3s. 6d. Part II. with Index of Persons and Places. 12mo. pp. viii. and 172, cloth. 1866. 4s.; or in 1 Vol. complete, 7s. 6d.
- Edkins.**—INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE CHINESE CHARACTERS. By J. EDKINS, D.D., Peking, China. Roy. 8vo. pp. 3+0, paper boards. 18s.
- Edkins.**—CHINA'S PLACE IN PHILOLOGY. An attempt to show that the Languages of Europe and Asia have a common origin. By the Rev. JOSEPH EDKINS. Crown 8vo, pp. xxiii.—403, cloth. 10s. 6d.
- Edkins.**—A VOCABULARY OF THE SHANGHAI DIALECT. By J. EDKINS. 8vo. half-calf, pp. vi. and 151. Shanghai, 1869. 21s.
- Edkins.**—A GRAMMAR OF COLLOQUIAL CHINESE, as exhibited in the Shanghai Dialect. By J. EDKINS, B.A. Second edition, corrected. 8vo. half-calf, pp. viii. and 225. Shanghai, 1868. 21s.
- Edkins.**—A GRAMMAR OF THE CHINESE COLLOQUIAL LANGUAGE, commonly called the Mandarin Dialect. By JOSEPH EDKINS. Second edition. 8vo. half-calf, pp. viii. and 279. Shanghai, 1864. £1 10s.
- Edkins.**—PROGRESSIVE LESSONS IN THE CHINESE SPOKEN LANGUAGE. With Lists of Common Words and Phrases. By J. EDKINS, B.A. Third edition, 8vo. pp. 120. 1869. 14s.
- Eger and Grime;** an Early English Romance. Edited from Bishop Percy's Folio Manuscript, about 1650 A.D. By JOHN W. HALES, M.A., Fellow and late Assistant Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge, and FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. 1 vol. 4to., pp. 64, (only 100 copies printed), bound in the Roxburgh style. 10s. 6d.
- Eitel.**—A CHINESE DICTIONARY IN THE CANTONESE DIALECT. By ERNEST JOHN EITEL, Ph.D. Tubing. Will be completed in four parts. Part I. (A—K). 8vo. sewed, pp. 202. 12s. 6d.
- Eitel.**—HANDBOOK FOR THE STUDENT OF CHINESE BUDDHISM. By the Rev. E. J. EITEL, of the London Missionary Society. Crown 8vo. pp. viii., 224, cl., 18s.
- Eitel.**—FENG-SHTI: or, The Rudiments of Natural Science in China. By Rev. E. J. EITEL, M.A., Ph.D. Demy 8vo. sewed, pp. vi. and 84. 6s.
- Eitel.**—BUDDHISM: its Historical, Theoretical, and Popular Aspects. In Three Lectures. By Rev. E. J. EITEL, M.A. Ph.D. Second Edition. Demy 8vo. sewed, pp. 130. 5s.
- Elliot.**—THE HISTORY OF INDIA, as told by its own Historians. The Muhammadan Period. Edited from the Posthumous Papers of the late Sir H. M. ELLIOT, K.C.B., East India Company's Bengal Civil Service, by Prof. JOHN DOWSON, M.R.A.S., Staff College, Sandhurst. Vols. I. and II. With a Portrait of Sir H. M. Elliot. 8vo. pp. xxxii. and 542, x. and 580, cloth. 18s. each.
- Vol. III. 8vo. pp. xii. and 627, cloth. 24s.
- Vol. IV. 8vo. pp. x. and 563 cloth 21s.
- Vol. V. 8vo. pp. xii. and 576, cloth. 21s.
- Vol. VI. 8vo. pp. viii. and 574, cloth. 21s.
- Vol. VII. 8vo. pp. viii. and 574, cloth. 21s.
- Vol. VIII. 8vo.

[In the Press.]

Elliot.—**MÉMOIRS ON THE HISTORY, FOLKLORE, AND DISTRIBUTION OF THE RACES OF THE NORTH WESTERN PROVINCES OF INDIA;** being an amplified Edition of the original Supplementary Glossary of Indian Terms. By the late Sir HENRY M. ELLIOT, K.C.B., of the Hon. East India Company's Bengal Civil Service. Edited, revised, and re-arrang'd, by JOHN BEAMES, M.R.A.S., Bengal Civil Service; Member of the German Oriental Society, of the Asiatic Societies of Paris and Bengal, and of the Philological Society of London. In 2 vols. demy 8vo., pp. xx., 370, and 396, cloth. With two Lithographic Plates, one full-page coloured Map, and three large coloured folding Maps. 36s.

Ellis.—**ON NUMERALS, as Signs of Primeval Unity among Mankind.** By ROBERT ELLIS, B.D., Late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 94. 3s. 6d.

Ellis.—**THE ASIATIC AFFINITIES OF THE OLD ITALIANS.** By ROBERT ELLIS, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and author of "Ancient Routes between Italy and Gaul." Crown 8vo. pp. iv. 156, cloth. 1870. 5s.

Ellis.—**PERUVIA SCYTHICA.** The Quichua Language of Peru: its derivation from Central Asia with the American languages in general, and with the Turanian and Iberian languages of the Old World, including the Basque, the Lycian, and the Pre-Aryan language of Etruria. By ROBERT ELLIS, B.D. 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 219. 1875. 6s.

Ellis.—**ETRUSCAN NUMERALS.** By ROBERT ELLIS, B.D. 8vo. sewed, pp. 52. 2s. 6d.

English and Welsh Languages.—**THE INFLUENCE OF THE ENGLISH AND Welsh Languages upon each other, exhibited in the Vocabularies of the two Tongues.** Intended to suggest the importance to Philologists, Antiquaries, Ethnographers, and others, of giving due attention to the Celtic Branch of the Indo-Germanic Family of Languages. Square, pp. 30, sewed. 1869. 1s.

English Dialect Society's Publications. Subscription, 10s. 6d. per annum.

1873.

1. Series B. Part 1. Reprinted Glossaries. Containing a Glossary of North of England Words, by J. H.; five Glossaries, by Mr. MARSHALL; and a West-Riding Glossary, by Dr. WILLAN. 7s. 6d.
2. Series A. Bibliographical. A List of Books illustrating English Dialects. Part I. Containing a General List of Dictionaries, etc.; and a List of Books relating to some of the Counties of England. 4s.
3. Series C. Original Glossaries. Part I. Containing a Glossary of Swaledale Words. By Captain HARLAND. 4s.

1874.

4. Series D. The History of English Sounds. By H. SWEET, Esq. 4s. 6d.
5. Series B. Part II. Reprinted Glossaries. Containing seven Provincial English Glossaries, from various sources. 7s.
6. Series B. Part III. Ray's Collection of English Words not generally used, from the edition of 1691; together with Thoresby's Letter to Ray, 1703. Re-arranged and newly edited by Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT. 8s.
- 6*. Subscribers to the English Dialect Society for 1874 also receive a copy of 'A Dictionary of the Sussex Dialect.' By the Rev. W. D. PARISH.

1875.

7. Series D. Part II. The Dialect of West Somerset. By F. T. ELWORTHY, Esq. 3s. 6d.
8. Series A. Part II. Containing a List of Books Relating to some of the Counties of England. 6s.
9. Series C. A Glossary of Words used in the Neighbourhood of Whitby. By F. K. ROBINSON. Part I. 7s. 6d.
10. Series C. A Glossary of the Dialect of Lancashire. By J. H. NODAL and G. MILNER. Part I. 3s. 6d.

1876.

11. On the Survival of Early English Words in our Present Dialects. By Dr. R. MORRIS. 6d.
12. Series C. Original Glossaries. Part III. Containing Five Original Provincial English Glossaries. 7s.
13. Series C. A Glossary of Words used in the Neighbourhood of Whitby. By F. K. Robinson. Part II. 6s. 6d.
14. A Glossary of Mid-Yorkshire Words, with a Grammar. By C. CLOUGH ROBINSON. 9s.

1877.

15. A GLOSSARY OF WORDS used in the Wapentakes of Manley and Corringham, Lincolnshire. By EDWARD PEACOCK, F.S.A. 9s. 6d.

Etherington.—THE STUDENT'S GRAMMAR OF THE HINDI LANGUAGE.
By the Rev. W. ETHERINGTON, Missionary, Benares. Second edition. Crown 8vo. pp. xiv., 255, and xiii., cloth. 1873. 12s.

Faber.—A SYSTEMATICAL DIGEST OF THE DOCTRINES OF CONFUCIUS,
according to the ANALECTS, GREAT LEARNING, and DOCTRINE of the MEAN,
with an Introduction on the Authorities upon CONFUCIUS and Confucianism.
By ERNST FABER, Rhenish Missionary. Translated from the German by P.
G. von Moellendorff. 8vo. sewed, pp. viii. and 131. 1875. 12s. 6d.

Facsimiles of Two Papyri found in a Tomb at Thebes. With a
Translation by SAMUEL BIRCH, LL.D., F.S.A., Corresponding Member of
the Institute of France, Academies of Berlin, Herculaneum, etc., and an
Account of their Discovery. By A. HENRY RHIND, Esq., F.S.A., etc. In
large folio, pp. 30 of text, and 16 plates coloured, bound in cloth. 21s.

Fallon.—A NEW HINDUSTANI-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. By S. W.
FALLON, Ph.D. Halle. Parts I. to VII. Roy. 8vo. Price 4s. 6d. each Part.
To be completed in about 25 Parts of 48 pages each Part, forming together One Volume.

Fausböll.—THE DASARATHA-JÁTAKA, being the Buddhist Story of King
Ráma. The original Páli Text, with a Translation and Notes by V. FAUSBÖLL.
8vo. sewed, pp. iv. and 48. 2s. 6d.

Fausböll.—FIVE JÁTAKAS, containing a Fairy Tale, a Comical Story,
and Three Fables. In the original Páli Text, accompanied with a Translation
and Notes. By V. FAUSBÖLL. 8vo. sewed, pp. viii. and 72. 6s.

Fausböll.—TEN JÁTAKAS The Original Páli Text, with a Translation
and Notes. By V. FAUSBÖLL. 8vo. sewed, pp. xiii. and 128. 7s. 6d.

Fausböll.—JÁTAKA. See under JÁTAKA.

Fiske.—MYTHS AND MYTH-MAKERS: Old Tales and Superstitions interpreted by Comparative Mythology. By JOHN FISKE, M.A., Assistant Librarian, and late Lecturer on Philosophy at Harvard University. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 252. 10s. 6d.

Foss.—**NORWEGIAN GRAMMAR**, with Exercises in the Norwegian and English Languages, and a List of Irregular Verbs. By FAITHJOV Foss, Graduate of the University of Norway. Crown 8vo., pp. 50, cloth limp. 2s.

Foster.—**PRE-HISTORIC RACES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA**. By J. W. FOSTER, LL.D., Author of the "Physical Geography of the Mississippi Valley," etc. With 72 Illustrations. 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 416. 14s.

Furnivall.—**EDUCATION IN EARLY ENGLAND**. Some Notes used as Forewords to a Collection of Treatises on "Manners and Meals in the Olden Time," for the Early English Text Society. By FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A., Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Member of Council of the Philological and Early English Text Societies. 8vo. sewed, pp. 74. 1s.

Fu So Mimi Bukuro.—**A BUDGET OF JAPANESE NOTES**. By CAPT. PFOUNDES, of Yokohama. 8vo. sewed, pp. 184. 7s. 6d.

Garrett.—**A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF INDIA**, illustrative of the Mythology, Philosophy, Literature, Antiquities, Arts, Manners, Customs, etc., of the Hindus. By JOHN GARRETT. 8vo. pp. x. and 798. cloth. 28s.

Garrett.—**SUPPLEMENT TO THE ABOVE CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF INDIA**. By JOHN GARRETT, Director of Public Instruction at Mysore. 8vo. cloth, pp. 160. 7s. 6d.

Gautama.—**THE INSTITUTES OF GAUTAMA**. Edited, with an Index of Words, by Adolf. Friederich Stenzler, Ph.D., Prof. of Oriental Languages in the University of Breslau. 8vo. cloth, pp. iv. and 78. 4s. 6d.

Giles.—**CHINESE SKETCHES**. By HERBERT A. GILES, of H.B.M.'s China Consular Service. 8vo. cl., pp. 204. 10s. 6d.

Giles.—**A DICTIONARY OF COLLOQUIAL IDIOMS IN THE MANDARIN DIALECT**. By HERBERT A. GILES. 4to. pp. 65. £1 8s.

Giles.—**SYNOPTICAL STUDIES IN CHINESE CHARACTER**. By HERBERT A. GILES. 8vo. pp. 118. 15s.

Giles.—**CHINESE WITHOUT A TEACHER**. Being a Collection of Easy and Useful Sentences in the Mandarin Dialect. With a Vocabulary. By HERBERT A. GILES. 12mo. pp. 60. 5s.

Giles.—**THE SAN Tzu CHING**; or, Three Character Classic; and the Ch'jen Tsu Wen; or, Thousand Character Essay. Metrically Translated by HERBERT A. GILES. 12mo. pp. 28. 2s. 6d.

God.—**BOOK OF GOD**. By O. 8vo. cloth. Vol. I.: The Apocalypse. pp. 647. 12s. 6d.—Vol II. An Introduction to the Apocalypse, pp. 752. 14s.—Vol. III. A Commentary on the Apocalypse, pp. 854. 16s.

Goldstücker.—**A DICTIONARY, SANSKRIT AND ENGLISH**, extended and improved from the Second Edition of the Dictionary of Professor H. H. WILSON, with his sanction and concurrence. Together with a Supplement, Grammatical Appendices, and an Index, serving as a Sanskrit-English Vocabulary. By THEODOR GOLDSTÜCKER. Parts I. to VI. 4to. pp. 400. 1856-1863. 6s. each.

Goldstücker.—**PANINI**: His Place in Sanskrit Literature. An Investigation of some Literary and Chronological Questions which may be settled by a study of his Work. A separate impression of the Preface to the Facsimile of MS. No. 17 in the Library of Her Majesty's Home Government for India, which contains a portion of the MANAVA-KALPA-SUTRA, with the Commentary of KUMARILA-SWAMIN. By THEODOR GOLDSTÜCKER. Imperial 8vo. pp. 268, cloth. £2 2s.

Goldstücker.—**ON THE DEFICIENCIES IN THE PRESENT ADMINISTRATION OF HINDU LAW**; being a paper read at the Meeting of the East India Association on the 8th June, 1870. By THEODOR GOLDSTÜCKER, Professor of Sanskrit in University College, London, &c. Demy 8vo. pp. 56, sewed. 1s. 6d.

Gover.—THE FOLK-SONGS OF SOUTHERN INDIA. By CHARLES E. GOVER. 8vo. pp. xxiii. and 299, cloth 10s. 6d.

Grammatography.—A MANUAL OF REFERENCE to the Alphabets of Ancient and Modern Languages. Based on the German Compilation of F. BALLHORN. Royal 8vo. pp. 80, cloth. 7s. 6d.

The "Grammatography" is offered to the public as a compendious introduction to the reading of the most important ancient and modern languages. Simple in its design, it will be consulted with advantage by the philological student, the amateur linguist, the bookseller, the corrector of the press, and the diligent compositor.

ALPHABETICAL INDEX.

Afghan (or Pushto).	Czechian (or Bohemian).	Hebrew (current hand).	Polish.
Amharic.	Danish.	Hebrew (Judeo-Ger-	Pushto (or Afghan).
Anglo-Saxon.	Demotic.	Hungarian. [man].	Romaic (Modern Greek
Arabic.	Estrangelo.	Illyrian.	Russian.
Arabic Ligatures.	Ethiopic.	Irish.	Runes.
Aramaic.	Etruscan.	Italian (Old).	Samaritan.
Archaic Characters.	Georgian.	Japanese.	Sanskrit.
Armenian.	German.	Javanese.	Servian.
Assyrian Cuneiform.	Glagolitic.	Lettish.	Slavonic (Old).
Bengali.	Gothic.	Mantschu.	Sorbian (or Wendish).
Bohemian (Czechian).	Greek.	Median Cuneiform.	Swedish.
Bulgis.	Greek Ligatures.	Modern Greek (Romaic).	Syriac.
Burmese.	Greek (Archaic).	Mongolian.	Tamil.
Canarese (or Carnâtaca).	Gujerati (or Guzeratte).	Numidian.	Telugu.
Chinese.	Hieratic.	Old Slavonic (or Cyrillic).	Tibetan.
Coptic.	Hieroglyphics.	Palmyrenian.	Turkish.
Croato-Glagolitic.	Hebrew.	Persian.	Wallachian.
Cufic.	Hebrew (Archaic).	Persian Cuneiform.	Wendish (or Sorbian).
Cyrillie (or Old Slavonic).	Hebrew (Rabbincal).	Phœnician.	Zend.

Grassmann.—WÖRTERBUCH ZUM RIG-VEDA. Von HERMANN GRASSMANN, Professor am Marienstifts-Gymnasium zu Stettin. 8vo. pp. 1775. £1 10s.

Green.—SHAKESPEARE AND THE EMBLEM-WRITERS: an Exposition of their Similarities of Thought and Expression. Preceded by a View of the Emblem-Book Literature down to A.D. 1616. By HENRY GREEN, M.A. In one volume, pp. xvi. 572, profusely illustrated with Woodcuts and Photolith. Plates, elegantly bound in cloth gilt, large medium 8vo. £1 11s. 6d; large imperial 8vo. 1870. £2 12s. 6d.

Grey.—HANDBOOK OF AFRICAN, AUSTRALIAN, AND POLYNESIAN PHILOLOGY, as represented in the Library of His Excellency Sir George Grey, K.C.B., Her Majesty's High Commissioner of the Cape Colony. Clasped, Annotated, and Edited by Sir GEORGE GREY and Dr. H. I. BLEEK.

- Vol. I. Part 1.—South Africa. 8vo. pp. 186. 2s.
- Vol. I. Part 2.—Africa (North of the Tropic of Capricorn). 8vo. pp. 70. 4s.
- Vol. I. Part 3.—Madagascar. 8vo. pp. 24. 2s.
- Vol. II. Part 1.—Australia. 8vo. pp. iv. and 44. 3s.
- Vol. II. Part 2.—Papuan Languages of the Loyalty Islands and New Hebrides, comprising those of the Islands of Nengone, Lifu, Aneitum, Tana, and others. 8vo. p. 12. 1s.
- Vol. II. Part 3.—Fiji Islands and Rotuma (with Supplement to Part II., Papuan Languages, and Part I., Australia). 8vo. pp. 34. 2s.
- Vol. II. Part 4.—New Zealand, the Chatham Islands, and Auckland Islands. 8vo. pp. 76. 7s.
- Vol. II. Part 4 (continuation).—Polynesia and Borneo. 8vo. pp. 77-154. 7s.
- Vol. III. Part 1.—Manuscripts and Incunables. 8vo. pp. viii. and 24. 2s.
- Vol. IV. Part 1.—Early Printed Books. England. 8vo. pp. vi. and 266. 12s.

Grey.—MAORI MEMENTOS: being a Series of Addresses presented by the Native People to His Excellency Sir George Grey, K.C.B., F.R.S. With Introductory Remarks and Explanatory Notes; to which is added a small Collection of Laments, etc. By CH. OLIVER B. DAVIS. 8vo. pp. iv. and 228, cloth. 12s.

Griffin.—THE RAJAS OF THE PUNJAB. Being the History of the Principal States in the Punjab, and their Political Relations with the British Government. By LEPEL H. GRIFFIN, Bengal Civil Service; Under Secretary to the Government of the Punjab, Author of "The Punjab Chiefs," etc. Second edition. Royal 8vo., pp. xiv. and 630. 21s.

Griffis.—THE MIKADO'S EMPIRE. Book I. History of Japan from 660 B.C. to 1872 A.D. Book II. Personal Experiences, Observations, and Studies in Japan, 1870–74. By W. E. GRIFFIS. Illustrated. 8vo cl., pp. 626. £1.

Griffith.—SCENES FROM THE RAMAYANA, MEGHADUTA, ETC. Translated by RALPH T H. GRIFFITH, M.A.; Principal of the Benares College. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. pp. xviii., 244, cloth. 6s.

CONTENTS.—Preface—Ayodhya—Ravan Doomed—The Birth of Rama—The Heir apparent—Manthara's Guile—Dasaratha's Oath—The Step-mother—Mother and Son—The Triumph of Love—Farewell?—The Hermit's Son—The Trial of Truth—The Forest—The Rape of Sita—Rama's Despair—The Messenger Cloud—Khumbakarna—The Suppliant Dove—True Glory—Feed the Poor—The Wise Scholar.

Griffith.—THE RÁMÁYAN OF VÁLMÍKI. Translated into English verse.

By RALPH T. H. GRIFFITH, M.A., Principal of the Benares College. 5 vols.

Vol. I., containing Books I. and II. Demy 8vo. pp. xxxii. 440, cloth. 1870. 18s.

Vol. II., containing Book III., with additional Notes and Index of Names. Demy 8vo. pp. 504, cloth. 18s.

Vol. III. Demy 8vo. pp. v. and 371, cloth. 1872. 15s.

Vol. IV. Demy 8vo. pp. viii. and 432. 1873. 18s.

Vol. V. Demy 8vo. pp. 368, cloth. 1875. 15s.

Grout.—THE ISIZULU: a Grammar of the Zulu Language; accompanied with an Historical Introduction, also with an Appendix. By Rev. LEWIS GROUT. 8vo. pp. lii. and 432, cloth. 21s.

Gubernatis.—ZOOLOGICAL MYTHOLOGY; or, the Legends of Animals.

By ANGELO DE GUBERNATIS, Professor of Sanskrit and Comparative Literature in the Instituto di Studii Superiori e di Perfezionamento at Florence, etc. In 2 vols. 8vo. pp. xxvi. and 432, vii. and 442. 28s.

Gundert.—A MALAYALAM AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY. By Rev. H. GUNDERT, D. Ph. Royal 8vo. pp. viii. and 1116. £2 10s.

Haas.—CATALOGUE OF SANSKRIT AND PALI BOOKS IN THE LIBRARY OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM. By Dr. ERNST HAAS. Printed by Permission of the Trustees of the British Museum. 4to. cloth, pp. 200. £1 1s.

Háfiż of Shíráz.—SELECTIONS FROM HIS POEMS. Translated from the Persian by HERMAN BICKNELL. With Preface by A. S. BICKNELL. Demy 4to., pp. xx. and 384, printed on fine stout plate-paper, with appropriate Oriental Bordering in gold and colour, and Illustrations by J. R. HERBERT, R.A. £2 2s.

Haldeman.—PENNSYLVANIA DUTCH: a Dialect of South Germany with an Infusion of English. By S. S. HALDEMAN, A.M., Professor of Comparative Philology in the University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia. 8vo. pp. viii. and 70, cloth. 1872. 3s. 6d.

Hall.—MODERN ENGLISH. By FITZEDWARD HALL, M.A., Hon. D.C.L., Oxon. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 394. 10s. 6d.

Halli.—ON ENGLISH ADJECTIVES IN -ABLE, with Special Reference to RELIABLE. By FITZEDWARD HALL, C.E., M.A., Hon. D.C.L. Oxon.; formerly Professor of Sanskrit Language and Literature, and of Indian Jurisprudence, in King's College, London. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 238. 7s. 6d.

Hans Breitmann Ballads.—See under LELAND.

Hardy.—CHRISTIANITY AND BUDDHISM COMPARED. By the late REV. R. SPENCE HARDY, Hon. Member Royal Asiatic Society. 8vo. sd. pp. 138. 6s.

Hassoun.—THE DIWÁN OF HATIM TAI. An Old Arabic Poet of the Sixth Century of the Christian Era. Edited by R. HASSEOUN. With Illustrations. 4to. pp. 43. 3s. 6d.

Haswell.—GRAMMATICAL NOTES AND VOCABULARY OF THE PEGUAN LANGUAGE. To which are added a few pages of Phrases, etc. By Rev. J. M. HASWELL. 8vo. pp. xvi. and 160. 15s.

Haug.—THE BOOK OF ARDA VIRAF. The Pahlavi text prepared by Destur Hoshangji Jamaspji Asa. Revised and collated with further MSS., with an English translation and Introduction, and an Appendix containing the Texts and Translations of the Gosht-i Fryano and Hadokht Nask. By MARTIN HAUG, Ph.D., Professor of Sanskrit and Comparative Philology at the University of Munich. Assisted by E. W. West, Ph.D. Published by order of the Bombay Government. 8vo. sewed, pp. lxxx., v., and 316. £1 5s.

Haug.—A LECTURE ON AN ORIGINAL SPEECH OF ZOROASTER (Yasna 45), with remarks on his age. By MARTIN HAUG, Ph.D. 8vo. pp. 28, sewed. Bombay, 1865. 2s.

Haug.—THE AITAREYA BRAHMANAM OF THE RIG VEDA: containing the Earliest Speculations of the Brahmans on the meaning of the Sacrificial Prayers, and on the Origin, Performance, and Sense of the Rites of the Vedic Religion. Edited, Translated, and Explained by MARTIN HAUG, Ph.D., Superintendent of Sanskrit Studies in the Poona College, etc., etc. In 2 Vols. Crown 8vo. Vol. I. Contents, Sanskrit Text, with Preface, Introductory Essay, and a Map of the Sacrificial Compound at the Soma Sacrifice, pp. 312. Vol. II. Translation with Notes, pp. 544. £2 2s.

Haug.—AN OLD ZAND-PAHLAVI GLOSSARY. Edited in the Original Characters, with a Transliteration in Roman Letters, an English Translation, and an Alphabetical Index. By DESTUR HOSHENGJI JAMASPJI. High-priest of the Parsis in Malwa, India. Revised with Notes and Introduction by MARTIN HAUG, Ph.D., late Superintendent of Sanscrit Studies in the Poona College, Foreign Member of the Royal Bavarian Academy. Published by order of the Government of Bombay. 8vo. sewed, pp. lvi. and 132. 15s.

Haug.—AN OLD PAHLAVI-PAZAND GLOSSARY. Edited, with an Alphabetical Index, by DESTUR HOSHANGJI JAMASPJI ASA, High Priest of the Parsis in Malwa, India. Revised and Enlarged, with an Introductory Essay on the Pahlavi Language, by MARTIN HAUG, Ph.D. Published by order of the Government of Bombay. 8vo. pp. xvi. 152, 268, sewed. 1670. 28s.

Heaviside.—AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES; or, the New World the Old, and the Old World the New. By JOHN T. C. HEAVISIDE. 8vo. pp. 46, sewed. 1s. 6d.

Hepburn.—A JAPANESE AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY. With an English and Japanese Index. By J. C. HEPBURN, M.D., LL.D. Second edition. Imperial 8vo. cloth, pp. xxii., 632 and 201. £8 8s.

Hepburn.—JAPANESE-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-JAPANESE DICTIONARY. By J. C. HEPBURN, M.D., LL.D. Abridged by the Author from his larger work. Small 4to. cloth, pp. vi. and 206. 1873. 18s.

Hernisz.—A GUIDE TO CONVERSATION IN THE ENGLISH AND CHINESE LANGUAGES, for the use of Americans and Chinese in California and elsewhere. By STANISLAS HERNISZ. Square 8vo. pp. 27+, sewed. 10s. 6d.

The Chinese characters contained in this work are from the collections of Chinese groups, engraved on steel, and cast into moveable types, by Mr. Marcellin Legrand, engraver of the Imperial Printing Office at Paris. They are used by most of the missions to China.

Hincks.—SPECIMEN CHAPTERS OF AN ASSYRIAN GRAMMAR. By the late Rev. E. HINCKS, D.D., Hon. M.R.A.S. 8vo., pp. 44, sewed. 1s.

Hodgson.—ESSAYS ON THE LANGUAGES, LITERATURE, AND RELIGION OF NEPAL AND TIBET; together with further Papers on the Geography, Ethnology, and Commerce of those Countries. By B. H. HODGSON, late British Minister at Nepal. Reprinted with Corrections and Additions from

"Illustrations of the Literature and Religion of the Buddhists," Serampore, 1841; and "Selections from the Records of the Government of Bengal," No. XXVII, Calcutta, 1857. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. 288. 14s.

Hoffmann.—SHOPPING DIALOGUES, in Japanese, Dutch, and English. By Professor J. HOFFMANN. Oplong 8vo. pp. xiii. and 44, sewed. 3s.

Hoffmann, J. J.—A JAPANESE GRAMMAR. Second Edition. Large 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 368, with two plates. £1 1s.

Holbein Society.—Subscription £1 1s. per annum. A List of Publications to be had on application.

Hopkins.—ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR OF THE TURKISH LANGUAGE. With a few Easy Exercises. By F. L. HOPKINS. M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. 48. •3s. 6d.

Howse.—A GRAMMAR OF THE CREE LANGUAGE. With which is combined an analysis of the Chippeway Dialect. By JOSEPH HOWSE, Esq., F.R.G.S. 8vo. pp. xx. and 324, cloth. 7s. 6d.

Hunter.—A COMPARATIVE DICTIONARY OF THE LANGUAGES OF INDIA AND HIGH ASIA, with a Dissertation, based on The Hodgson Lists, Official Records, and Manuscripts. By W. W. HUNTER, B.A., M.R.A.S., Honorary Fellow, Ethnological Society, of Her Majesty's Bengal Civil Service. Folio, pp. vi. and 224, cloth. £2 2s.

Hunter.—STATISTICAL ACCOUNT OF THE PROVINCES OF BENGAL. By W. W. HUNTER, LL.D., Director-General of Statistics to the Government of India, etc., Author of 'The Annals of Rural Bengal,' etc. In 6 vols. Demy 8vo. [Shortly.]

Ikhwánu-s Safá.—IHKWÁNU-S SAFÁ; or, BROTHERS OF PURITY. Describing the Contention between Men and Beasts as to the Superiority of the Human Race. Translated from the Hindustáni by Professor J. DOWSON, Staff College, Sandhurst. Crown 8vo. pp. viii. and 156, cloth. 7s.

Indian Antiquary (The).—A Journal of Oriental Research in Archaeology, History, Literature, Languages, Philosophy, Religion, Folklore, etc. Edited by JAMES BURGESS, M.R.A.S., F.R.G.S. 4to. Published 12 numbers per annum. Subscription £2.

Inman.—ANCIENT PAGAN AND MODERN CHRISTIAN SYMBOLISM EXPOSED AND EXPLAINED. By THOMAS INMAN, M.D. Second Edition. With Illustrations. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xl. and 148. 1874. 7s. 6d.

International Numismata Orientalia. See under Marsden.

Jaiminiya-Nyâya-Mâlâ-Vistara—See under AUCTORES SANSKRITI.

Jataka (The), together with its Commentary. Now first published in Pali, by V. FAUSBÖLL, with a Translation by R. C. CHILDEWS, late of the Ceylon Civil Service. To be completed in five volumes. Text. Vol. I. Part I. Roy. 8vo. sewed, pp. 224. 7s. 6d.

Jenkins's Vest-Pocket Lexicon.—AN ENGLISH DICTIONARY of all except Familiar Words; including the principal Scientific and Technical Terms, and Foreign Moneys, Weights and Measures. By JABEZ JENKINS. 64mo., pp. 564, cloth. 1s. 6d.

Johnson.—ORIENTAL RELIGIONS, AND THEIR RELATION TO UNIVERSAL RELIGION. India. By SAMUEL JOHNSON. Third Edition. Large 8vo., pp. vi. and 802, handsomely bound in cloth. £1 5s.

Kalid-i-Afghani.—TRANSLATION OF THE KALID-I-AFGHANI, the Text-book for the Pakhto Examination, with Notes, Historical, Geographical, Grammatical, and Explanatory. By TREVOR CHICHELE PLOWDEN. Imp. 8vo. pp. xx. and 406, with a Map. Lahore, 1875. £2 2s.

Kâśikâ.—A COMMENTARY ON PÂNINI'S GRAMMATICAL APHORISMS. . By PANDIT JAYÂDITYA. Edited by PANDIT BÂLA SÂSTRÎ, Prof. Sansk. Coll., Benares. First part, 8vo. pp. 490. 16s.

Kellogg.—A GRAMMAR OF THE HINDI LANGUAGE, in which are treated the Standard Hindî, Braj, and the Eastern Hindî of the Ramayan of Tulsi Das ; also the Colloquial Dialects of Marwar, Kumaon, Avadh, Baghelkhand, Bhojpur, etc., with Copious Philological Notes. By the Rev. S. H. KELLOGG, M.A. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. 400. 21s.

Kern.—THE ÂRYABHATIYA, with the Commentary Bhatađipikâ of Paramadiçvara, edited by Dr. H. KERN. 4to. pp. xii. and 107. 9s.

Kern.—THE BRHAT-SANHITÂ ; or, Complete System of Natural Astrology of Varâha-Mihira. Translated from Sanskrit into English by Dr. H. KERN, Professor of Sanskrit at the University of Leyden. Part I. 8vo. pp. 50, stitched. Parts 2 and 3 pp. 51-154. Part 4 pp. 155-210. Part 5 pp. 211-266. Part 6 pp. 267-330. Price 2s. each part. [Will be completed in Nine Parts.]

Khirad-Afroz (The Illuminator of the Understanding). By Maulavi Hafiz'u'd-din. A new edition of the Hindûstâni Text, carefully revised, with Notes, Critical and Explanatory. By EDWARD B. EASTWICK, M.P., F.R.S., F.S.A., M.R.A.S., Professor of Hindûstâni at the late East India Company's College at Haileybury. 8vo. cloth, pp. xiv. and 321. 18s.

Kidd.—CATALOGUE OF THE CHINESE LIBRARY OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY. By the Rev. S. KIDD. 8vo. pp. 58, sewed. 1s.

Kielhorn.—A GRAMMAR OF THE SANSKRIT LANGUAGE. By F. KIELHORN, Ph.D., Superintendent of Sanskrit Studies in Deccan College. Registered under Act xxv. of 1867. Demy 8vo. pp. xvi. 260. cloth. 1870. 10s. 6d.

Kielhorn.—KÂTYÂYANA AND PATANJALI. Their Relation to each other and to Panini. By F. KIELHORN, Ph. D., Prof. of Orient. Lang. Poona. 8vo. pp. 64. 1876. 3s. 6d.

Kilgour.—THE HEBREW OR IBERIAN RACE, including the Pelasgians, the Phenicians, the Jews, the British, and others. By HENRY KILGOUR. 8vo. sewed, pp. 76. 1872. 2s. 6d.

Kistner.—BUDDHA AND HIS DOCTRINES. A Bibliographical Essay. By OTTO KISTNER. Imperial 8vo., pp. iv. and 32, sewed. 2s. 6d.

Koch.—A HISTORICAL GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By C. F. KOCH. Translated into English. Edited, Enlarged, and Annotated by the Rev. R. MOREIS, LL.D., M.A. [Nearly ready.]

Koran (The). Arabic text, lithographed in Oudh, A.H. 1284 (1867). 16mo. pp. 942. 7s. 6d.

Koran (The).—See also Sale.

Kroeger.—THE MINNESINGER OF GERMANY. By A. E. KROEGER. 12mo. cloth, pp. vi. and 284. 7s.

CONTENTS.—Chapter I. The Minnesinger and the Minnesong.—II. The Minnelay.—III. The Divine Minnesong.—IV. Walther von der Vogelweide.—V. Ulrich von Lichtenstein.—VI. The Metrical Romances of the Minnesinger and Gottfried von Strassburg's 'Tristan and Isolde.'

Lacombe.—DICTIONNAIRE ET GRAMMAIRE DE LA LANGUE DES CRIS, par le Rév. Père ALB. LACOMBE. 8vo. paper, pp. xx. and 713, iv. and 190. 21s.

Laghū Kaumudī. A Sanskrit Grammar. By Varadarâja. With an English Version, Commentary, and References. By JAMES R. BALLANTYNÉ, LL.D., Principal of the Sanskrit College, Benares. 8vo. pp. xxxvi. and 424, cloth. £1 11s. 6d.

Land.—THE PRINCIPLES OF HEBREW GRAMMAR. By J. P. N. LAND, Professor of Logic and Metaphysic in the University of Leyden. Translated from the Dutch by REGINALD LANE POOLE, Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. Sounds. Part II. Words. Crown 8vo. pp. xx. and 220, cloth. 7s. 6d.

Legge.—INAUGURAL LECTURE ON THE CONSTITUTING OF A CHINESE CHAIR in the University of Oxford. Delivered in the Sheldonian Theatre, Oct. 27th, 1876; by Rev. JAMES LEGGE, M.A., LL.D., Professor of the Chinese Language and Literature at Oxford. 8vo. pp. 28, sewed. 6d.

Legge.—THE CHINESE CLASSICS. With a Translation, Critical and Exegetical Notes, Prolegomena, and Copious Indexes. By JAMES LEGGE, D.D., of the London Missionary Society. In seven vols.

Vol. I. containing Confucian Analects, the Great Learning, and the Doctrine of the Mean. 8vo. pp. 526, cloth. £2 2s.

Vol. II., containing the Works of Mencius. 8vo. pp. 634, cloth. £2 2s.

Vol. III. Part I. containing the First Part of the Shoo-King, or the Books of Tang, the Books of Yu, the Books of Hea, the Books of Shang, and the Prolegomena. Royal 8vo. pp. viii. and 280, cloth. £2 2s.

Vol. III. Part II. containing the Fifth Part of the Shoo-King, or the Books of Chow, and the Indexes. Royal 8vo. pp. 281—736, cloth. £2 2s.

Vol. IV. Part I. containing the First Part of the She-King, or the Lessons from the States; and the Prolegomena. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. 182—244. £2 2s.

Vol. IV. Part II. containing the First Part of the She-King, or the Minor Odes of the Kingdom, the Greater Odes of the Kingdom, the Sacrificial Odes and Praise-Songs, and the Indexes. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. 540. £2 2s.

Vol. V. Part I. containing Dukes Yin, Hwan, Chwang, Min, He, Wan, Seuen, and Ch'ing; and the Prolegomena. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. xii., 148 and 410. £2 2s.

Vol. V. Part II. Contents:—Dukes Seang, Ch'aon, Ting, and Gal, with Tso's Appendix, and the Indexes. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. 526. £2 2s.

Legge.—THE CHINESE CLASSICS. Translated into English. With Preliminary Essays and Explanatory Notes. By JAMES LEGGE, D.D., LL.D. Vol. I. The Life and Teachings of Confucius. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. vi. and 338. 10s. 6d.

Vol. II. The Life and Works of Mencius. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. 412. 12s.

Vol. III. The She King, or The Book of Poetry. Crown 8vo., cloth, pp. viii. and 432. 12s.

Leigh.—THE RELIGION OF THE WORLD. By H. STONE LEIGH. 12mo. pp. xii. 66, cloth. 1869. 2s. 6d.

Leland.—THE ENGLISH GIPSIES AND THEIR LANGUAGE. By CHARLES G. LELAND. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. 276. 7s. 6d.

Leland.—THE BREITMANN BALLADS. THE ONLY AUTHORIZED EDITION. Complete in 1 vol., including Nineteen Ballads illustrating his Travels in Europe (never before printed), with Comments by Fritz Schwackenhammer. By CHARLES G. LELAND. Crown 8vo. handsomely bound in cloth, pp. xxviii. and 292. 6s.

HANS BREITMANN'S PARTY. With other Ballads. By CHARLES G. LELAND. Tenth Edition. Square, pp. xvi. and 74, cloth. 2s. 6d.

HANS BREITMANN'S CHRISTMAS. With other Ballads. By CHARLES G. LELAND. Second edition. Square, pp. 80, sewed. 1s.

HANS BREITMANN AS A POLITICIAN. By CHARLES G. LELAND. Second edition. Square, pp. 72, sewed. 1s.

HANS BREITMANN IN CHURCH. With other Ballads. By CHARLES G. Leland. With an Introduction and Glossary. Second edition. Square, pp. 80, sewed. 1s.

HANS BREITMANN AS AN UHLAN. Six New Ballads, with a Glossary. Square, pp. 72, sewed. 1s.

Leland.—**FUSANG**; or, the Discovery of America by Chinese Buddhist Priests in the Fifth Century. By CHARLES G. LELAND. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. xix and 212. 7s. 6d.

Leland.—**ENGLISH GIPSY SONGS**. In Rommany, with Metrical English Translations. By CHARLES G. LELAND, Author of "The English Gipsies," etc.; Prof. E. H. PALMER; and JANET TUCKEY. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 276. 7s. 6d.

Leland.—**PIDGIN-ENGLISH SING-SONG**; or Songs and Stories in the China-English Dialect. With a Vocabulary. By CHARLES G. LELAND. Fcap, 8vo. cl., pp. viii. and 140. 1876. 5s.

Leonowens.—**THE ENGLISH GOVERNESS AT THE SIAMESE COURT**—being Recollections of six years in the Royal Palace at Bangkok. By ANNA HARRIETTE LEONOWENS. With Illustrations from Photographs presented to the Author by the King of Siam. 8vo. cloth, pp. x. and 332. 1870. 12s.

Leonowens.—**THE ROMANCE OF SIAMESE HAREM LIFE**. By Mrs. ANNA H. LEONOWENS, Author of "The English Governess at the Siamese Court." With 17 Illustrations, principally from Photographs, by the permission of J. Thomson, Esq. Crown 8vo cloth, pp. viii. and 278. 14s.

Literature.—**TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF LITERATURE OF the United Kingdom**. First Series, 6 parts in 3 vols. 4to. plates; 1827-39. Second Series, 10 vols. or 30 parts, and vol. xi. parts 1 and 2, 8vo. plates, 1843-76. A complete set, as far as published, £10 10s. A list of the contents of the volumes and parts on application.

Lobscheid.—**ENGLISH AND CHINESE DICTIONARY**, with the Punti and Mandarin Pronunciation. By the Rev. W. LOBSCHEID, Knight of Francis Joseph, C.M.I.R.G.S.A., N.Z.B.S.V., etc. Folio, pp. viii. and 2016. In Four Parts. £8 8s.

Lobscheid.—**CHINESE AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY**, Arranged according to the Radicals. By the Rev. W. LOBSCHEID, Knight of Francis Joseph, C.M.I.R.G.S.A., N.Z.B.S.V., &c. 1 vol. imp. 8vo. double columns, pp. 600, bound. £2 8s.

Ludewig (Hermann E.)—**THE LITERATURE OF AMERICAN ABORIGINAL LANGUAGES**. With Additions and Corrections by Professor WM. W. TURNER. Edited by NICOLAS TRÜBNER. 8vo. fly and general Title, 2 leaves; Dr Ludewig's Preface, pp. v.—viii.; Editor's Preface, pp. iv.—xi; Biographical Memoir of Dr. Ludewig, pp. xiii.—xiv.; and Introductory Biographical Notices, pp. xiv.—xxiv., followed by List of Contents. Then follow Dr Ludewig's Bibliotheca Glottica, alphabetically arranged, with Additions by the Editor, pp. 1—209; Professor Turner's Additions, with those of the Editor to the same, also alphabetically arranged, pp. 210—246; Index, pp. 247—256; and List of Errata, pp. 257, 258. Handsomely bound in cloth. 10s. 6d.

Luzzatto.—**GRAMMAR OF THE BIBLICAL CHALDAIC LANGUAGE AND THE TALMUD BABYLONICAL IDIOMS**. By S. D. LUZZATTO. Translated from the Italian by J. S. GOLDAMMER. Cr. 8vo. cl., pp. 122. 7s. 6d.

Macgowan.—**A MANUAL OF THE AMOY COLLOQUIAL**. By Rev. J. MACGOWAN, of the London Missionary Society. 8vo. sewed, pp. xvii. and 200. Amoy. 1871. £1 1s.

Maclay and Baldwin.—**AN ALPHABETIC DICTIONARY OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE IN THE FOOCHOW DIALECT**. By Rev. R. S. MACLAY, D.D., of the Methodist Episcopal Mission, and Rev. C. C. BALDWIN, A.M., of the American Board of Mission. Fvo. half-bound, pp. 1132. Foochow, 1871. £4 4s.

Mahabharata. Translated into Hindi for MÁDAN MHUN BHATT, by KRISHNACHANDRADHARMDHIKARI of Benares. (Containing all but the Harivansá.) 3 vols. 8vo. cloth, pp. 574, 810, and 1106. £3 3s.

Maha-Vira-Charita; or, the Adventures of the Great Hero Rama. An Indian Drama in Seven Acts. Translated into English Prose from the Sanskrit of Bhavabhüti. By JOHN PICKFORD, M.A. Crown 8vo. cloth. 5s.

Maino-i-Khard (The Book of the). — The Pazand and Sanskrit Texts (in Roman characters) as arranged by Neriosengh Dhaval, in the fifteenth century. With an English translation, a Glossary of the Pazand texts, containing the Sanskrit, Rosian, and Pahlavi equivalents, a sketch of Pazand Grammar, and an Introduction. By E. W. WEST. 8vo. sewed, pp. 484. 1871. 16s.

Maltby. — A PRACTICAL HANDBOOK OF THE URIBA OR ODIYA LANGUAGE. 8vo. pp. xiii. and 201. 1874. 10s. 6d.

Manava-Kalpa-Sutra; being a portion of this ancient Work on Vaidik Rites, together with the Commentary of KUMARILA-SWAMIN. A Facsimile of the MS. No. 17, in the Library of Her Majesty's Home Government for India. With a Preface by THEODOR GOLDSÜCKER. Oblong folio, pp. 268 of letter-press and 121 leaves of facsimiles. Cloth. £4 4s.

Manipulus Vocabulorum; A Rhyming Dictionary of the English Language. By Peter Levins (1570) Edited, with an Alphabetical Index, by HENRY B. WHEATLEY. 8vo. pp. xvi. and 370, cloth. 14s.

Manning. — AN INQUIRY INTO THE CHARACTER AND ORIGIN OF THE POSSESSIVE AUGMENT in English and in Cognate Dialects. By the late JAMES MANNING, Q.A.S., Recorder of Oxford. 8vo. pp. iv. and 90. 2s.

March. — A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE ANGLO-SAXON LANGUAGE; in which its forms are illustrated by those of the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Gothic, Old Saxon, Old Friesic, Old Norse, and Old High-German. By FRANCIS A. MARCH, LL.D. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xi. and 253. 1873. 10s.

Markham. — QUICHUA GRAMMAR and DICTIONARY. Contributions towards a Grammar and Dictionary of Quichua, the Language of the Yncas of Peru; collected by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, F.S.A., Corr. Mem. of the University of Chile. Author of "Cuzco and Lima," and "Travels in Peru and India." In one vol. crown 8vo., pp. 223, cloth. £1. 11s. 6d.

Markham. — OLLANTA: A DRAMA IN THE QUICHUA LANGUAGE. Text, Translation, and Introduction, By CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, F.R.G.S. Crown 8vo., pp. 128, cloth. 7s. 6d.

Markham. — A MEMOIR OF THE LADY ANA DE OSORIO, Countess of Chinchon, and Vice-Queen of Peru, A.D. 1629-39. With a Plea for the Correct Spelling of the Chinchona Genus. By CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S., Commendador da Real Ordem de Christo, Socius Academice Cæsareæ Naturæ Curiosorum Cognomen Chinchon. Small 4to, pp. 112. With a Map, 2 Plates, and numerous Illustrations. Roxburghe binding. 28s.

Markham. — THE NARRATIVES OF THE MISSION OF GEORGE BOGLE, B.C.S., to the Teshu Luma, and of the Journey of Thomas Manning to Lhasa. Edited, with Notes and Introduction, and lives of Mr. Bogle and Mr. Manning, by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S. Demy 8vo., with Maps and Illustrations, pp. clxi. 314, cl. 21s.

Marsden's Numismata Orientalia. New International Edition. Part I. Ancient Indian Weights. By EDWARD THOMAS, F.R.S., etc., etc. With a Plate and Map of the India of Manu. Royal 4to. sewed, pp. 84. 9s. 6d.

Part II. Coins of the Urtuki Turkumans. By STANLEY LANE POOLE. Royal 4to. pp. xii. and 44, and 6 plates. 9s.

Part III. The Coinage of Lydia and Persia, from the Earliest Times to the Fall of the Dynasty of the Achæmenides. By BARCLAY V. HEAD, Assistant-Keeper of Coins, British Museum. 4to. pp. viii. and 56, with three autotype plates.

Part IV. The Coins of the Tuluni Dynasty. By EDWARD THOMAS ROGERS. 4to. pp. iv. and 22, and 1 plate. Just ready.

Part V. The Parthian Coinage, By PERCY GARDNER, M.A. 4to. 7 Autotype Plates and about 60 pages. Nearly ready.

Mason.—BURMAH: its People and Natural Productions; or Notes on the Nations, Fauna, Flora, and Minerals of Tenasserim, Pegu, and Burmah. By Rev. F. MASON, D.D., M.R.A.S., Corresponding Member of the American Oriental Society, of the Boston Society of Natural History, and of the Lyceum of Natural History, New York. 8vo. pp. xviii. and 914, cl. Rangoon, 1860. 30s.

Mason.—THE PALI TEXT OF KACHCHAYANO'S GRAMMAR, WITH ENGLISH ANNOTATIONS. By FRANCIS MASON, D.D. I. The Text Aphorisms, 1 to 673. II. The English Annotations, including the various Readings of six independent Burmese Manuscripts, the Sinigalese Text on Verbs, and the Cambodian Text on Syntax. To which is added a Concordance of the Aphorisms. In Two Parts. 8vo. sewed, pp. 208, 75, and 28. Toongoo, 1871. £1 11s. 6d.

Mathews.—ABRAHAM BEN EZRA'S UNEDITED COMMENTARY ON THE CANTICLES, the Hebrew Text after two MS., with English Translation by H. J. MATHEWS, B.A., Exeter College, Oxford. 8vo. cl. limp, pp. x., 34, 24. 2s. 6d.

Mathuráprasáda Misra.—A TRILINGUAL DICTIONARY, being a comprehensive Lexicon in English, Urdú, and Hindí, exhibiting the Syllabication, Pronunciation, and Etymology of English Words, with their Explanation in English, and in Urdú and Hindí in the Roman Character. By MATHURÁPRASÁDA MISRA, Second Master, Queen's College, Benares. 8vo. pp. xv. and 1330, cloth. Benares, 1865. £2 2s.

Mayers.—ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE LAMAIST SYSTEM IN TIBET, drawn from Chinese Sources. By WILLIAM FREDERICK MAYERS, Esq., of Her Britannic Majesty's Consular Service, China. 8vo. pp. 24, sewed. 1869. 1s. 6d.

Mayers.—THE CHINESE READER'S MANUAL. A Handbook of Biographical, Historical, Mythological, and General Literary Reference. By W. F. MAYERS, Chinese Secretary to H. B. M.'s Legation at Peking, F.R.G.S., etc., etc. Demy 8vo. pp. xxiv. and 440. £1 5s.

Medhurst.—CHINESE DIALOGUES, QUESTIONS, and FAMILIAR SENTENCES, literally translated into English, with a view to promote commercial intercourse and assist beginners in the Language. By the late W. H. MEDHURST, D.D. A new and enlarged Edition. 8vo. pp. 226. 18s.

Megha-Duta (The). (Cloud-Messenger.) By Kálidásá. Translated from the Sanskrit into English verse, with Notes and Illustrations. By the late H. H. WILSON, M.A., F.R.S., Boden Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Oxford, etc., etc. The Vocabulary by FRANCIS JOHNSON, sometime Professor of Oriental Languages at the College of the Honourable the East India Company, Haileybury. New Edition. 4to. cloth, pp. xi. and 180. 10s. 6d.

Memoirs read before the ANTHROPOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF LONDON, 1863 1864. 8vo., pp. 542, cloth. 21s.

Memoirs read before the ANTHROPOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF LONDON, 1865-6. Vol. II. 8vo., pp. x. 464, cloth. 21s.

Mills.—THE INDIAN SAINT; or, Buddha and Buddhiism.—A Sketch Historical and Critical. By C. D. B. MILLS. 8vo. cl., pp. 192. 7s. 6d.

Minocheherji.—PAHLAVI, GUJARÁTI, AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY. By JAMASPJ DASTUR MINOCHHEHERJI JAMASP ASANA, Fellow of the University of Bombay, and Member of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society. Vol. I. (To be completed in three volumes.) Demy 8vo. pp. clxxix and 168, with Photographic Portrait of the Author. 14s.

Mitra.—THE ANTIQUITIES OF ORISSA. By RAJENDRALALA MITRA. Vol. I. Published under Orders of the Government of India. Folio, cloth, pp. 180. With a Map and 36 Plates. £4 4s.

Moellendorff.—MANUAL OF CHINESE BIBLIOGRAPHY, being a List of Works and Essays relating to China. By P. G. and O. F. VON MOELLENDORFF, Interpreters to H.I.G.M.'s Consulates at Shanghai and Tientsin. 8vo. pp. viii. and 378. £1 10s.

Molesworth.—A DICTIONARY, MARATHI and ENGLISH. Compiled by J. T. MOLESWORTH, assisted by GEORGE and THOMAS CANDY. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. By J. T. MOLESWORTH. Royal 4to. pp. xxx and 922, boards. Bombay, 1857. £3 3s.

Molesworth.—A COMPENDIUM OF MOLESWORTH'S MARATHI AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY. By BABA PADMANJI. Second Edition. Revised and Enlarged. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xx. and 624. 21s.

Morley.—A DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE of the HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS in the ARABIC and PERSIAN LANGUAGES preserved in the Library of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland. By WILLIAM H. MORLEY, M.R.A.S. 8vo. pp. viii. and 160, sewed. London, 1854. 2s. 6d.

Morrison.—A DICTIONARY OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE. By the Rev. R. MORRISON, D.D. Two vols. Vol. I. pp. x. and 762; Vol. II. pp. 829, cloth. Shanghai, 1865. £6 6s.

Muhammed.—THE LIFE OF MUHAMMED. Based on Muhammed Ibn Ishak. By Abd El Malik Ibn Hisham. Edited by Dr. FERDINAND WÜSTENFELD. The Arabic Text. 8vo. pp. 1026, sewed. Price 21s. Introduction, Notes, and Index in German. 8vo. pp. lxxii. and 266, sewed. 7s. 6d. Each part sold separately.

The test based on the Manuscripts of the Berlin, Leipsic, Gotha and Leyden Libraries, has been carefully revised by the learned editor, and printed with the utmost exactness.

Muir.—ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS, on the Origin and History of the People of India, their Religion and Institutions. Collected, Translated, and Illustrated by JOHN MUIR, Esq., D.C.L., LL.D., Ph.D.

Vol. I. Mythical and Legendary Accounts of the Origin of Caste, with an Inquiry into its existence in the Vedic Age. Second Edition, re-written and greatly enlarged. 8vo. pp. xx. 532, cloth. 1868. 21s.

Vol. II. The Trans-Himalayan Origin of the Hindus, and their Affinity with the Western Branches of the Aryan Race. Second Edition, revised, with Additions. 8vo. pp. xxxii. and 512, cloth. 1871. 21s.

Vol. III. The Vedas: Opinions of their Authors, and of later Indian Writers, on their Origin, Inspiration, and Authority. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. 8vo. pp. xxxii. 312, cloth. 1868. 16s.

Vol. IV. Comparison of the Vedic with the later representations of the principal Indian Deities. Second Edition Revised. 8vo. pp. xvi. and 524, cloth. 1873. 21s.

Vol. V. Contributions to a Knowledge of the Cosmogony, Mythology, Religious Ideas, Life and Manners of the Indians in the Vedic Age. 8vo. pp. xvi. 492, cloth, 1870. 21s.

Müller.—THE SACRED HYMNS OF THE BRAHMINS, as preserved to us in the oldest collection of religious poetry, the Rig-Veda-Sanhita, translated and explained. By F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., Fellow of All Souls' College; Professor of Comparative Philology at Oxford; Foreign Member of the Institute of France, etc., etc. Volume I. Hymns to the Maruts or the Storm Gods. 8vo. pp. clii. and 264. 12s. 6d.

Müller.—THE HYMNS OF THE RIG-VEDA in the Samhita and Pada Texts. Reprinted from the Editio Princeps. By F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., etc. Second edition. With the Two Texts on Parallel Pages. In 2 vols. 8vo., pp. 1700, sewed, 32s. [In the press.]

Müller.—**LECTURE ON BUDDHIST NIHILISM.** By F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., Professor of Comparative Philology in the University of Oxford; Member of the French Institute, etc. Delivered before the General Meeting of the Association of German Philologists, at Kiel, 28th September, 1869. (Translated from the German.) Sewed. 1869. 1s.

Nagananda; OR THE JOY OF THE SNAKE-WORLD. A Buddhist Drama in Five Acts. Translated into English Prose, with Explanatory Notes, from the Sanskrit of Sri-Harsha-Deva. By PALMER BOYD, B.A., Sanskrit Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. With an Introduction by Professor COWELL. Crown 8vo., pp. xvi. and 100, cloth. 4s. 6d.

Nalopákhyanam.—**STORY OF NALA;** an Episode of the Mahá-Bhárata. The Sanskrit Text, with Vocabulary, Analysis, and Introduction. By MONIER WILLIAMS, M.A. The Metrical Translation by the Very Rev. H. H. MILMAN, D.D. 8vo. cl. 15s.

Naradiya Dharma Sastram; or, THE INSTITUTES OF NARADA. Translated for the First Time from the unpublished Sanskrit original. By DR. JULIUS JOLLY, University, Wurzburg. With a Preface, Notes chiefly critical, an Index of Quotations from Narada in the principal Indian Digests, and a general Index. Crown 8vo., pp. xxxv. 144, cloth. 10s. 6d.

Newman.—**A DICTIONARY OF MODERN ARABIC**—1. Anglo-Arabic Dictionary. 2. Anglo-Arabic Vocabulary. 3. Arabo-English Dictionary. By F. W. NEWMAN, Emeritus Professor of University College, London. In 2 vols. crown 8vo., pp. xvi. and 376—464, cloth. £1 1s.

Newman.—**A HANDBOOK OF MODERN ARABIC,** consisting of a Practical Grammar, with numerous Examples, Dialogues, and Newspaper Extracts, in a European Type. By F. W. NEWMAN, Emeritus Professor of University College, London; formerly Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford. Post 8vo. pp. xx. and 192, cloth. London, 1866. 6s.

Newman.—**THE TEXT OF THE IGUVINE INSCRIPTIONS,** with interlinear Latin Translation and Notes. By FRANCIS W. NEWMAN, late Professor of Latin at University College, London. 8vo. pp. xvi. and 54, sewed. 2s.

Newman.—**ORTHOËPY:** or, a simple mode of Accenting English, for the advantage of Foreigners and of all Learners. By FRANCIS W. NEWMAN, Emeritus Professor of University College, London. 8vo. pp. 28, sewed. 1869. 1s.

Nodal.—**ELEMENTOS DE GRAMÁTICA QUICHUA ó IDIOMA DE LOS YNCAS.** Bajo los Auspicios de la Redentora, Sociedad de Filántropos para mejorar la suerte de los Aborígenes Peruanos. Por el Dr. JOSE FERNANDEZ NODAL, Abogado de los Tribunales de Justicia de la República del Perú. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 441. Appendix, pp. 9. £1 1s.

Nodal.—**LOS VINCULOS DE OLLANTA Y CUSI-KCUYLLOR.** DRAMA EN QUICHUA. Obra Compilada y Espurgada con la Version Castellana al Frente de su Texto por el Dr. JOSE FERNANDEZ NODAL, Abogado de los Tribunales de Justicia de la República del Perú. Bajo los Auspicios de la Redentora Sociedad de Filántropos para Mejorar la Suerte de los Aborígenes Peruanos. Roy. 8vo. bds. pp. 70. 1874. 7s. 6d.

Notley.—**A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH, ITALIAN, SPANISH, AND PORTUGUESE LANGUAGES.** By EDWIN A. NOTLEY. Crown oblong 8vo. cloth, pp. xv. and 396. 7s. 6d.

Nutt.—**FRAGMENTS OF A SAMARITAN TARGUM.** Edited from a Bodleian MS. With an Introduction, containing a Sketch of Samaritan History, Dogma, and Literature. By J. W. NUTT, M.A. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. viii., 172, and 84. With Plate. 1874. 15s.

Nutt.—A SKETCH OF SAMARITAN HISTORY, DOGMA, AND LITERATURE. Published as an Introduction to "Fragments of a Samaritan Targum. By J. W. NUTT, M.A. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 172. 1874. 5s.

Nutt.—TWO TREATISES ON VERBS CONTAINING FEEBLE AND DOUBLE LETTERS by R. Jehuda Hayug of Fez, translated into Hebrew from the original Arabic by R. Moses Gikatilia, of Cordoya; with the Treatise on Punctuation by the same Author, translated by Aben Ezra. Edited from Bodleian MSS. with an English Translation by J. W. NUTT, M.A. Demy 8vo. sewed, pp. 312. 1870. 7s. 6d.

Oera Linda Book, from a Manuscript of the Thirteenth Century, with the permission of the Proprietor, C. Over de Linden, of the Helder. The Original Frisian Text, as verified by Dr. J. O. OTTEMA; accompanied by an English Version of Dr. Ottema's Dutch Translation, by WILLIAM R. SANDBACH. 8vo. cl. pp. xxvii. and 223. 5s.

Ollanta: A DRAMA IN THE QUICHUA LANGUAGE. See under MARKHAM and under NODAL.

Oriental Congress.—Report of the Proceedings of the Second International Congress of Orientalists held in London, 1874. Roy. 8vo. paper, pp. 76. 5s.

Oriental Congress—TRANSACTIONS OF THE SECOND SESSION OF THE INTERNATIONAL CONGRESS OF ORIENTALISTS, held in London in September, 1874. Edited by ROBERT K. DOUGLAS, Honorary Secretary. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 456. 21s.

Osburn.—THE MONUMENTAL HISTORY OF EGYPT, as recorded on the Ruins of her Temples, Palaces, and Tombs. By WILLIAM OSBURN. Illustrated with Maps, Plates, etc. 2 vols. 8vo. pp. xii. and 461; vii. and 643, cloth. £2 2s.

Vol. I.—From the Colonization of the Valley to the Visit of the Patriarch Abram.

Vol. II.—From the Visit of Abram to the Exodus.

Palmer.—EGYPTIAN CHRONICLES, with a harmony of Sacred and Egyptian Chronology, and an Appendix on Babylonian and Assyrian Antiquities. By WILLIAM PALMER, M.A., and late Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. vols. 8vo. cloth, pp. lxxiv. and 428, and viii. and 636. 1861. 12s.

Palmer.—A CONCISE DICTIONARY OF THE PERSIAN LANGUAGE. By E. H. PALMER, M.A., Professor of Arabic in the University of Cambridge. Square 16mo. pp. viii. and 364, cloth. 10s 6d.

Palmer.—LEAVES FROM A WORD HUNTER'S NOTE BOOK. Being some Contributions to English Etymology. By the Rev. A. SMITH THE PALMER, B.A., sometime Scholar in the University of Dublin. Cr. 8vo. cl. pp. xii.-316. 7s. 6d.

Palmer.—THE SONG OF THE REED; and other Pieces. By E. H. PALMER, M.A., Cambridge. Crown 8vo. pp. 208, handsomely bound in cloth. 5s.

Among the Contents will be found translations from Hafiz, from Omer el Kheiyám, and from other Persian as well as Arabic poets.

Pand-Námaḥ.—THE PAND-NÁMAH; or, Books of Counsels. By ADARBÁD MÁRÁSPAND. Translated from Pehlevi into Gujerathi, by Harbad Sheriarjee Dağabhoj. And from Gujerathi into English by the Rev. Shapurji Edalji. Fcap. 8vo. sewed. 1870. 6d.

Pandit's (A) Remarks on Professor Max Müller's Translation of the "RIG-VEDA." Sanskrit and English. Fcap. 8vo. sewed. 1870. 6d..

Paspati.—ÉTUDES SUR LES TCHINGHIANÉS (GYPSIES) QU'BOHÉMIENS DE L'EMPIRE OTTOMAN. Par ALEXANDRE G. PASPATI, M.D. Large 8vo. sewed, pp. xii. and 652. Constantinople, 1871. 28s.

Patell.—COWASJEE PATELL'S CHRONOLOGY, containing corresponding Dates of the different Eras used by Christians, Jews, Greeks, Hindús, Mohamedans, Parsees, Chinese, Japanese, etc. By COWASJEE SORABJEE PATELL. 4to. pp. viii. and 184, cloth. 50s.

Peking Gazette.—Translation of the Peking Gazette for 1872, 1873, 1874, 1875, and 1876. 8vo. pp. 137, 124, 160, 177. 10s. 6d. each.

Percy.—BISHOP PERCY'S FOLIO MANUSCRIPTS—BALLADS AND ROMANCES. Edited by John W. Hales, M.A., Fellow and late Assistant Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge; and Frederick J. Furnivall, M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge; assisted by Professor Child, of Harvard University, Cambridge, U.S.A., W. Chappell, Esq., etc. In 3 volumes. Vol. I., pp. 610; Vol. 2, pp. 681.; Vol. 3, pp. 640. Demy 8vo. half-bound, £4 4s. Extra demy 8vo half-bound, on Whatman's ribbed paper, £6 6s. Extra royal 8vo., paper covers, on Whatman's best ribbed paper, £10 10s. Large 4to., paper covers, on Whatman's best ribbed paper, £12.

Philological Society (Transactions of The). A Complete Set, including the Proceedings of the Philological Society for the years 1842-1853. 6 vols. The Philological Society's Transactions, 1854 to 1876. 15 vols. The Philological Society's Extra Volumes. 9 vols. In all 30 vols. 8vo. bound in cloth lettered. £19 3s. 6d.

Sold Separately.

Proceedings (The) of the Philological Society for the years 1842-1853. 6 vols. 8vo. cl. £3.

* * * Very few sets remain for sale.

Transactions of the Philological Society, 1854-1876. 15 vols. 8vo. cl. £10 16s.

* * * The Volumes for 1867, 1868-9, 1870-2, and 1873-4, are only to be had in complete sets, as above.

Separate Volumes.

For 1854: containing papers by Rev. J. W. Blakesley, Rev. T. O. Cockayne, Rev. J. Davies, Dr. J. W. Donaldson, Dr. Theod. Goldstücker, Prof. T. Hewitt Key, J. M. Kemble, Dr. R. G. Latham, J. M. Ludlow, Hensleigh Wedgwood, etc. 8vo. cl. £1 10s.

For 1855: with papers by Dr. Carl Abel, Dr. W. Bleek, Rev. Jno. Davies, Miss A. Gurney, Jas. Kennedy, Prof. T. H. Key, Dr. R. G. Latham, Henry Malden, W. Kidley, Thos. Watts, Hensleigh Wedgwood, etc. In 4 parts. 8vo. £1 1s.

* * * Kimilarai Language of Australia, by W. Ridley; and False Etymologies, by H. Wedgwood, separately. 1s.

For 1856-7: with papers by Prof. Aufrecht, Herbert Coleridge, Lewis Kr. Daa, M. de Haan, W. C. Jourdain, James Kennedy, Prof. Key, Dr. G. Latham, J. M. Ludlow, Rev. J. J. S. Perovne, Hensleigh Wedgwood, R. F. Weymouth, Jos. Yates, etc. 7 parts. 8vo. (The Papers relating to the Society's Dictionary are omitted.) £1 10s.

* * * The price of the volumes, 1854 and 1855, is 21s. each. That of the volume for 1856-7, 30s. The subsequent volumes are 12s. each, excepting that for 1858: including the volume of Early English Poems, Lives of the Saints, edited from MSS. by F. J. Furnivall; and papers by Ern. Adams, Prof. Aufrecht, Herbert Coleridge, Rev. Francis Crawford, M. de Haan Hettema, Dr. R. G. Latham, Dr. Lottner, etc. 8vo. cl. 12s.

For 1859: with papers by Dr. E. Adams, Prof. Aufrecht, Herb. Coleridge, F. J. Furnivall, Prof. T. H. Key, Dr. C. Lottner, Prof. De Morgan, F. Pulszky, Hensleigh Wedgwood, etc. 8vo. cl. 12s.

Philological Society (Transactions of The)—continued.

For 1860-1: including The Play of the Sacrament; and Pascon agau Arlath, the Passion of our Lord, in Cornish and English, both from MSS., edited by Dr. Whitley Stokes; and papers by Dr. E. Adams, T. F. Barham, Rev. Derwent Coleridge, Herbert Coleridge, Sir John F. Davis, Danby P. Fry, Prof. T. H. Key, Dr. C. Lottner, Bishop Thirlwall, Hensleigh Wedgwood, R. F. Weymouth, etc. 8vo. cl. 12s.

For 1862-3: with papers by C. B. Cayley, D. P. Fry, Prof. Key, H. Malden, Rich. Morris, F. W. Newman, Robert Peacock, Hensleigh Wedgwood, R. F. Weymouth, etc. 8vo. cl. 12s.

For 1864: containing 1. Manning's (Jas.) Inquiry into the Character and Origin of the Possessive Augment in English, etc.: 2. Newman's (Francis W.) Text of the Iguvine Inscriptions, with Interlinear Latin Translation; 3. Barnes's (Dr. W.) Grammar and Glossary of the Dorset Dialect; 4. Gwreans An Bys—The Creation: a Cornish Mystery, Cornish and English, with Notes by Whitley Stokes, etc. 8vo. cl. 12s.

* * Separately: Manning's Inquiry, 3s.—Newman's Iguvine Inscription, 3s.—Stokes's Gwreans An Bys, 8s.

For 1865: including Wheatley's (H. B.) Dictionary of Reduplicated Words in the English Language; and papers by Prof. Aufrecht, Ed. Brock, C. B. Cayley, Rev. A. J. Church, Prof. T. H. Key, Rev. E. H. Knowles, Prof. H. Malden, Hon. G. P. Marsh, John Rhys, Guthbrand Vigfusson, Hensleigh Wedgwood, H. B. Wheatley, etc. 8vo. cl. 12s.

For 1866: including 1. Gregor's (Rev. Walter) Banffshire Dialect, with Glossary of Words omitted by Jamieson; 2. Edmondston's (T.) Glossary of the Shetland Dialect; and papers by Prof. Cassal, C. B. Cayley, Danby P. Fry, Prof. T. H. Key, Guthbrand Vigfusson, Hensleigh Wedgwood, etc. 8vo. cl. 12s.

* * The Volumes for 1867, 1868-9, 1870-2, and 1873-4, are out of print. Besides contributions in the shape of valuable and interesting papers, the volume for 1867 also includes: 1. Peacock's (Rob. B.) Glossary of the Hundred of Lonsdale; and 2. Ellis (A. J.) On Palaeotype representing Spoken Sounds; and on the Diphthong "Oy." The volume for 1868-9—1. Ellis's (A. J.) Only English Proclamation of Henry III. in Oct. 1258; to which are added "The Cuckoo's Song" and "The Prisoner's Prayer," Lyrics of the XIII. Century, with Glossary; and 2. Stokes's (Whitley) Cornish Glossary. That for 1870-2—1. Murray's (Jas. A. H.) Dialect of the Southern Counties of Scotland, with a linguistical map. That for 1873-4—Sweet's (H.) History of English Sounds.

For 1875-6: containing the Rev. Richard Morris (President), Fourth and Fifth Annual Addresses. 1. Some Sources of Aryan Mythology by E. L. Brandreth; 2. C. B. Cayley on Certain Italian Diminutives; 3. Changes made by four young Children in Pronouncing English Words, by Jas. M. Menzies; 4. The Manx Language, by H. Jenner; 5. The Dialect of West Somerset, by F. T. Elworthy; 6. English Metre, by Prof. J. B. Mayor; 7. Words, Logic, and Grammar, by H. Sweet; 8. The Russian Language and its Dialects, by W. R. Morfill; 9. Relics of the Cornish Language in Mount's Bay, by H. Jenner. Parts 1 and 2, 8vo.

* * Part 3 is in the press.

The Society's Extra Volumes.

Skeat's (Rev. W. W.) Mæso-Gothic Glossary, with an Introduction, an Outline of Mæso-Gothic Grammar, and a List of Anglo-Saxon and old and modern English Words etymologically connected with Mæso-Gothic. London, 1868. Sq. 8vo. cl. 9s.

Mediæval Greek Texts: A Collection of the Earliest Compositions in Vulgar Greek, prior to A.D. 1500. With Prolegomena and Critical Notes by W. Wagner. Part I. Seven Poems, three of which appear for the first time. London, 1870. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Phillips.—THE DOCTRINE OF ADDAI THE APOSTLE. Now first Edited in a Complete Form in the Original Syriac, with an English Translation and Notes. By GEORGE PHILLIPS, D.D., President of Queen's College, Cambridge. 8vo. pp. 122, cloth. 7s. 6d.

Pierce the Ploughman's Crede (about 1394 Anno Domini). Transcribed and Edited from the MS. of Trinity College, Cambridge, R. 8, 15. Collated with the MS. Bibl. Reg. 18. B. xvii. in the British Museum, and with the old Printed Text of 1553, to which is appended "God spede the Plough" (about 1500 Anno Domini), from the Lansdowne MS. 762. By the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A., late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. pp. xx. and 75, cloth. 1867. 2s. 6d.

Pimentel.—CUADRO DESCRIPTIVO Y COMPARATIVO DE LAS LENGUAS INDÍGENAS DE MÉXICO, o Tratado de Filología Mexicana. Par FRANCISCO PIMENTEL. 2 Edicion unica completa. 3 Volumen 8vo. Mexico, 1875. £2 2s.

Pischel.—HEMACANDRA'S GRAMMATIK DER PRÄKRITSPRACHEN (Siddham-hemacandram Adhyāya VIII.) mit Kritischen und Erläuternden Anmerkungen. Herausgegeben von RICHARD PISCHEL. Part I. Text und Wörterverzeichniss. 8vo. pp. xiv. and 236. 8s.

Pope.—A TAMIL HANDBOOK; or, Full Introduction to the Common Dialect of that Language, on the plan of Ollendorff and Arnold. With copious Vocabularies, Appendices, containing Reading Lessons, Analyses of Letters, Deeds, Complaints, Official Documents, and a Key to the Exercises. By Rev. G. U. POPE. Third edition, 8vo. cloth, pp. iv. and 388. 2ls.

Prakrita-Prakasa; or, The Prakrit Grammar of Vararuchi, with the Commentary (Manorama) of Bhamaha. The first complete edition of the Original Text with Various Readings from a Collation of Six Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, and the Libraries of the Royal Asiatic Society and the East India House; with copious Notes, an English Translation, and Index of Prakrit words, to which is prefixed an easy Introduction to Prakrit Grammar. By E. B. COWELL. Second issue, with new Preface, and corrections. 8vo. pp. xxxii. and 204. 14s.

Priaulx.—QUÆSTIONES MOSAICÆ; or, the first part of the Book of Genesis compared with the remains of ancient religions. By OSMOND DE BEAUVOIR PRIAULX. 8vo. pp. viii. and 548, cloth. 12s.

Rámáyan of Yálmiki.—5 vols. See under GRIFFITH.

Ram Jasan.—A SANSKRIT AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY. Being an Abridgment of Professor Wilson's Dictionary. With an Appendix explaining the use of Affixes in Sanskrit. By Pandit RAM JASAN, Queen's College, Benares. Published under the Patronage of the Government, N.W.P. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. ii. and 707. 28s.

Ram Raz.—ESSAY on the ARCHITECTURE of the HINDUS. By RAM RAZ, Native Judge and Magistrate of Bangalore. With 48 plates. 4to. pp. xiv. and 64, sewed. London, 1834. £2 2s.

Rask.—A GRAMMAR OF THE ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE. From the Danish of Erasmus Rask, Professor of Literary History in, and Librarian to, the University of Copenhagen, etc. By BENJAMIN THORPE. Second edition, corrected and improved. 18mo. pp. 200, cloth. 5s. 6d.

Rawlinson.—A COMMENTARY ON THE CUNEIFORM INSCRIPTIONS OF BABYLONIA AND ASSYRIA, including Readings of the Inscription on the Nimrud Obelisk, and Brief Notice of the Ancient Kings of Nineveh and Babylon, by Major H. C. RAWLINSON. 8vo. pp. 84, sewed. London, 1850. 2s. 6d.

Rawlinson.—**OUTLINES OF ASSYRIAN HISTORY**, from the Inscriptions of Nineveh. By Lieut. Col. RAWLINSON, C.B., followed by some Remarks by A. H. LAYARD, Esq., D.C.L. 8vo., pp. xliv., sewed. London, 1852. 1s.

Rawlinson.—**INSCRIPTION OF TIGLATH PILESER I., KING OF ASSYRIA**, B.C. 1150, as translated by Sir H. RAWLINSON, FOX TALBOT, Esq., Dr. HINCKS, and Dr. OPPERT. Published by the Royal Asiatic Society. 8vo. sd., pp. 74. 2s.

Rawlinson.—**NOTES ON THE EARLY HISTORY OF BABYLONIA**. By Colonel RAWLINSON, C.B. 8vo. sd., pp. 48. 1s.

Redhouse.—**THE TURKISH CAMPAIGNER'S VADE-MECUM OF OTTOMAN COLLOQUIAL LANGUAGE**; containing a concise Ottoman Grammar; a carefully selected Vocabulary, alphabetically arranged, in two parts, English and Turkish, and Turkish and English: also a few Familiar Dialogues; the whole in English characters. By J. W. REDHOUSE, F.R.A.S. Oblong 32mo. limp cloth, pp. iv. and 332. 5s.

Renan.—**AN ESSAY ON THE AGE AND ANTIQUITY OF THE BOOK OF NABATHÆAN AGRICULTURE**. To which is added an Inaugural Lecture on the Position of the Semitic Nations in the History of Civilization. By M. ERNEST RENAN, Membre de l'Institut. Crown 8vo., pp. xvi. and 148, cloth. 3s. 6d.

Revue Celtique.—**THE REVUE CELTIQUE**, a Quarterly Magazine for Celtic Philology, Literature, and History. Edited with the assistance of the Chief Celtic Scholars of the British Islands and of the Continent, and Conducted by H. GAIDOUZ. 8vo. Subscription, £1 per Volume.

Rhys.—**LECTURES ON WELSH PHILOLOGY**. By JOHN RHYS. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 458. 12s.

Rig-Veda.—See Müller.

Rig-Veda-Sanhita: THE SACRED HYMNS OF THE BRAHMANS. Translated and explained by F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., LL.D., Fellow of All Souls' College, Professor of Comparative Philology at Oxford, Foreign Member of the Institute of France, etc., etc. Vol. I. HYMNS TO THE MARUTS, OR THE STORM-GODS. 8vo. pp. clii. and 264. cloth. 1869. 12s. 6d.

Rig-Veda Sanhita.—A COLLECTION OF ANCIENT HINDU HYMNS. Constituting the First Ashtaka, or Book of the Rig-veda; the oldest authority for the religious and social institutions of the Hindus. Translated from the Original Sanskrit by the late H. H. WILSON, M.A. 2nd Ed., with a Postscript by DR. FITZEDWARD HALL. Vol. I. 8vo. cloth, pp. lii. and 348, price 21s.

Rig-veda Sanhita.—A Collection of Ancient Hindu Hymns, constituting the Fifth to Eighth Ashtakas, or books of the Rig-Veda, the oldest Authority for the Religious and Social Institutions of the Hindus. Translated from the Original Sanskrit by the late HORACE HAYMAN WILSON, M.A., F.R.S., etc. Edited by E. B. COWELL, M.A., Principal of the Calcutta Sanskrit College. Vol. IV., 8vo., pp. 214, cloth. 14s.

A few copies of Vols. II. and III. still left. [Vols. V. and VI. in the Press.]

Roe and Fryer.—**TRAVELS IN INDIA IN THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY**. By Sir THOMAS ROE and Dr. JOHN FRYER. Reprinted from the "Calcutta Weekly Englishman." 8vo. cloth, pp. 474. 7s. 6d.

Rœhrig.—**THE SHORTEST ROAD TO GERMAN**. Designed for the use of both Teachers and Students. By F. L. O. RœHRIG. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. vii. and 225. 1874. 7s. 6d.

Rogers.—**NOTICE ON THE DINARS OF THE ABBASSIDE DYNASTY**. By EDWARD THOMAS ROGERS, late H.M. Consul, Cairo. 8vo. pp. 44, with a Map and four Autotype Plates. 5s.

Rosny.—A GRAMMAR OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE. By Professor LÉON DE ROSNY. 8vo. pp. 48. 1874. 8s.

Rudy.—THE CHINESE MANDARIN LANGUAGE, after Ollendorff's New Method of Learning Languages. By CHARLES RUDY. In 3 Volumes. • Vol. I. Grammar. 8vo. pp. 248. £1 1s.

Sabdakalpadruma, the well-known Sanskrit Dictionary of RAJAH RADHAKANTA DEVA. In Bengali characters. 4to. Parts 1 to 40. (In course of publication.) 3s. 6d. each part.

Sakuntala.—KĀLIDĀSA'S CĀKUNTALĀ. The Bengali Recension. With Critical Notes. Edited by RICHARD PISCHEL. 8vo. cloth, pp. xi. and 210. 12s.

Sakuntala.—A SANSKRIT DRAMA IN SEVEN ACTS. Edited by MONIER WILLIAMS, M.A. Second Edition. 8vo. cl. £1 1s.

Sale.—THE KORAN; commonly called THE ALCORAN OF MOHAMMED. Translated into English immediately from the original Arabic. By GEORGE SALE, Gent. To which is prefixed the Life of Mohammed. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. 472. 7s.

Sāma-Vidhāna-Brahmaṇa. With the Commentary of Sāyana. Edited, with Notes, Translation, and Index, by A. C. BURNELL, M.R.A.S. Vol. I. Text and Commentary. With Introduction. 8vo. cloth, pp. xxxviii. and 104. 12s. 6d.

Sanskrit Works.—A CATALOGUE OF SANSKRIT WORKS PRINTED IN INDIA, offered for Sale at the affixed nett prices by TRÜBNER & CO. 16mo. pp. 52. 1s.

Sarva-Sabda-Sambodhini; or, THE COMPLETE SANSKRIT DICTIONARY. In Telugu characters. 4to. cloth, pp. 1078. £2 15s.

Satow.—AN ENGLISH JAPANESE DICTIONARY OF THE SPOKEN LANGUAGE. By ERNEST MASON SATOW, Japanese Secretary to H.M. Legation at Yedo, and ISHIBASHI MASAKATA, of the Imperial Japanese Foreign Office. Imp. 32mo., pp. xx. and 366, cloth. 12s.

Sayce.—AN ASSYRIAN GRAMMAR FOR COMPARATIVE PURPOSES. By A. H. SAYCE, M.A. 12mo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 188. 7s. 6d.

Sayce.—THE PRINCIPLES OF COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY. By A. H. SAYCE, Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford. Second Edition. Cr. 8vo. cl., pp. xxxii. and 416. 10s. 6d.

Scarborough.—A COLLECTION OF CHINESE PROVERBS. Translated and Arranged by WILLIAM SCARBOROUGH, Wesleyan Missionary, Hankow. With an Introduction, Notes, and Copious Index. Cr. 8vo. pp. xlii. and 278. 10s. 6d.

Schele de Vere.—STUDIES IN ENGLISH; or, Glimpses of the Inner Life of our Language. By M. SCHELE DE VERE, LL.D., Professor of Modern Languages in the University of Virginia. 8vo. cloth, pp. vi. and 362. 10s. 6d.

Schele de Vere.—AMERICANISMS: THE ENGLISH OF THE NEW WORLD. By M. SCHELE DE VERE, LL.D., Professor of Modern Languages in the University of Virginia. 8vo. pp. 685, cloth. 12s.

Schleicher.—COMPENDIUM OF THE COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE INDO-EUROPEAN, SANSKRIT, GREEK, AND LATIN LANGUAGES. By AUGUST SCHLEICHER. Translated from the Third German Edition by HERBERT BENDALE, B.A., Chr. Coll. Camb. Part I. 8vo. cloth, pp. 184. 7s. 6d. Part II. Morphology. 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 104. 6s.

Schemeil.—EL MUBTAKER; or, First Born. (In Arabic, printed at Beyrouth). Containing Five Comedies, called Comedies of "Fiction, on Hopes and Judgments, in Twenty-six Poems of 1092 Verses, showing the Seven Stages of Life, from man's conception unto his death and burial. By EMIN IBRAHIM SCHEMEIL. In one volume, 4to..pp. 166, sewed. 1870. 5s.

Schlagintweit.—BUDDHISM IN TIBET. Illustrated by Literary Documents and Objects of Religious Worship. With an Account of the Buddhist Systems preceding it in India. By EMIL SCHLAGINTWEIT, LL.D. With a Folio Atlas of 20 Plates, and 20 Tables of Native Prints in the Text. Royal 8vo., pp. xxiv. and 404. £2 2s.

Schlagintweit.—GLOSSARY OF GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS FROM INDIA AND TIBET, with Native Transcription and Transliteration. By HERMANN DE SCHLAGINTWEIT. Forming, with a "Route Book of the Western Himalaya, Tibet, and Turkistan," the Third Volume of H., A., and R. DE SCHLAGINTWEIT'S "Results of a Scientific Mission to India and High Asia." With an Atlas in imperial folio, of Maps, Panoramas, and Views. Royal 4to., pp. xxiv. and 293. £4.

Semitic (Songs of The). In English Verse. By G. E. W. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. 110. 5s.

Shápurjí Edaljí.—A GRAMMAR OF THE GUJARÁTÍ LANGUAGE. By SHÁPURJÍ EDALJÍ. Cloth, pp. 127. 10s. 6d.

Shápurjí Edaljí.—A DICTIONARY, GUJRATI AND ENGLISH. By SHÁPURJÍ EDALJÍ. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. xxiv. and 874. 21s.

Sherring—THE SACRED CITY OF THE HINDUS. An Account of Benares in Ancient and Modern Times. By the Rev. M. A. SHERRING, M.A., LL.D.; and Prefaced with an Introduction by FITZEDWARD HALL, Esq., D.C.L. 8vo. cloth, pp. xxxvi. and 388, with numerous full-page illustrations. "ls.

Sherring.—HINDU TRIBES AND CASTES, as represented in Benares. By the Rev. M. A. SHERRING, M.A., LL.B., London, Author of "The Sacred City of the Hindus," etc. With Illustrations. 4to. cloth, pp. xxiii. and 405. £4 4s.

Sherring.—THE HISTORY OF PROTESTANT MISSIONS IN INDIA. From their commencement in 1706 to 1871. By the Rev. M. A. SHERRING, M.A., London Mission, Benares. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xi. and 482. 16s.

Singh.—SAKHEE Book; or, The Description of Gooroo Gobind Singh's Religion and Doctrines, translated from Gooroo Mukhi into Hindi, and afterwards into English. By SIRDAR ATTAR SINGH, Chief of Bhadour. With the author's photograph. 8vo. pp. xviii. and 205. 15s.

Skeat.—A LIST OF ENGLISH WORDS, the Etymology of which is illustrated by Comparison with Icelandic. Prepared in the form of an Appendix to Cleasby and Vigfusson's Icelandic-English Dictionary. By the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A., English Lecturer and late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge; and M.A. of Exeter College, Oxford; one of the Vice-Presidents of the Cambridge Philological Society; and Member of the Council of the Philological Society of London. 1876. Demy 4to. sewed. 2s.

Smith.—A VOCABULARY OF PROPER NAMES IN CHINESE AND ENGLISH. of Places, Persons, Tribes, and Sects, in China, Japan, Corea, Assam, Siam, Burmah, The Straits, and adjacent Countries. By F. PORTER SMITH, M.B., London, Medical Missionary in Central China. 4to. half-bound, pp. vi., 72, and x. 1870. 10s. 6d.

Smith.—CONTRIBUTIONS TOWARDS THE MATERIA MEDICA AND NATURAL HISTORY OF CHINA. For the use of Medical Missionaries and Native Medical Students. By F. PORTER SMITH, M.B. London, Medical Missionary in Central China. Imp. 4to. cloth, pp. viii. and 240. 1870. £1 1s.

Sophocles.—A GLOSSARY OF LATER AND BYZANTINE GREEK. By E. A. SOPHOCLES. 4to., pp. iv. and 624, cloth. £2 2s.

Sophocles.—ROMAIC OR MODERN GREEK GRAMMAR. By E. A. SOPHOCLES. 8vo. pp. xxviii. and 196. 7s. 6d.

Sophocles.—GREEK LEXICON OF THE ROMAN AND BYZANTINE PERIODS (from B.C. 146 to A.D. 1100). By E. A. SOPHOCLES. Imp. 8vo. pp. xvi. 1188, cloth. 1870. £2 10s.

Steele.—AN EASTERN LOVE STORY. KUSA JÁTAKAYA: a Buddhistic Legendary Poem, with other Stories. By THOMAS STEELE, Ceylon Civil Service. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. xii, and 260. 1871. 6s.

Stent.—THE JADE CHAPLET, in Twenty-four Beads. A Collection of Songs, Ballads, etc. (from the Chinese). By GEORGE CARTER STENT, M.N.C.B.R.A.S., Author of "Chinese and English Vocabulary," "Chinese and English Pocket Dictionary," "Chinese Lyrics," "Chinese Legends," etc. Cr. 8o. cloth, pp. 176. 5s.

Stent.—A CHINESE AND ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN THE PEKINESE DIALECT. By G. E. STENT. 8vo pp. ix and 677. 1871. £1 10s.

Stent.—A CHINESE AND ENGLISH POCKET DICTIONARY. By G. E. STENT. 16mo. pp. 250. 1874. 15s.

Stoddard.—GRAMMAR OF THE MODERN SYRIAC LANGUAGE, as spoken in Oroomiah, Persia, and in Koordistan. By REV. D. T. STODDARD, Missionary of the American Board in Persia. Demy 8vo. bds., pp. 190. 10s. 6d.

Stokes.—BEUNANS MERIASEK. The Life of Saint Meriasék, Bishop and Confessor. A Cornish Drama. Edited, with a Translation and Notes, by WHITLEY STOKES. Medium 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi., 280, and Facsimile. 1872. 15s.

Stokes.—GOIDELICA—Old and Early-Middle Irish Glosses: Prose and Verse. Edited by WHITLEY STOKES. Second edition. Medium 8vo. cloth, pp. 192. 18s.

Stratmann.—A DICTIONARY OF THE OLD ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Compiled from the writings of the xiiith, xivth, and xvth centuries. By FRANCIS HENRY STRATMANN. Second Edition. 4to., pp. xii. and 594. 1873. In wrapper, £1 11s. 6d.; cloth, £1 14s.

Stratmann.—AN OLD ENGLISH POEM OF THE OWL AND THE NIGHTINGALE. Edited by FRANCIS HENRY STRATMANN. 8vo. cloth, pp. 60. 3s.

Strong.—SELECTIONS FROM THE BOSTAN OF SADI, translated into English Verse. By DAWSONNE MELANCTHON STRONG, Captain H.M. 10th Bengal Lancers. 12mo. cloth, pp. ii, and 56. 2s. 6d.

Surya-Siddhanta (Translation of the).—See Whitney.

Swamy.—THE DATHÁVANSA; or, the History of the Tooth-Relic of Gotama Buddha. The Pali Text and its Translation into English, with Notes. By Sir M. COOMÁRA SWÁMY, Mudaliár. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. 174. 1874. 10s. 6d.

Swamy.—THE DATHÁVANSA; or, the History of the Tooth-Relic of Gotama Buddha. English Translation only. With Notes. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. 100. 1874. 6s.

Swamy.—SUTTA NÍPÁTA; or, the Dialogues and Discourses of Gotama Buddha. Translated from the Pali, with Introduction and Notes. By Sir M. COOMÁRA SWÁMY. Cr. 8vo. cloth, pp. xxxvi. and 160. 1874. 6s.

Sweet.—A HISTORY OF ENGLISH SOUNDS, from the Earliest Period, including an Investigation of the General Laws of Sound Change, and full Word Lists. By HENRY SWEET. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. iv. and 164. 4s. 6d.

Syed Ahmad.—A SERIES OF ESSAYS ON THE LIFE OF MOHAMMED, and Subjects subsidiary thereto. By SYED AHMAD KHAN BAHADOR, C.S.I., Author of the "Mohammedan Commentary on the Holy Bible," Honorary Member of the Royal Asiatic Society, and Life Honorary Secretary to the Allygurh Scientific Society. 8vo. pp. 532, with 4 Genealogical Tables, 2 Maps, and a Coloured Plate, handsomely bound in cloth. £1 10s.

Taittirīya-Pratiçakhya.—See WHITNEY.

Talmud.—SELECTIONS FROM THE TALMUD. Being Specimens of the Contents of that Ancient Book. Its Commentaries, Teaching, Poetry, and Legends. Also brief Sketches of the Men who made and commented upon it. Translated from the original by H. POLANO. 8vo. cloth, pp. 382. 15s.

Tarkavachaspati.—VACHASPUTYA, a Comprehensive Dictionary, in Ten Parts. Compiled by TARANATHA TARKAVACHASPATI, Professor of Grammar and Philosophy in the Government Sanskrit College of Calcutta. An Alphabetically Arranged Dictionary, with a Grammatical Introduction and Copious Citations from the Grammarians and Scholiasts, from the Vedas, etc. Parts I. to VII. 4to. paper. 1873-6. 18s. each Part.

Technological Dictionary of the terms employed in the Arts and Sciences; Architecture, Civil Military and Naval; Civil Engineering, including Bridge Building, Road and Railway Making; Mechanics; Machine and Engine Making; Shipbuilding and Navigation; Metallurgy, Mining and Smelting; Artillery; Mathematics; Physics; Chemistry; Mineralogy, etc. With a Preface by Dr. K. KARMAKSCH. Second Edition. 3 vols.

Vol. I. English—German—French. 8vo. pp. 666. 12s.

Vol. II. German—English—French. 8vo. pp. 646. 12s.

Vol. III. French—German—English. 8vo. pp. 618. 12s.

Technological Dictionary.—POCKET DICTIONARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS USED IN ARTS AND SCIENCES. English-German-French. Based on the larger Work by KARMAKSCH. 3 vols imp. 16mo. cloth. 12s.

The Boke of Nurture. By JOHN RUSSELL, about 1460—1470 Anno Domini. The Boke of Keguyng. By WYNKYN DE WORDE, Anno Domini 1513. The Boke of Nurture. By HUGH RHODES, Anno Domini 1577. Edited from the Originals in the British Museum Library, by FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A., Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Member of Council of the Philological and Early English Text Societies. 4to. half-morocco, gilt top, pp. xix. and 146, 28, xxviii. and 56. 1867. 12. 11s. 6d.

Thibaut.—THE SŪLYASŪTRAS. English Translation, with an Introduction. By G. THIBAUT, Ph.D., Anglo-Sanskrit Professor Benares College. 8vo. cloth, pp. 47, with 4 Plates. 5s.

Thomas.—EARLY sassanian INSCRIPTIONS, SEALS AND COINS, illustrating the Early History of the Sassanian Dynasty, containing Proclamations of Ardashir Babek, Sapor I., and his Successors. With a Critical Examination and Explanation of the Celebrated Inscription in the Hājīabad Cave, demonstrating that Sapor, the Conqueror of Valerian, was a Professing Christian. By EDWARD THOMAS, F.R.S. Illustrated. 8vo. cloth, pp. 148. 7s. 6d.

Thomas.—THE CHRONICLES OF THE PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLI. Illustrated by Coins, Inscriptions, and other Antiquarian Remains. By EDWARD THOMAS, F.R.S., late of the East India Company's Bengal Civil Service. With numerous Copperplates and Woodcuts. Demy 8vo. cloth, pp. xxiv. and 467. 1871. £1 8s.

Thomas.—THE REVENUE RESOURCES OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE IN INDIA, from A.D. 1593 to A.D. 1707. A Supplement to "The Chronicles of the Pathān Kings of Delhi." By EDWARD THOMAS, F.R.S. Demy 8vo., pp. 60, cloth. 3s. 6d.

Thomas.—**COMMENTS ON RECENT PEHLVI DECIPHERMENTS.** With an Incidental Sketch of the Derivation of Aryan Alphabets, and contributions to the Early History and Geography of Tabaristán. Illustrated by Coins. By EDWARD THOMAS, F.R.S. 8vo. pp. 64, and 2 plates, cloth, sewed. 3s. 6d.

Thomas.—**SASSANIAN COINS.** Communicated to the Numismatic Society of London. By E. THOMAS, F.R.S. Two parts. With 3 Plates and a Woodcut. 12mo, sewed, pp. 43. 5s.

Thomas.—**RECORDS OF THE GUPTA DYNASTY.** Illustrated by Inscriptions, Written History, Local Tradition and Coins. To which is added a Chapter on the Arabs in Sind. By EDWARD THOMAS, F.R.S. Folio, with a Plate, handsomely bound in cloth, pp. iv. and 64. Price 14s.

Thomas.—**JAINISM ; or, The Early Faith of Asoka.** With Illustrations of the Ancient Religions of the East, from the Pantheon of the Indo-Scythians. To which is added a Notice on Bactrian Coins and Indian Dates. By EDWARD THOMAS, F.R.S. 8vo. pp. viii., 24 and 82. With two Autotype Plates and Woodcuts. 7s. 6d.

Thomas.—**THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF CREOLE GRAMMAR.** By J. J. THOMAS. Port of Spain (Trinidad), 1869. 1 vol. 8vo. bds. pp. viii. and 135. 12s.

Thorburn.—**BANNÚ ; or, Our Afghán Frontier.** By S. S. THORBURN, I.C.S., Settlement Officer of the Bannú District. 8vo. cloth, pp. x. and 480. 18s.

Thorpe.—**DIPLOMATARIUM ANGLICUM AETI SAXONICI.** A Collection of English Charters, from the reign of King Aethelberht of Kent, A.D., DCV., to that of William the Conqueror. Containing : I. Miscellaneous Charters. II. Wills. III. Guilds. IV. Manumissions and Acquittances. With a Translation of the Anglo-Saxon. By the late BENJAMIN THORPE, Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 8vo. pp. xlvi. and 682, cloth. 1865. £1 1s.

Tindall.—**A GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY OF THE NAMAQUA-HOTTENTOT LANGUAGE.** By HENRY TINDALL, Wesleyan Missionary. 8vo. pp. 124, sewed. 6s.

Trübner's Bibliotheca Sanscrita. A Catalogue of Sanskrit Literature, chiefly printed in Europe. To which is added a Catalogue of Sanskrit Works printed in India; and a Catalogue of Pali Books. Constantly for sale by Trübner & Co. Cr. 8vo. sd. pp. 84. 2s. 6d.

Trumpp.—**GRAMMAR OF THE PĀŠTO, or Language of the Afghans, compared with the Irānian and North-Indian Idioms.** By DR. ERNEST TRUMPP. 8vo. sewed, pp. xvi. and 412. 21s.

Trumpp.—**GRAMMAR OF THE SINDHI LANGUAGE.** Compared with the Sanskrit-Prakrit and the Cognate Indian Vernaculars. By DR. ERNEST TRUMPP. Printed by order of Her Majesty's Government for India. Demy 8vo. sewed, pp. xvi. and 590. 15s.

Van der Tuuk.—**OUTLINES OF A GRAMMAR OF THE MALAGASY LANGUAGE** By H. N. VAN DER TUUK. 8vo., pp. 28, sewed. 1s.

Van der Tuuk.—**SHORT ACCOUNT OF THE MALAY MANUSCRIPTS BELONGING TO THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.** By H. N. VAN DER TUUK. 8vo., pp. 52. 2s. 6d.

Vedarthayatna (The) ; or, an Attempt to Interpret the Vedas. A Marathi and English Translation of the Rig Veda, with the Original Saṃhitā and Pada Texts in Sanskrit. Parts I. to XII. 8vo. pp. 1—313. Price 3s. 6d. each.

Vishnu-Purana (The) ; a System of Hindu Mythology and Tradition. Translated from the original Sanskrit, and Illustrated by Notes derived chiefly from other Purāṇas. By the late H. H. WILSON, M.A., F.R.S., Boden Pro-

Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Oxford, etc., etc. Edited by FITZEDWARD HALL. In 6 vols. 8vo. Vol. I. pp. cxl. and 200; Vol. II. pp. 343; Vol. III., pp. 348; Vol. IV. pp. 346, cloth; Vol. V. pp. 392, cloth. 10s. 6d. each.

Vol. V., Part 2, containing the Index, compiled by Fitzedward Hall. Cloth. 12s.

Wade.—YÜ-YEN TZÜ-ERH CHI. A progressive course designed to assist the Student of Colloquial Chinese, as spoken in the Capital and the Metropolitan Department. In eight parts, with Key, Syllabary, and Writing Exercises. By THOMAS FRANCIS WADE, C.B., Secretary to Her Britannic Majesty's Legation, Peking. 3 vols. 4to. Progressive Course, pp. xx. 296 and 16; Syllabary, pp. 126 and 36; Writing Exercises, pp. 48; Key, pp. 174 and 140, sewed. £4.

Wade.—WÉN-CHIEN TZÜ-ERH CHI. A series of papers selected as specimens of documentary Chinese, designed to assist Students of the language, as written by the officials of China. In sixteen parts, with Key. Vol. I. By THOMAS FRANCIS WADE, C.B., Secretary to Her Britannic Majesty's Legation at Peking. 4to., half-cloth, pp. xii. and 455; and iv, 72, and 52. £1 16s.

Wake.—CHAPTERS ON MAN. With the Outlines of a Science of comparative Psychology. By C. STANILAND WAKE, Fellow of the Anthropological Society of London. Crown 8vo. pp. viii. and 314, cloth. 7s. 6d.

Watson.—INDEX TO THE NATIVE AND SCIENTIFIC NAMES OF INDIAN AND OTHER EASTERN ECONOMIC PLANTS AND PRODUCTS, originally prepared under the authority of the Secretary of State for India in Council. By JOHN FORBES WATSON, M.A., M.D., F.I.S., F.R.A.S., etc., Reporter on the Products of India. Imperial 8vo., cloth, pp. 650. £1 11s. 6d.

Weber.—ON THE RĀMĀYANA. By Dr. ALBRECHT WEBER, Berlin. Translated from the German by the Rev. D. C. Boyd, M.A. Reprinted from "The Indian Antiquary." Fcap. 8vo. sewed, pp. 130. 5s.

Wedgwood.—A DICTIONARY OF ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY. By HENSLEIGH WEDGWOOD. Second Edition, thoroughly revised and corrected by the Author, and extended to the Classical Roots of the Language. With an Introduction on the Formation of Language. Imperial 8vo., about 800 pages, double column. In Five Vols., of 160 pages. Price 5s. each; or complete in one volume, cl. £1 6

Wedgwood.—ON THE ORIGIN OF LANGUAGE. By HENSLEIGH WEDGWOOD, late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. pp. 172, cloth. 3s. 6d.

West.—GLOSSARY AND INDEX OF THE PAHLAVI TEXTS OF THE BOOK OF Arda Viraf, The Tale of Gosht-I Fryano, The Hadokht Nask, and to some extracts from the Din-Kard and Nirangistan; prepared from Destur Hoshangji Asa's Glossary to the Aida Viraf Namak; and from the Original Texts, with Notes on Pahlavi Grammar. By E. W. WEST, Ph.D. Revised by MARTIN HAUG, Ph.D. Published by order of the Government of Bombay. 8vo. sewed, pp. viii. and 352. 25s.

Wheeler.—THE HISTORY OF INDIA FROM THE EARLIEST AGES. By J. TALBOYS WHEELER, Assistant Secretary to the Government of India in the Foreign Department, Secretary to the Indian Record Commission, author of "The Geography of Herodotus," etc. etc. Demy 8vo. cl.

Vol. I. The Vedic Period and the Maha Bharata. pp. lxxv. and 576. 18s.

Vol. II. The Ramayana and the Brahmanical Period. pp. lxxxviii. and 680, with two Maps. 21s.

Vol. III. Hindu, Buddhist, Brahmanical Revival. pp. 484, with two maps. 18s.

Vol. IV. Part I. Mussulman Rule. pp. xxxii. and 320. 14s.

Vol. IV. Part II. In the press.

Wheeler.—JOURNAL OF A VOYAGE UP THE PREAWADDY TO MANDALAY AND BHAMO. By J. TALBOYS WHEELER. 8vo. pp. 104, sewed. 1871. 3s. 6d.

Whitney.—ORIENTAL AND LINGUISTIC STUDIES. First Series. The Veda; the Avesta; the Science of Language. By WILLIAM DWIGHT WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit and Comparative Philology in Yale College. Cr. 8vo. cl., pp. x. and 418. 12s.

CONTENTS.—The Vedas.—The Vedic Doctrine of a Future Life.—Müller's History of Vedic Literature.—The Translation of the Veda.—Müller's Rig-Veda Translation.—The Avesta.—Indo-European Philology and Ethnology.—Müller's Lectures on Language.—Present State of the Question as to the Origin of Language.—Bleek and the Simious Theory of Language.—Schleicher and the Physical Theory of Language.—Steinthal and the Psychological Theory of Language.—Language and Education.—Index.

Whitney.—ORIENTAL AND LINGUISTIC STUDIES. By W. D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit. Second Series. Contents: The East and West—Religion and Mythology—Orthography and Phonology—Hindú Astronomy. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. 446. 12s.

Whitney.—ATHARVA VEDA PRÁTIČÁKHYA; or, Cáunakíyá Caturádhýáyiká (The). Text, Translation, and Notes. By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit in Yale College. 8vo. pp. 286, boards. £1 11s. 6d.

Whitney.—LANGUAGE AND THE STUDY OF LANGUAGE: Twelve Lectures on the Principles of Linguistic Science. By W. D. WHITNEY. Third Edition, augmented by an Analysis. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 504. 10s. 6d.

Whitney.—LANGUAGE AND ITS STUDY, with especial reference to the Indo-European Family of Languages. Seven Lectures by W. D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit, and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College. Edited with Introduction, Notes, Tables of Declension and Conjugation, Grimm's Law with Illustration, and an Index, by the Rev. R. MORRIS, M.A., LL.D. Cr. 8vo. cl., pp. xxii. and 318. 5s.

Whitney.—SURYA-SIDDHANTA (Translation of the): A Text-book of Hindu Astronomy, with Notes and an Appendix, containing additional Notes and Tables, Calculations of Eclipses, a Stellar Map, and Indexes. By W. D. WHITNEY. 8vo. pp. iv. and 354, boards. £1 1s. 6d.

Whitney.—TÁTTIRESYA-PRÁTIČÁKHYA, with its Commentary, the Tribháshyaratna: Text, Translation, and Notes. By W. D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit in Yale College, New Haven. 8vo. pp. 469. 1871. £1 5s.

Williams.—A DICTIONARY, ENGLISH AND SANSKRIT. By MONIER WILLIAMS, M.A. Published under the Patronage of the Honourable East India Company. 4to. pp. xii. 862, cloth. 1851. £3 3s.

Williams.—A SANSKRIT-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to Greek, Latin, German, Anglo-Saxon, English, and other cognate Indo-European Languages. By MONIER WILLIAMS, M.A., Boden Professor of Sanskrit. 4to. cloth. 24 14s. 6d.

Williams.—A PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF THE SANSKRIT LANGUAGE, arranged with reference to the Classical Languages of Europe, for the use of English Students, by MONIER WILLIAMS, M.A. 1877. Fourth Edition, Revised. 8vo. cloth. 15s.

Williams.—A SYLLABIC DICTIONARY OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE, arranged according to the Wu-Fang Yuen Yin, with the pronunciation of the Characters as heard in Peking, Canton, Amoy, and Shanghai. By S. WELLS WILLIAMS. 4to. cloth, pp. lxxxiv. and 1252. 1874. £5 6s.

Williams.—FIRST LESSONS IN THE MADRI LANGUAGE. With a Short Vocabulary. By W. L. WILLIAMS, B.A. Fcap. 8vo. pp. 98, cloth. 6s.

Wilson.—Works of the late HORACE HAYMAN WILSON, M.A., F.R.S., Member of the Royal Asiatic Societies of Calcutta and Paris, and of the Oriental Soc. of Germany, etc., and Boden Prof. of Sanskrit in the University of Oxford.

Vols I. and II. ESSAYS AND LECTURES chiefly on the Religion of the Hindus, by the late H. H. WILSON, M.A., F.R.S., etc. Collected and edited by Dr. REINHOLD ROST. 2 vols cloth, pp. xiii. and 399, vi. and 416. 21s.

Vols. III. IV. and V. ESSAYS ANALYTICAL, CRITICAL, AND PHILOLOGICAL, ON SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH SANSKRIT LITERATURE. Collected and Edited by Dr. REINHOLD ROST. 3 vols. 8vo. pp. 408, 406, and 390, cloth Price 3*six*.

Vols. VI., VII., VIII., IX. and X. VI-HNU PURÁNÁ, A SYSTEM OF HINDU MYTHOLOGY AND TRADITION. Translated from the original Sanskrit, and Illustrated by Notes derived chiefly from other Puránás. By the late H. H. WILSON, Edited by FITZEDWARD HALL, M.A., D.C.L., OXON. Vols. I. to V. 8vo., pp. cxl. and 260; 344; 344; 346, cloth. 2*l.* 12*s.* 6*d.*

Vol. X., Part 2, containing the Index, compiled by Fitzedward Hall. Cloth. 12*s.*

Vols. XI. and XII. SELECT SPECIMENS OF THE THEATRE OF THE HINDUS. Translated from the Original Sanskrit. By the late HORACE HAYMAN WILSON, M.A., F.R.S. 3rd corrected Ed. 2 vols. 8vo. pp. lxi. and 384; and iv. and 418, cl. 21*s.*

Wilson.—SELECT SPECIMENS OF THE THEATRE OF THE HINDUS. Translated from the Original Sanskrit. By the late HORACE HAYMAN WILSON, M.A., F.R.S. Third corrected edition. 2 vols. 8vo., pp. lxxi. and 384; iv. and 418, cloth. 21*s.*

CONTENTS.

Vol. I.—Preface—Treatise on the Dramatic System of the Hindus—Dramas translated from the Original Sanskrit—The Mrichchhatki, or the Toy Cart—Vikram and Urvasi, or the Hero and the Nymph—Uttara Ráma Charitra, or continuation of the History of Ráma.

Vol. II.—Dramas translated from the Original Sanskrit—Maláti and Mádhava, or the Stolen Marriage—Mudrá Rakshasa, or the Signet of the Minister—Iatnávali, or the Necklace—Appendix, containing short accounts of different Dramas.

Wilson.—THE PRESENT STATE OF THE CULTIVATION OF ORIENTAL LITERATURE. A Lecture delivered at the Meeting of the Royal Asiatic Society. By the Director, Professor H. H. WILSON. 8vo. pp. 26, sewed. London, 1852. 6*d.*

Wilson.—A DICTIONARY IN SANSKRIT AND ENGLISH. Translated, amended, and enlarged from an original compilation prepared by learned Natives for the College of Fort William by H. H. WILSON. The Third Edition edited by Jagann Mohana Tarkalankara and Khetramohana Mookerjee. Published by Gyanendrachandra Rayalzoudhuri and Brothers. 4to. pp. 1008. Calcutta, 1874. £3 3*s.*

Wise.—COMMENTARY ON THE HINDU SYSTEM OF MEDICINE. By T. A. WISE, M.D., Bengal Medical Service. 8vo., pp. xx. and 432, cloth. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Wise.—REVIEW OF THE HISTORY OF MEDICINE. By THOMAS WISE, M.D. 2 vols. 8vo. cloth. Vol. I., pp. xviii. and 397; Vol. II., pp. 574. 10*s.*

Withers.—THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE SPELLED AS PRONOUNCED, with enlarged Alphabet of Forty Letters. With Specimen. By GEORGE WITHERS. Royal 8vo. sewed, pp. 84. 1*s.*

Wordsworth.—THE CHURCH OF THIBET, and the Historical Analogies of Buddhism and Christianity. A Lecture delivered at Bombay by W. WORDSWORTH, B.A., Principal of Elphinstone College. 1877. 8vo. pp. 51. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Wright.—FEUDAL MANUALS OF ENGLISH HISTORY. A Series of Popular Sketches of our National History, compiled at different periods, from the Thirteenth Century to the Fifteenth, for the use of the Feudal Gentry and Nobility. Now first edited from the Original Manuscripts. By THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. Small 4to. cloth, pp. xxiv. and 184. 1872. 15*s.*

Wright.—THE HOMES OF OTHER DAYS.—A History of Domestic Manners and Sentiments during the Middle Ages. By THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., F.S.A. With Illustrations from the Illuminations in contemporary Manuscripts and other Sources, drawn and engraved by F. W. Fairholt, Esq., F.S.A. 1 Vol. medium 8vo. handsomely bound in cloth, pp. xv. and 512. 350 Woodcuts. £1 1s.

Wright—THE CELT, THE ROMAN, AND THE SAXON; a History of the Early Inhabitants of Britain down to the Conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity. Illustrated by the Ancient Remains brought to Light by Recent Research. By THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., F.S.A., etc., etc. Third Corrected and Enlarged Edition. Numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. cloth, pp. xiv. and 562. 14s.

Wright.—ANGLO-SAXON AND OLD-ENGLISH VOCABULARIES, Illustrating the Condition and Manners of our Forefathers, as well as the History of the Forms of Elementary Education, and of the Languages spoken in this Island from the Tenth Century to the Fifteenth. Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT Esq., M.A., F.S.A., etc. Second Edition, edited, collated, and corrected by RICHARD WULCKER. [In the press.]

Wylie.—NOTES ON CHINESE LITERATURE; with introductory Remarks on the Progressive Advancement of the Art; and a list of translations from the Chinese, into various European Languages. By A. WYLIE, Agent of the British and Foreign Bible Society in China. 4to. pp. 296, cloth. Price, £1 16s.

Yajurveda.—THE WHITE YAJUR VEDA IN THE MÁDHYANDINA RECENSION. With the Commentary of Mahidhara. Parts 1 to 24. Large square 8vo. 2s. 6d. each. (Will be completed in about 36 parts.)

Yates.—A BENGALÍ GRAMMAR. By the late Rev. W. YATES, D.D. Reprinted, with improvements, from his Introduction to the Bengali Language. Edited by I. WENGER. Fcap. 8vo., pp. iv. and 150, bds. Calcutta, 1864. 3s. 6d.

